This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

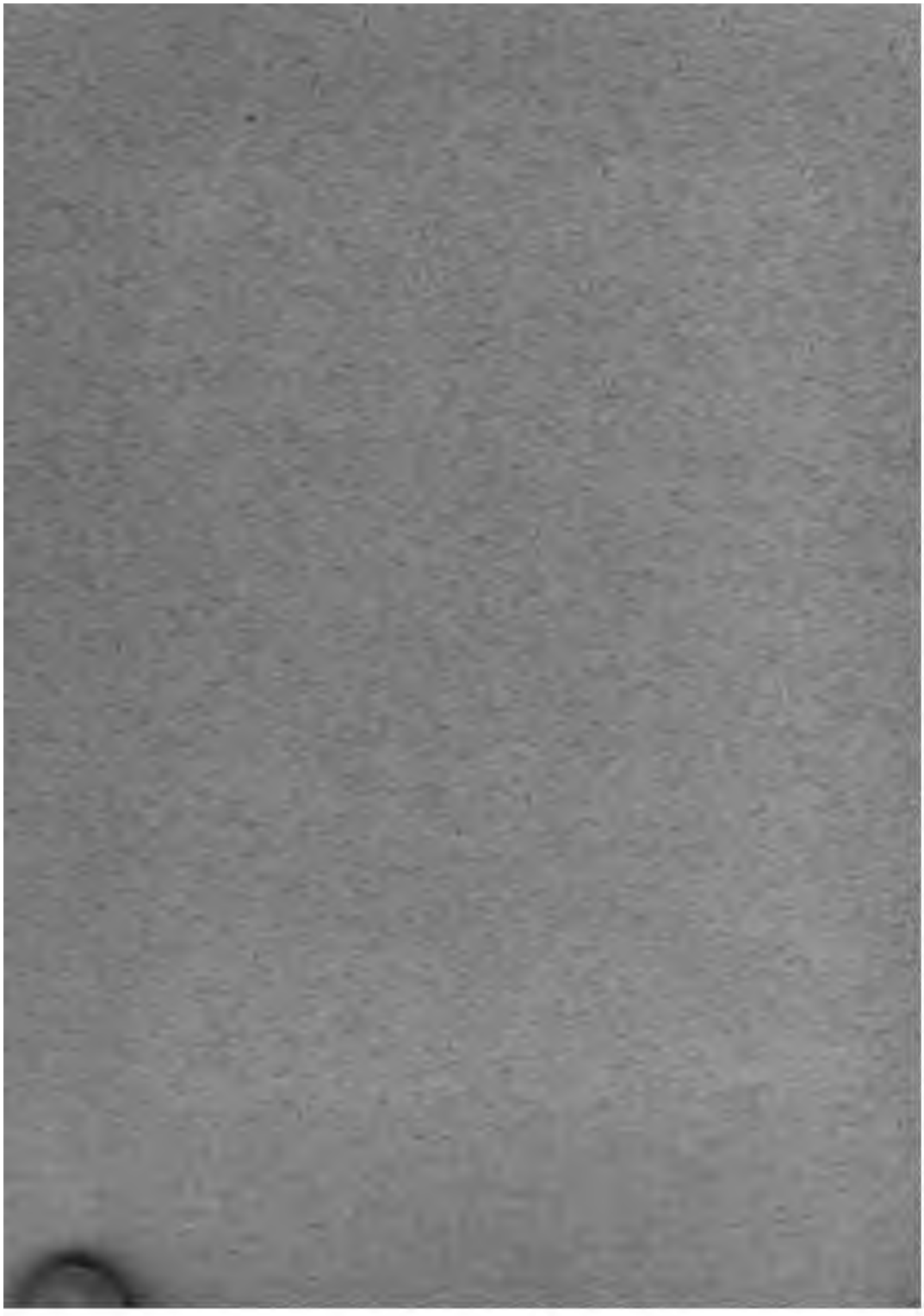
+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

B 843,527

1837
ARTES
VERITAS
SCIENTIA
LIBRARY OF THE
UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN
QUAERIS PENINSULAM AMOENAM
CIRCUMSPICE



13

Champlain's
Voyages
2

THE

Publications of the Prince Society.

Eſtabliſhed May 25th, 1858.

CHAMPLAIN'S VOYAGES.

Boston:
PRINTED FOR THE SOCIETY,
BY JOHN WILSON AND SON.
1878.

TWO HUNDRED AND FIFTY COPIES, SMALL PAPER

VOYAGES

OF

SAMUEL DE CHAMPLAIN.

10117

TRANSLATED FROM THE FRENCH

BY CHARLES POMEROY OTIS, PH.D.

WITH HISTORICAL ILLUSTRATIONS,

AND A

MEMOIR

BY THE REV. EDMUND F. SLAFTER, A.M.

VOL. II.

1604–1610.

HELIOTYPE COPIES OF TWENTY LOCAL MAPS.

Boston:
PUBLISHED BY THE PRINCE SOCIETY.
1878.

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1878, by
EDMUND F. SLAFTER,
In the Office of the Librarian of Congress, at Washington.

Editor:
THE REV. EDMUND F. SLAFTER, A.M.

PREFACE.

CHAMPLAIN'S edition of 1613 contains, in connection with the preliminary matter, two pieces of poetry, one ſigned L'ANGE, Paris, the other MOTIN. They were contributed doubtleſs by ſome friend, intended to be complimentary to the author, to embelliſh the volume and to give it a favorable introduction to the reader. This was in conformity to a prevailing cuſtom of that period. They contain no intrinſic hiſtorical intereſt or value whatever, and, if introduced, would not ſerve their original purpoſe, but would rather be an incumbrance, and they have conſequently been omitted in the preſent work.

Champlain alſo included a ſummary of chapters, identical with the headings of chapters in this tranſlation, evidently intended to take the place of an index, which he did not ſupply. To repeat theſe headings would be ſuperfluous, particularly as this work is furniſhed with a copious index.

The

The edition of 1613 was divided into two books. This diviſion has been omitted here, both as ſuperfluous and confuſing.

The maps referred to on Champlain's title-page may be found in Vol. III. of this work. In France, the needle deflects to the eaſt; and the dial-plate, as figured on the larger map, that of 1612, is conſtructed accordingly. On it the line marked *nornordeſt* repreſents the true north, while the index is carried round to the left, and points out the variation of the needle to the weſt. The map is oriented by the needle without reference to its variation, but the true meridian is laid down by a strong line on which the degrees of latitude are numbered. From this the points of the compaſs between any two places may be readily obtained.

A Note, relating to Hudſon's diſcoveries in 1612, as delineated on Champlain's ſmall map, introduced by him in the prefatory matter, apparently after the text had been ſtruck off, will appear in connection with the map itſelf, where it more properly belongs.

E. F. S.

BOSTON, 11 BEACON STREET,
October 21, 1878.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

PAGE

PREFACE v

CHAMPLAIN'S DEDICATION OF HIS WORK TO THE KING xi

ADDRESS TO THE QUEEN REGENT xiii

EXTRACT FROM THE LICENSE xv

VOYAGE 1604 TO 1608 1

FIRST VOYAGE AS LIEUTENANT, 1608 TO 1610 159

SECOND VOYAGE AS LIEUTENANT, 1610 231

LOCAL MAPS: Port de la Hève, 10; Port du Roiſſignol, 11; Port du Mouton, 22; Port Royal, 24; Port des Mines, 26; Rivière St. Jehan, 29; Iſle de Sainte Croix, 32; Habitation de L'Iſle Ste. Croix, 35; Quinibequy, 56; Chouacoit R., 65; Port St. Louis, 78; Malle Barre, 82; L'Abitaſion du Port Royal, 97; Le Beau Port, 114; Port Fortuné, 122; The Attack at Port Fortuné, 129; Port de Tadoucac, 170; Quebec, 175; Abitation de Quebecq, 183; Defeat of the Iroquois at Lake Champlain, 221.

INDEX 259

THE VOYAGES

OF SIEUR DE CHAMPLAIN,

Of Saintonge, Captain in ordinary to the King in the Marine;

OR,

A MOST FAITHFUL JOURNAL OF OBSERVATIONS made in the exploration of New France, describing not only the countries, coasts, rivers, ports, and harbors, with their latitudes and the various deflections of the Magnetic Needle, but likewise the religious belief of the inhabitants, their superstitions, mode of life and warfare; furnished with numerous illustrations.

Together with two geographical maps: the first for the purposes of navigation, adapted to the compass as used by mariners, which deflects to the north-east; the other in its true meridian, with longitudes and latitudes, to which is added the Voyage to the Strait north of Labrador, from the 53d to the 63d degree of latitude, discovered in 1612 by the English when they were searching for a northerly course to China.

PARIS.
JEAN BERJON, Rue St. Jean de Beauvais, at the Flying Horse, and at his store in the Palace, at the gallery of the Prisoners.

M. DC. XIII.

WITH AUTHORITY OF THE KING.

TO THE KING.

SIRE,

Your Majeſty has doubtleſs full knowledge of the diſcoveries made in your ſervice in New France, called Canada, through the deſcriptions, given by certain Captains and Pilots, of the voyages and diſcoveries made there during the paſt eighty years. Theſe, however, preſent nothing ſo honorable to your Kingdom, or ſo profitable to the ſervice of your Majeſty and your ſubjects, as will, I doubt not, the maps of the coaſts, harbors, rivers, and the ſituation of the places deſcribed in this little treatiſe, which I make bold to addreſs to your Majeſty, and which is entitled a Journal of Voyages and Diſcoveries, which I have made in connection with Sieur de Monts, your Lieutenant in New France. This I do, feeling myſelf urged by a juſt ſenſe of the honor I have received during the laſt ten years in commiſſions, not only, Sire, from your Majeſty, but alſo from the late king, Henry the Great, of happy memory, who commiſſioned me to make the moſt exact reſearches and explorations in my power. This I have done, and added, moreover,

over, the maps contained in this little book, where I have ſet forth in particular the dangers to which one would be liable. The ſubjects of your Majeſty, whom you may be pleaſed hereafter to employ for the preſervation of what has been diſcovered, will be able to avoid thoſe dangers through the knowledge afforded by the maps contained in this treatiſe, which will ſerve as an example in your kingdom for increaſing the glory of your Majeſty, the welfare of your ſubjects, and for the honor of the very humble ſervice, for which, to the happy prolongation of your days, is indebted,

Sire,

Your moſt humble, moſt obedient,
and moſt faithful ſervant and ſubject,

CHAMPLAIN.

TO THE QUEEN REGENT,

MOTHER OF THE KING.

MADAME,

Of all the moſt uſeful and excellent arts, that of navigation has always ſeemed to me to occupy the firſt place. For the more hazardous it is, and the more numerous the perils and loſſes by which it is attended, ſo much the more is it eſteemed and exalted above all others, being wholly unſuited to the timid and irreſolute. By this art we obtain knowledge of different countries, regions, and realms. By it we attract and bring to our own land all kinds of riches, by it the idolatry of paganiſm is overthrown and Chriſtianity proclaimed throughout all the regions of the earth. This is the art which from my early age has won my love, and induced me to expoſe myſelf almoſt all my life to the impetuous waves of the ocean, and led me to explore the coaſts of a part of America, eſpecially of New France, where I have always deſired to ſee the Lily flouriſh, and alſo the only religion, catholic, apoſtolic, and Roman. This I truſt now to accompliſh with the help of God, aſſiſted by the favor of your Majeſty, whom I moſt humbly entreat

to

to continue to ſuſtain us, in order that all may ſucceed to the honor of God, the welfare of France, and the ſplendor of your reign, for the grandeur and proſperity of which I will pray God to attend you always with a thouſand bleſſings, and will remain,

MADAME,

Your moſt humble, moſt obedient,
and moſt faithful ſervant and ſubject,

CHAMPLAIN.

EXTRACT FROM THE LICENSE.

BY letters patent of the KING, given at Paris the ninth of January, 1613, and in the third year of our reign, by the King in his Council, PERREAU, and ſealed with the ſimple yellow ſeal, it is permitted to JEAN BERJON, printer and bookſeller in this city of Paris, to print, or have printed by whomſoever it may ſeem good to him, a book entitled *The Voyages of Samuel de Champlain of Saintonge, Captain in ordinary for the King in the Marine, &c.*, for the time and limit of ſix entire conſecutive years, from the day when this book ſhall have been printed up to the ſaid time of ſix years. By the ſame letters, in like manner all printers, merchant bookſellers, and any others whatever, are forbidden to print or have printed, to ſell or diſtribute ſaid book during the aforeſaid time, without the ſpecial conſent of ſaid BERJON, or of him to whom he ſhall give permiſſion, on pain of confiſcation of ſo many of ſaid books as ſhall be found, and a diſcretionary fine, as is more fully ſet forth in the aforeſaid letters.

VOYAGES

OF

SIEUR DE CHAMPLAIN.

VOYAGE IN THE YEAR 1604.

CHAPTER I.

THE BENEFITS OF COMMERCE HAVE INDUCED SEVERAL PRINCES TO SEEK AN EASIER ROUTE FOR TRAFFIC WITH THE PEOPLE OF THE EAST. — SEVERAL UNSUCCESSFUL VOYAGES. — DETERMINATION OF THE FRENCH FOR THIS PURPOSE. — UNDERTAKING OF SIEUR DE MONTS: HIS COMMISSION AND ITS REVOCATION. — NEW COMMISSION TO SIEUR DE MONTS TO ENABLE HIM TO CONTINUE HIS UNDERTAKING.

THE inclinations of men differ according to their varied diſpoſitions; and each one in his calling has his particular end in view. Some aim at gain, ſome at glory, ſome at the public weal. The greater number are engaged in trade, and eſpecially that which is tranſacted on the ſea. Hence ariſe the principal ſupport of the people, the opulence and honor of ſtates. This is what raiſed ancient Rome to the ſovereignty and maſtery over the entire world, and the Venetians to a grandeur equal to that of powerful kings. It has

in all times cauſed maritime towns to abound in riches, among which Alexandria and Tyre are diſtinguiſhed, and numerous others, which fill up the regions of the interior with the objects of beauty and rarity obtained from foreign nations. For this reaſon, many princes have ſtriven to find a northerly route to China, in order to facilitate commerce with the Orientals, in the belief that this route would be ſhorter and leſs dangerous.

In the year 1496, the king of England commiſſioned John Cabot and his ſon Sebaſtian to engage in this ſearch.[1] About the ſame time, Don Emanuel, king of Portugal, deſpatched on the ſame errand Gaſpar Cortereal, who returned without attaining his object. Reſuming his journeys the year after, he died in the undertaking; as did alſo his brother Michel, who was proſecuting it perſeveringly.[2] In the years 1534 and 1535, Jacques Cartier received a like commiſſion from King Francis I., but was arreſted in his courſe.[3] Six years after, Sieur de Roberval, having renewed it, ſent Jean Alfonſe

[1] The firſt commiſſion was granted by Henry VII. of England to John Cabot and his three ſons, Lewis, Sebaſtian, and Sancius, March 5, 1496. — *Rymer's Fœdera*, Vol. XII. p. 595. The firſt voyage, however, was made in 1497. The ſecond commiſſion was granted to John Cabot alone, in 1498. — *Vide Hakluyt*, 1600, London, ed. 1810, Vol. III. pp. 25–31.

[2] Cortereal made two voyages under the patronage of Emmanuel, King of Portugal, the firſt in 1500, the ſecond in 1501. In the latter year, he ſailed with two ſhips from Liſbon, and explored ſix hundred miles or more on our northern coaſt. The veſſel in which he ſailed was loſt; and he periſhed, together with fifty natives whom he had captured. The other veſſel returned, and reported the incidents of the expedition. The next year, Michael Cortereal, the brother of Gaſpar, obtained a commiſſion, and went in ſearch of his brother; but he did not return, and no tidings were ever heard of him.

[3] Jacques Cartier made three voyages in 1534, 1535, and 1540, reſpectively, in which he effected very important diſcoveries; and Charlevoix juſtly remarks that Cartier's Memoirs long ſerved as a guide to thoſe who after him navigated the gulf and river of St. Lawrence. For Cartier's commiſſion, ſee *Hazard's State Papers*, Vol. I. p. 19.

Alfonſe of Saintonge farther northward along the coaſt of Labrador;[4] but he returned as wiſe as the others. In the years 1576, 1577, and 1578, Sir Martin Frobiſher, an Engliſhman, made three voyages along the northern coaſts. Seven years later, Humphrey Gilbert, alſo an Engliſhman, ſet out with five ſhips, but ſuffered ſhipwreck on Sable Iſland, where three of his veſſels were loſt. In the ſame and two following years, John Davis, an Engliſhman, made three voyages for the ſame object; penetrating to the 72d degree, as far as a ſtrait which is called at the preſent day by his name. After him, Captain Georges made alſo a voyage in 1590, but in conſequence of the ice was compelled to return without having made any diſcovery.[5] The Hollanders, on their

[4] Roberval's voyage was made in 1542, and is reported by Jean Alfonſe. — *Vide Hakluyt*, 1600, London, ed. 1810, Vol. III. p. 291. On an old map, drawn about the middle of the ſixteenth century, Roberval is repreſented in a full-length portrait, clad in mail, with ſword and ſpear, at the head of a band of armed ſoldiers, penetrating into the wilds of Canada, near the head-waters of the Saguenay. The name, "Monſr. de Roberual," is inſerted near his feet, — *Vide Monuments de la Géographie*, XIX., par M. Jomard, Paris.

[5] For the narrative of the voyages of Frobiſher, Gilbert, and Davis, *vide Hakluyt*, Vol. III. Of the fleet of five veſſels commanded by Sir Humphrey Gilbert, in 1583, the Ralegh put back to England, on account of ſickneſs on board; the Golden Hinde returned ſafely to port; the *Swallow* was left at Newfoundland, to bring home the ſick; the *Delight* was loſt near Sable Iſland; and the *Squirrel* went down on its way to England, ſome days after leaving Sable Iſland. Thus two only were loſt, while a third was left.

There muſt have been ſome error in regard to the voyage of Captain Georges. There is no printed account of a voyage at that time by any one of this name. There are two theories on which this ſtatement may be explained. There may have been a voyage by a Captain Georges, which, for ſome unknown reaſon, was never reported; or, what is more likely, Champlain may refer to the voyage of Captain George Weymouth, undertaken in 1602 for the East Ind. Company, which was defeated by the icebergs which he encountered, and the mutiny of his men. It was not uncommon to omit part of a name at that period. Of Pont Gravé, the laſt name is frequently omitted by Champlain and by Leſcarbot. The report of Weymouth's voyage was not printed till after Champlain wrote; and he might eaſily have miſtaken the date.

their part, had no more preciſe knowledge in the direction of Nova Zembla.

So many voyages and diſcoveries without reſult, and attended with ſo much hardſhip and expenſe, have cauſed us French in late years to attempt a permanent ſettlement in thoſe lands which we call New France,[6] in the hope of thus realizing more eaſily this object; ſince the voyage in ſearch of the deſired paſſage commences on the other ſide of the ocean, and is made along the coaſt of this region.[7] Theſe conſiderations had induced the Marquis de la Roche, in 1598, to take a commiſſion from the king for making a ſettlement in the above region. With this object, he landed men and ſupplies on Sable Iſland;[8] but, as the conditions which had been accorded to him by his Majeſty were not fulfilled, he was obliged to abandon his undertaking, and leave his men there. A year after, Captain Chauvin accepted another commiſſion to tranſport ſettlers to the ſame region;[9] but, as this was ſhortly after revoked, he proſecuted the matter no farther.

After the above,[10] notwithſtanding all theſe accidents and diſappointments, Sieur de Monts deſired to attempt what had been

[6] The name of New France, *Nova Francia*, appears on a map in Ptolemy published at Baſle in 1540.

[7] The controlling object of the numerous voyages to the north-eaſt coaſt of America had hitherto been to diſcover a ſhorter courſe to India. In this reſpect, as Champlain ſtates above, they had all proved failures. He here intimates that the ſettlements of the French on this coaſt were intended to facilitate this deſign. It is obvious that a colonial eſtabliſhment would offer great advantages as a baſe in proſecuting ſearches for this deſired paſſage to Cathay.

[8] For ſome account of this diſaſtrous expedition, ſee *Memoir*, Vol. I.

[9] *Vide Memoir*, Vol. I.

[10] It will be obſerved that Champlain does not mention the expedition ſent out by Commander de Chaſtes, probably becauſe its object was exploration, and not actual ſettlement. — *Vide* an account of De Chaſtes in the *Memoir*, Vol. I.

been given up in deſpair, and requeſted a commiſſion for this purpoſe of his Majeſty, being ſatisfied that the previous enterpriſes had failed becauſe the undertakers of them had not received aſſiſtance, who had not ſucceeded, in one nor even two years' time, in making the acquaintance of the regions and people there, nor in finding harbors adapted for a ſettlement. He propoſed to his Majeſty a means for covering theſe expenſes, without drawing any thing from the royal revenues; viz., by granting to him the monopoly of the fur-trade in this land. This having been granted to him, he made great and exceſſive outlays, and carried out with him a large number of men of various vocations. Upon his arrival, he cauſed the neceſſary number of habitations for his followers to be conſtructed. This expenditure he continued for three conſecutive years, after which, in conſequence of the jealouſy and annoyance of certain Baſque merchants, together with ſome from Brittany, the monopoly which had been granted to him was revoked by the Council to the great injury and loſs of Sieur de Monts, who, in conſequence of this revocation, was compelled to abandon his entire undertaking, ſacrificing his labors and the outfit for his ſettlement.

But ſince a report had been made to the king on the fertility of the ſoil by him, and by me on the feaſibility of diſcovering the paſſage to China,[11] without the inconveniences of the ice of the north or the heats of the torrid zone, through

[11] In Champlain's report of the voyage of 1603, after obtaining what information he could from the natives relating to the St. Lawrence and the chain of lakes, he ſays they informed him that the laſt lake in the chain was ſalt, and he therefore believed it to be the South Sea. He doubtleſs enlarged verbally before the king upon the feaſibility of a paſſage to China in this way.

through which our ſailors paſs twice in going and twice in returning, with inconceivable hardſhips and riſks, his Majeſty directed Sieur de Monts to make a new outfit, and ſend men to continue what he had commenced. This he did. And, in view of the uncertainty of his commiſſion,[12] he choſe a new ſpot for his ſettlement, in order to deprive jealous perſons of any ſuch diſtruſt as they had previouſly conceived. He was alſo influenced by the hope of greater advantages in caſe of ſettling in the interior, where the people are civilized, and where it is eaſier to plant the Chriſtian faith and eſtabliſh ſuch order as is neceſſary for the protection of a country, than along the ſea-ſhore, where the ſavages generally dwell. From this courſe, he believed the king would derive an ineſtimable profit; for it is eaſy to ſuppoſe that Europeans will ſeek out this advantage rather than thoſe of a jealous and intractable diſpoſition to be found on the ſhores, and the barbarous tribes.[13]

CHAPTER II.

[12] The commiſſion here referred to was doubtleſs the one renewed to him in 1608, after he had made his ſearches on the ſhores of New England and Nova Scotia, and after the commiſſion or charter of 1603 had been revoked. Champlain is here ſtating the advantages of a ſettlement in the interior, on the ſhores of the St. Lawrence, rather than on the Atlantic coaſt.

[13] In this chapter, Champlain ſpeaks of events ſtretching through ſeveral years; but in the next he confines himſelf to the occurrences of 1603, when De Monts obtained his charter.

CHAPTER II.

DESCRIPTION OF SABLE ISLAND; CAPE BRETON; LA HÈVE; PORT AU MOUTON; PORT CAPE NEGRÉ; SABLE BAY AND CAPE; CORMORANT ISLAND; CAPE FOURCHU; LONG ISLAND; BAY OF SAINT MARY; PORT SAINT MARGARET; AND OF ALL NOTEWORTHY OBJECTS ALONG THIS COAST.

SIEUR DE MONTS, by virtue of his commiſſion[14] having publiſhed in all the ports and harbors of this kingdom the prohibition againſt the violation of the monopoly of the fur-trade accorded him by his Majeſty, gathered together about one hundred and twenty artiſans, whom he embarked in two veſſels: one of a hundred and twenty tons, commanded by Sieur de Pont Gravé;[15] another, of a hundred and fifty tons, in which he embarked himſelf,[16] together with ſeveral noblemen.

We ſet out from Havre de Grâce April 7th, 1604, and Pont Gravé April 10th, to rendezvous at Canſeau,[17] twenty leagues from

[14] *Vide Commiſſion du Roy au Sieur de Monts, pour l'habitation ès terres de la Cadie, Canada, et autres endroits en la Nouvelle-France*, Hiſtoire de la Nouvelle-France, par Marc Leſcarbot, Paris, 1612, Qvat. Liv. p. 431. This charter may alſo be found in Engliſh in a *Collection of Voyages and Travels compiled from the Library of the Earl of Oxford, by Thomas Oſborne*, London, 1745, Vol. II. pp. 796–798; alſo in *Murdoch's Hiſtory of Nova Scotia*, Halifax, 1865, Vol. I. pp. 21–24.

[15] The ſecond officer, or pilot, was, according to Leſcarbot, Captain Morel, of Honfleur.

[16] This was under the direction of De Monts himſelf; and Captain Timothée, of Havre de Grâce, was pilot, or the ſecond officer.

[17] Leſcarbot writes this name Campſeau; Champlain's orthography is Canceau; the Engliſh often write Canſo, but more correctly Canſeau. It has been derived from *Canſoke*, an Indian word, meaning *facing the frowning cliffs*.

from Cape Breton.[18] But, after we were in mid-ocean, Sieur de Monts changed his plan, and directed his course towards Port Mouton, it being more southerly and also more favorable for landing than Canseau.

On May 1st, we sighted Sable Island, where we ran a risk of being lost in consequence of the error of our pilots, who were deceived in their calculation, which they made forty leagues ahead of where we were.

This island is thirty leagues distant north and south from Cape Breton, and in length is about fifteen leagues. It contains a small lake. The island is very sandy, and there are no trees at all of considerable size, only copse and herbage, which serve as pasturage for the bullocks and cows, which the Portuguese carried there more than sixty years ago, and which were very serviceable to the party of the Marquis de la Roche. The latter, during their sojourn of several years there, captured a large number of very fine black foxes,[19] whose

[18] The Cape and Island of Cape Breton appear to have taken their name from the fishermen of Brittany, who frequented that region as early as 1504. — *Vide Champlain's Voyages*, Paris, 1632, p. 9.

Thévet sailed along the coast in 1556, and is quoted by Laverdière, as follows: "In this land there is a province called Campestre de Berge, extending towards the south-east; in the eastern part of the same is the cape or promontory of Lorraine, called so by us; others have given it the name of the Cape of the Bretons, since the Bretons, Biscayans, and Normans repair thither, and coast along on their way to Newfoundland to fish for codfish."

An inscription, "*tera que foÿ descuberta por bertomẽs*," on an old Portuguese map of 1520, declares it to be a country discovered by the Bretons. It is undoubtedly the oldest French name on any part of North America. On Gastaldo's map in Mattiolo's Italian translation of Ptolemy, 1548, the name of Breton is applied both to Nova Scotia and to the Island of Cape Breton.

[19] Winthrop says that Mr. John Rose, who was cast away on Sable Island about 1633, "saw about eight hundred cattle, small and great, all red, and the largest he ever saw; and many foxes, wherof some perfect black." — *Winthrop's Hist. New Eng.*, Boston, 1853, Vol. I. p. 193.

Champlain doubtless obtained his information in regard to the cattle left upon Sable Island by the Portuguese from the report of Edward Haies on the

whoſe ſkins they carefully preſerved. There are many ſea-wolves[20] there, with the ſkins of which they clothed themſelves ſince they had exhauſted their own ſtock of garments. By order of the Parliamentary Court of Rouen, a veſſel was ſent there to recover them.[21] The directors of the enterpriſe caught codfiſh near the iſland, the neighborhood of which abounds in ſhoals.

On the 8th of the ſame month, we ſighted Cap de la Hève,[22] to the eaſt of which is a bay, containing ſeveral iſlands

the voyage of Sir Humphrey Gilbert in 1583:

"Sablon lieth to the ſea-ward of Cape Briton about twenty-five leagues, whither we were determined to goe vpon intelligence we had of a Portugal (during our abode in S. Johns) who was himſelfe preſent, when the Portugals (aboue thirty yeeres paſt) did put in the ſame Iſland both Neat and Swine to breede, which were ſince exceedingly multiplied. This ſeemed vnto vs very happy tidings, to haue in an Iſland lying ſo neere vnto the maine, which we intended to plant vpon, ſuch ſtore of cattell, whereby we might at all times conueniently be relieued of victuall, and ſerued of ſtore for breed." — *Edward Haies in Hakluyt's Voyages*, London, ed. 1810, Vol. III. p. 197.

[20] "Loups marins," ſeals.

[21] "The forty poor wretches whom he left on Sable Iſland found on the ſeaſhore ſome wrecks of veſſels, out of which they built barracks to ſhield themſelves from the ſeverity of the weather. They were the remains of Spaniſh veſſels, which had failed to ſettle Cape Breton. From theſe ſame ſhips had come ſome ſheep and cattle, which had multiplied on Sable Iſland; and this was for ſome time a reſource for theſe poor exiles. Fiſh was their next food; and, when their clothes were worn out, they made new ones of ſeal-ſkin. At laſt, after a lapſe of ſeven years, the king, having heard of their adventure, obliged Chedotel, the pilot, to go for them; but he found only twelve, the reſt having died of their hardſhips. His majeſty deſired to ſee thoſe, who returned in the ſame guiſe as found by Chedotel, covered with ſeal-ſkin, with their hair and beard of a length and diſorder that made them reſemble the pretended river-gods, and ſo disfigured as to inſpire horror. The king gave them fifty crowns apiece, and ſent them home releaſed from all proceſs of law." — *Shea's Charlevoix*, New York, 1866, Vol. I. p. 244. See alſo *Sir William Alexander and American Colonization*, Prince Society, 1873, p. 174; *Murdoch's Nova Scotia*, Vol. I. p. 11; *Hakluyt*, Vol. II. pp. 679, 697.

[22] This cape ſtill bears the ſame name, and is the weſtern point of the bay at the mouth of a river, likewiſe of the ſame name, in the county of Lunenberg, Nova Scotia. It is an abrupt cliff, riſing up one hundred and fifty feet above the level of the ſea. It could therefore be ſeen at a great diſtance, and appears to have been the firſt land ſighted by them on the coaſt of La Cadie. A little north of Havre de Grâce, in Normandy, the port from which De Monts and Champlain had ſailed, is to be ſeen the high, commanding,

iſlands covered with fir-trees. On the main land are oaks, elms, and birches. It joins the coaſt of La Cadie at the latitude of 44° 5′, and at 16° 15′ of the deflection of the magnetic needle, diſtant eaſt-north-eaſt eighty-five leagues from Cape Breton, of which we ſhall ſpeak hereafter.

On the 12th of May, we entered another port,[23] five leagues from Cap de la Hève, where we captured a veſſel engaged in the fur-trade in violation of the king's prohibition. The maſter's

---

CHAMPLAIN'S EXPLANATION OF THE ACCOMPANYING MAP.

PORT DE LA HÈVE.

The figures indicate fathoms of water.

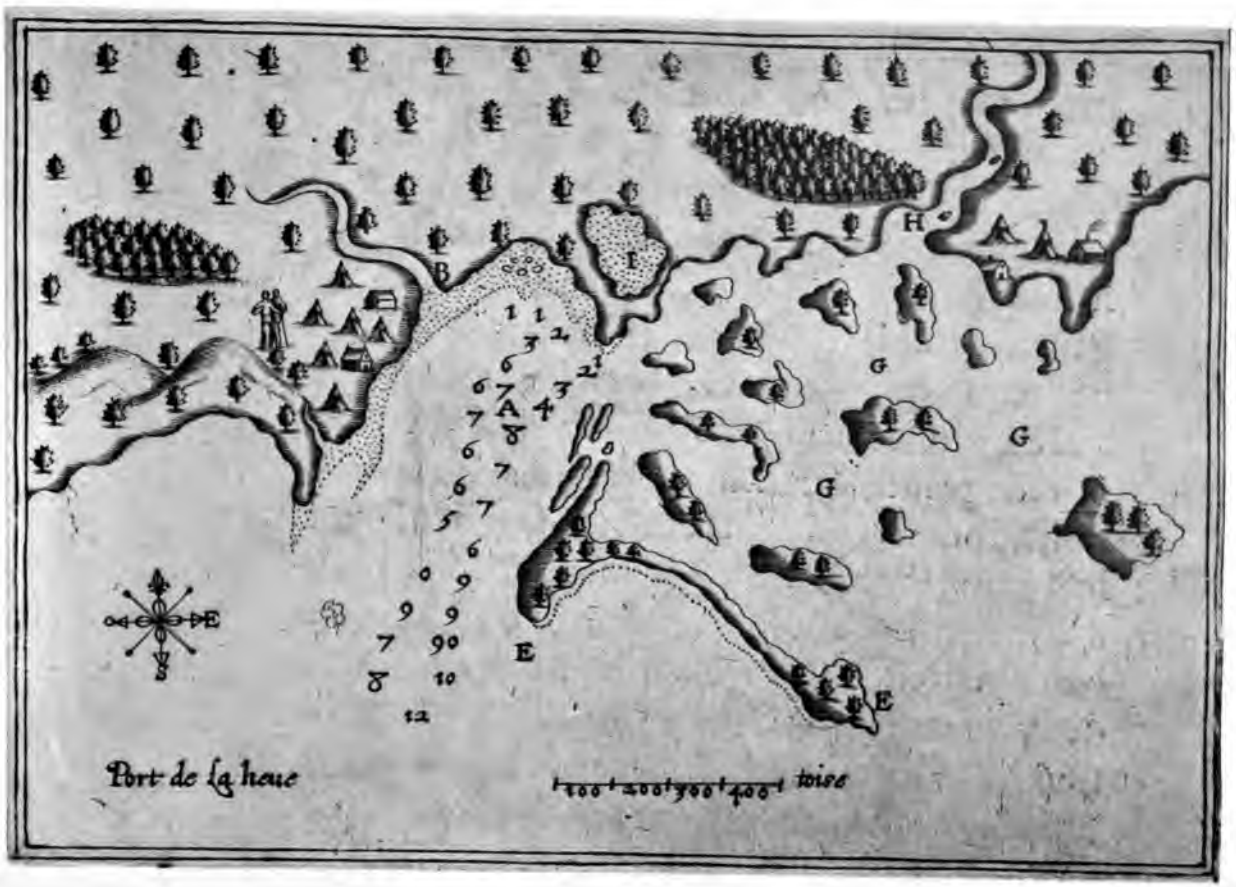
A. The place where veſſels anchor. *B*. A ſmall river dry at low tide. *C*. Places where the ſavages have their cabins.[1] *D*. Shoal at the entrance of the harbor.[2] *E*. A ſmall iſland covered with wood.[3] *F*. Cape de la Hève.[4] *G*. Bay where there are many iſlands covered with wood. *H*. A river extending ſix or ſeven leagues inland with but little water. *I*. A pond near the ſea.

NOTES. 1. The letter *C* is wanting, but the location of the cabins is obvious. 2. The letter *D* is alſo wanting, but the figures ſufficiently indicate the depth of the water. 3. The letter *E* appears twice by miſtake. 4. The letter *F* is likewiſe wanting. It has been ſuppoſed to be repreſented by one of the *E*'s on the ſmall iſland, but Cap de la Hève, to which it refers, was not on this iſland, but on the main land. The *F* ſhould have been, we think, on the weſt of the harbor, where the elevation is indicated on the map. *Vide* note 22.

---

commanding, rocky bluff, known as *Cap de la Hève*. The place which they firſt ſighted, ſimilar at leaſt in ſome reſpects, they evidently named after this bold and ſtriking headland, which may, perhaps, have been the laſt object which they ſaw on leaving the ſhores of France. The word *Hève* ſeems to have had a local meaning, as may be inferred from the following excerpt: "A name, in Lower Normandy, for cliffs hollowed out below, and where fiſhermen ſearch for crabs." —*Littré*. The harbor delineated on Champlain's local map is now called Palmerſton Bay, and is at the mouth of Petit River. The latitude of this harbor is about 44° 15′. De Laet's deſcription is fuller than that of Champlain or Leſcarbot. —*Vide Novus Orbis*, 1633, p. 51.

[23] Liverpool, which for a long time bore the name of Port Roſſignol; the lake at the head of the river, about ten miles long and two or three wide, the largeſt in Nova Scotia, ſtill bears that appellation. The latitude is 44° 2′ 30″.


Port de la heue
100 200 300 400 toise

iſlands covered with fir-trees. On th
elms, and birches. It joins the coa
latitude of 44° 5′, and at 16° 15′ of the
netic needle, diſtant eaſt-north-eaſt e
Cape Breton, of which we ſhall ſpeak

On the 12th of May, we entered ar
from Cap de la Hève, where we ca
in the fur-trade in violation of the k

CHAMPLAIN'S EXPLANATION OF THE

PORT DE LA HÈVE

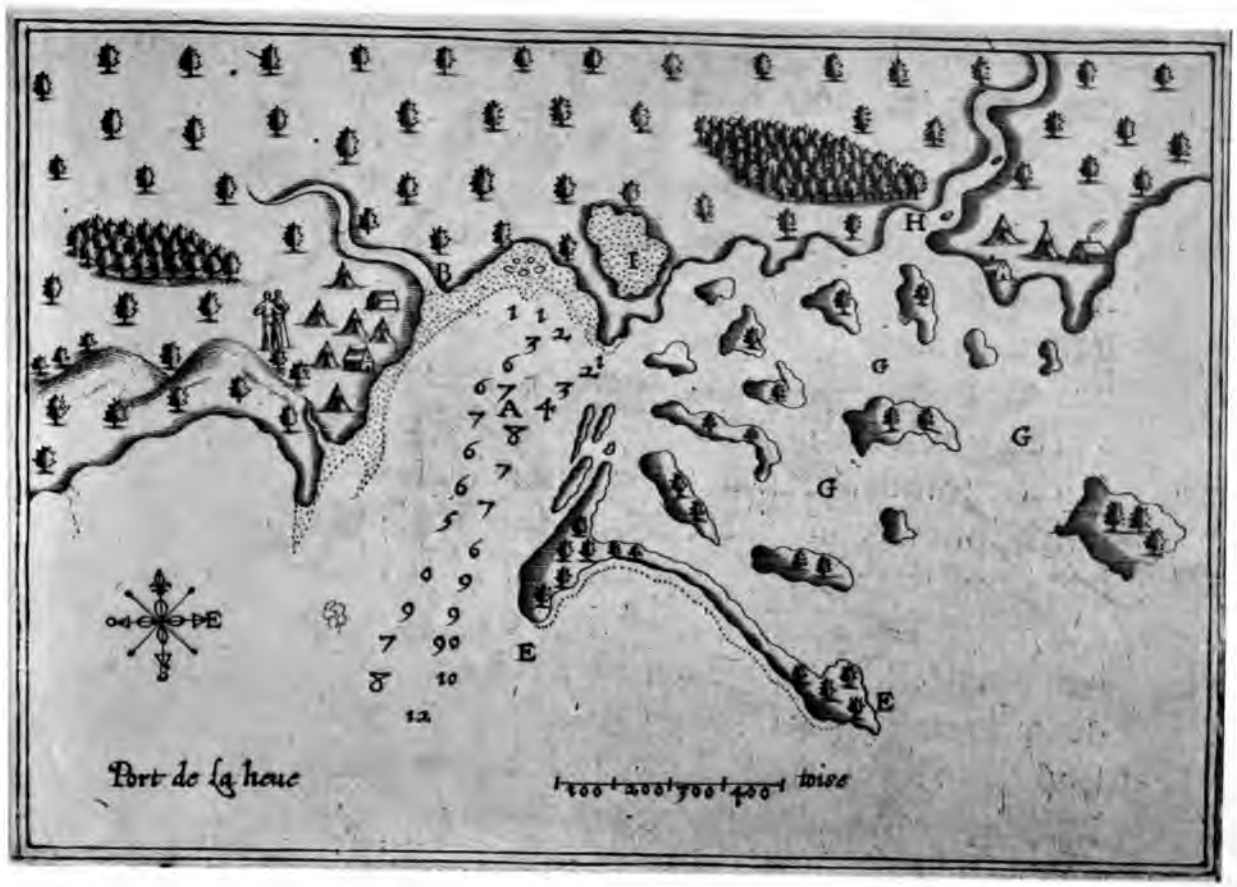
The figures indicate fathoms

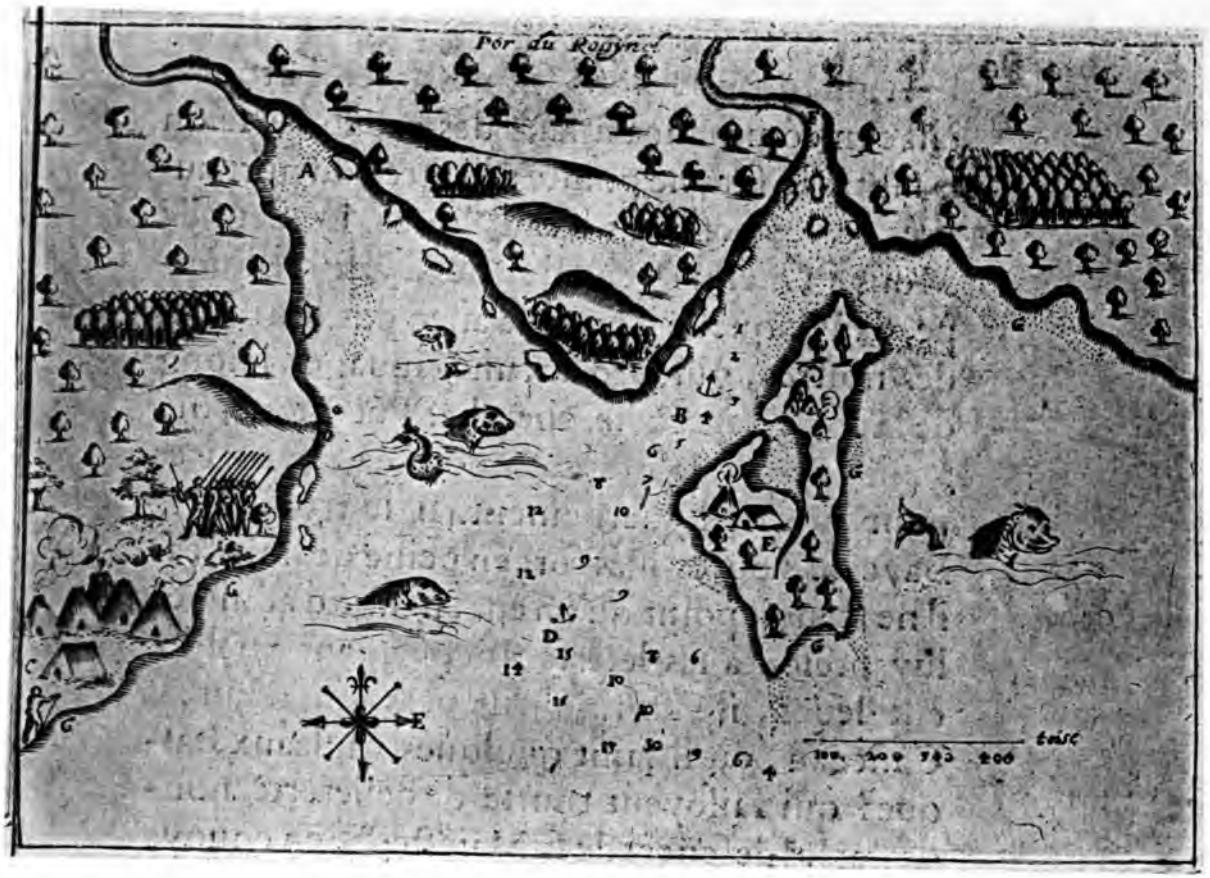
A. The place where veſſels anchor. *B*. A
Places where the ſavages have their cabins.[1]
harbor.[2] *E*. A ſmall iſland covered with wood.[3]
where there are many iſlands covered with woo
ſeven leagues inland with but little water. *I*. A

NOTES. 1. The letter *C* is wanting, but the
2. The letter *D* is alſo wanting, but the figur
the water. 3. The letter *E* appears twice by
wiſe wanting. It has been ſuppoſed to be rep
ſmall iſland, but Cap de la Hève, to which it r
the main land. The *F* ſhould have been, we
where the elevation is indicated on the map.

---

commanding, rocky bluff, known as *Cap de la Hève*. The place which they firſt ſighted, ſimilar at leaſt in ſome reſpects, they evidently named after this bold and ſtriking headland, which may, perhaps, have been the laſt object which they ſaw on leaving the ſhores of France. The word *Hève* ſeems to have had a local meaning, as may be inferred from the following excerpt: "A name, in Lower Normandy, for cliffs hollowed out below, and where fiſhermen ſearch for crabs." —*Littré*. The harbor delineated on


B
I
H
G
G
G
E
E
E
Port de la heue
toises


Por du Rossyne
A
B
D
E
G
toise
100 200 300 400

maſter's name was Roſſignol, whoſe name the port retained, which is in latitude 44° 15′.

On the 13th of May, we arrived at a very fine harbor, where there are two little ſtreams, called Port au Mouton,[24] which is ſeven leagues diſtant from that of Roſſignol. The land is very ſtony, and covered with copſe and heath. There are a great many rabbits, and a quantity of game in conſequence of the ponds there.

As ſoon as we had diſembarked, each one commenced making huts after his faſhion, on a point at the entrance of the harbor near two freſh-water ponds. Sieur de Monts at the ſame time deſpatched a ſhallop, in which he ſent one of us, with ſome ſavages as guides, as bearers of letters, along the coaſt of La Cadie, to ſearch for Pont Gravé, who had a portion of the neceſſary ſupplies for our winter ſojourn. The latter was found at the Bay of All-Iſles,[25] very anxious about us

---

CHAMPLAIN'S EXPLANATION OF THE ACCOMPANYING MAP.

PORT DU ROSSIGNOL.

The figures indicate fathoms of water.

A. A river extending twenty-five leagues inland. *B.* The place where veſſels anchor. *C.* Place on the main land where the ſavages have their dwellings. *D.* Roadſtead where veſſels anchor while waiting for the tide. *E.* Place on the iſland where the ſavages have their cabins. *F.* Channel dry at low tide. *G.* Shore of the main land. The dotted places indicate the ſhoals.

NOTE. It would ſeem as if in the title Roſſÿnol, on the map, the two dots on the *y* inſtead of the *n* were placed there by miſtake.

---

[24] "Lequel ils appelèrent *Le Port du Mouton*, à l'occaſion d'un mouton qui ſ'eſtant nové revint à bord, et fut mangé de bonne guerre." — *Hiſtoire de la Nouvelle-France*, par Marc Leſcarbot, Paris, 1612, Qvat. Liv. p. 449. It ſtill bears the name of Port Mouton, and an iſland in the bay is called Mouton Iſland.

[25] *Baye de Toutes-iſles.* Leſcarbot calls it "La Baye des Iles;" and Charlevoix, "Baye de toutes les Iſles." It was

us (for he knew nothing of the change of plan); and the letters were handed to him. As ſoon as he had read them, he returned to his ſhip at Canſeau, where he ſeized ſome Baſque veſſels[26] engaged in the fur-trade, notwithſtanding the prohibition of his Majeſty, and ſent their maſters to Sieur de Monts, who meanwhile charged me to reconnoitre the coaſt and the harbors ſuitable for the ſecure reception of our veſſel.

With the purpoſe of carrying out his wiſhes, I ſet out from Port Mouton on the 19th of May, in a barque of eight tons, accompanied by Sieur Ralleau, his ſecretary, and ten men. Advancing along the coaſt, we entered a harbor very convenient for veſſels, at the end of which is a ſmall river, extending very far into the main land. This I called the Port of Cape Negro,[27] from a rock whoſe diſtant view reſembles a negro, which riſes out of the water near a cape paſſed by us the ſame day, four leagues off and ten from Port Mouton. This cape is very dangerous, on account of the rocks running out into the ſea. The ſhores which I ſaw, up to that point, are very low, and covered with ſuch wood as that ſeen at the Cap de la Hève; and the iſlands are all filled with game. Going farther on, we paſſed the night at Sable Bay,[28] where veſſels can anchor without any danger. The

was the bay, or rather the waters, that ſtretch along the ſhores of Halifax County, between Owl's Head and Liſcomb River.

[26] The confiſcated proviſions taken in the veſſels of the Baſque fur-traders and in that of Roſſignol were, according to Leſcarbot, found very uſeful. De Monts had given timely notice of his monopoly; and, whether it had reached them or not, they were doubtleſs wrong in law. Although De Monts treated them with gentleneſs, nevertheleſs it is not unlikely that a compromiſe would have been better policy than an entire confiſcation of their property, as theſe Baſques afterwards, on their return to France, gave him ſerious inconvenience. They were inſtrumental mainly in wreſting from him his charter of La Cadie.

[27] *Le Port du Cap Negré.* This port ſtill bears the name of Negro Harbor. It is ſituated at the mouth of the Clyde, the ſmall river referred to in the text.

[28] Near Cape Sable Iſland, at what is now known as Barrington Harbor.

The next day we went to Cape Sable,[29] alſo very dangerous, in conſequence of certain rocks and reefs extending almoſt a league into the ſea. It is two leagues from Sable Bay, where we had ſpent the night before. Thence we went to Cormorant Iſland,[30] a league diſtant, ſo called from the infinite number of cormorants found there, of whoſe eggs we collected a cask full. From this iſland, we ſailed weſterly about ſix leagues, croſſing a bay, which makes up to the north two or three leagues. Then we fell in with ſeveral iſlands[31] diſtant two or three leagues from the main land; and, as well as I could judge, ſome of them were two leagues in extent, others three, and others were ſtill ſmaller. Moſt of them are very dangerous for large veſſels to approach, on account of the tides and the rocks on a level with the water. Theſe iſlands are filled with pines, firs, birches, and aſpens. A little farther out, there are four more. In one, we ſaw ſo great a quantity of birds, called penguins,[32] that we killed them

[29] This is ſtill called Cape Sable, and is the ſouthern point of Sable Iſland, or, more properly, the cluſter of rock, and iſlets that ſurround its ſouthern extremity.

[30] *Iſle aux Cormorans.* It is difficult to diſtinguiſh with certainty the iſland here referred to, but it was probably Hope Iſland, as this lies directly in their way in croſſing the bay, ſix leagues wide, which is now known as Townſend Bay. The bird here mentioned was the common cormorant, *Graculus carbo*, of a gloſſy greeniſh-black color, back and wings bronzy-gray; about three feet in length, and is common on our northern Atlantic coaſt; eminently gregarious, particularly in the breeding ſeaſon, congregating in vaſt flocks. At the preſent time, it breeds in great numbers in Labrador and Newfoundland, and in the winter migrates as far ſouth as the Middle States. They feed principally upon fiſh, lay commonly two eggs, of a pale greeniſh color, overlaid with a white chalky ſubſtance. — *Vide Coues's Key to Nor. Am. Birds*, Boſton, 1872, p. 302.

[31] A cluſter of iſlands now known as the Touſquet or Tuſket Iſlands. Further on, Champlain ſays they named them *Iſles aux loups marins*, Sea-Wolf Iſlands. About five leagues ſouth of them is an iſland now called Seal Iſland. The four more which he ſaw a little further on were probably in Townſend Bay.

[32] This is the Auk, family *Alcidæ*, and muſt not be confounded with the penguin of the ſouthern hemiſphere, although it

them eaſily with ſticks. On another, we found the ſhore completely covered with ſea-wolves,[33] of which we captured as many as we wiſhed. At the two others there is ſuch an abundance of birds of different ſorts that one could not imagine it, if he had not ſeen them. There are cormorants, three kinds of duck, geeſe, *marmettes?*, buſtards, ſea-parrots, ſnipe, vultures, and other birds of prey; gulls, ſea-larks of two or three kinds; herons, large ſea-gulls, curlews, ſea-magpies, divers, oſpreys, *appoils?*, ravens, cranes, and other ſorts which I am not acquainted with, and which alſo make their neſts

it is deſcribed by the early navigators of the Northern Atlantic under that appellation. In Anthony Parkhurſt's letter to Hakluyt, 1578, he ſays: "Theſe birds are alſo called Penguins, and cannot flie, there is more meate in one of theſe then in a gooſe: the Frenchmen that fiſh neere the grand baie, do bring ſmall ſtore of fleſh with them, but victuall themſelues alwayes with theſe birds." — *Hakluyt*, London, ed. 1810, Vol. III. p. 172. Edward Haies, in his report of the voyage of Sir Humphrey Gilbert in 1583, ſays: "We had ſight of an Iſland named Penguin, of a foule there breeding in abundance, almoſt incredible, which cannot flie, their wings not able to carry their body, being very large (not much leſſe then a gooſe), and exceeding fat; which the Frenchmen vſe to take without difficulty vpon that Iſland, and to barrell them vp with ſalt." *Idem*, p. 191.

The Auk is confined to the northern hemiſphere, where it repreſents the penguins of the ſouthern. Several ſpecies occur in the Northern Atlantic in almoſt incredible numbers; they are all marine, feed on fiſh and other animal ſubſtances excluſively, and lay from one to three eggs on the bare rocks. Thoſe ſeen by Champlain and other early navigators were the Great Auk, *Alca impennis*, now nearly extinct. It was formerly found on the coaſt of New England, as is proved not only by the teſtimony of the primitive explorers, but by the remains found in ſhell-heaps. The lateſt diſcovery was of one found dead near St. Auguſtine, in Labrador, in 1870. A ſpecimen of the Great Auk is preſerved in the Cambridge Muſeum. — *Vide Coues's Key to North Am. Birds*, Boſton, 1872, p. 338.

[33] The ſea-wolf or *loup marin* of Champlain is the marine mammiferous quadruped of the family *Phocidæ*, known as the ſeal. Sea-wolf was a name applied to it by the early navigators. — *Vide Purchas's Pilgrims*, London, 1625, Vol. IV. p. 1385. Thoſe here mentioned were the common ſeal, *Phoca vitulina*, which are ſtill found on the coaſts of Nova Scotia, vulgarly known as the harbor ſeal. They are thinly diſtributed as far ſouth as Long Iſland Sound, but are found in great numbers in the waters of Labrador and Newfoundland, where they are taken for the oil obtained from them, and for the ſkins, which are uſed for various purpoſes in the arts.

neſts here.[34] We named theſe Sea-Wolf Iſlands. They are in latitude 43° 30′, diſtant from four to five leagues from the main land, or Cape Sable. After ſpending pleaſantly ſome time there in hunting (and not without capturing much game), we ſet out and reached a cape,[35] which we chriſtened Port Fourchu from its being fork-ſhaped, diſtant from five to ſix leagues from the Sea-Wolf Iſlands. This harbor is very convenient for veſſels at its entrance; but its remoter part is entirely dry at low tide, except the channel of a little ſtream, completely bordered by meadows, which make this ſpot very pleaſant. There is good codfiſhing near the harbor. Departing from there, we ſailed north ten or twelve leagues without finding any harbor for our veſſels, but a number of very fine inlets or ſhores, where the ſoil ſeems to be well adapted for cultivation. The woods are exceedingly fine here, but there are few pines and firs. This coaſt is clear, without iſlands, rocks, or ſhoals; ſo that, in our judgment, veſſels can ſecurely go there. Being diſtant quarter of a league from the coaſt, we went to an iſland called Long Iſland,[36] lying north-north-eaſt and ſouth-ſouth-weſt, which makes an opening into the great Baye Françoiſe,[37] ſo named by Sieur de Monts.

This

[34] The names given to theſe birds were ſuch, doubtleſs, as were known to belong to birds ſimilar in color, ſize, and figure in Europe. Some of them were probably miſapplied. The name alone is not ſufficient for identification.

[35] This cape, near the entrance to Yarmouth, ſtill bears the ſame name, from *fourchu*, forked. On a map of 1755, it is called Forked Cape, and near it is Fork Ledge and Forked Harbor. — *Memorials of Engliſh and French Commiſſaries*, London, 1755.

[36] It ſtill retains the name given to it by Champlain. It forms a part of the weſtern limit of St. Mary's Bay, and a line drawn from it to the St. Croix, cutting the Grand Manan, would mark the entrance of the Bay of Fundy.

[37] The Bay of Fundy was thus firſt named "Baye Françoiſe" by De Monts, and continued to be ſo called, as will appear

This iſland is ſix leagues long, and nearly a league broad in ſome places, in others only quarter of a league. It is covered with an abundance of wood, ſuch as pines and birch. All the coaſt is bordered by very dangerous rocks; and there is no place at all favorable for veſſels, only little inlets for ſhallops at the extremity of the iſland, and three or four ſmall rocky iſlands, where the ſavages capture many ſea-wolves. There are ſtrong tides, eſpecially at the little paſſage[38] of the iſland, which is very dangerous for veſſels running the riſk of paſſing through it.

From Long Iſland paſſage, we ſailed north-eaſt two leagues, when we found a cove[39] where veſſels can anchor in ſafety, and which is quarter of a league or thereabouts in circuit. The bottom is all mire, and the ſurrounding land is bordered by very high rocks. In this place there is a very good ſilver mine, according to the report of the miner, Maſter Simon, who accompanied me. Some leagues farther on, there is a little ſtream called river Boulay[40] where the tide riſes half a league into the land, at the mouth of which veſſels of a hundred tons can eaſily ride at anchor. Quarter of a league from here there is a good harbor for veſſels, where we found an iron mine, which our miner eſtimated would yield fifty per cent.

appear by reference to the early maps, as that of De Laet, 1633; Charlevoix, 1744; Rouge, 1778. It firſt appears diſtinctly on the carte of Diego Homem of 1558, but without name. On Cabot's Mappe-Monde, in "Monuments de la Géographie," we find *rio fondo*, which may repreſent the Bay of Fundy, and may have ſuggeſted the name adopted by the Engliſh, which it ſtill retains. Sir William Alexander's map, 1624, has Argal's Bay; Moll's map, 1712, has Fundi Bay; that of the Engliſh and French Commiſſaries, 1755, has Bay of Fundy, or Argal.

[38] This ſtrait, known by the name Petit Paſſage, ſeparates Long Iſland from Digby Neck.

[39] A place called Little River, on Digby Neck.

[40] Now known as Sandy Cove.

cent.[41] Advancing three leagues farther on to the north-eaſt,[42] we ſaw another very good iron mine, near which is a river ſurrounded by beautiful and attractive meadows. The neighboring ſoil is red as blood. Some leagues farther on there is ſtill another river,[43] dry at low tide, except in its very ſmall channel, and which extends near to Port Royal. At the extremity of this bay is a channel, alſo dry at low tide,[44] ſurrounding which are a number of paſtures and good pieces of land for cultivation, where there are nevertheleſs great numbers of fine trees of all the kinds previouſly mentioned. The diſtance from Long Iſland to the end of this bay may be ſome ſix leagues. The entire coaſt of the mines is very high, interſected by capes, which appear round, extending out a ſhort diſtance. On the other ſide of the bay, on the ſouth-eaſt, the land is low and good, where there is a very good harbor, having a bank at its entrance over which it is neceſſary to paſs. On this bar there is a fathom and a half of water at low tide; but after paſſing it you find three, with good bottom. Between the two points of the harbor there is a pebbly iſlet, covered at full tide. This place extends half a league inland. The tide falls here three fathoms, and there are many ſhell-fiſh, ſuch as muſcles, cockles, and ſea-ſnails. The ſoil is as good as any that I have ſeen. I named this harbor Saint Margaret.[45] This entire ſouth-eaſt coaſt is much lower

[41] Leſcarbot ſays of this iron mine, and of the ſilver mine above, that they were proved not to be abundant.

[42] This was probably near Roſſway.

[43] This was clearly South Creek or Smelt River, which riſes near Annapolis Baſin, or the Port Royal Baſin of the French.

[44] He here doubtleſs refers to North Creek, at the north-eaſtern extremity of St. Mary's Bay.

[45] Now Weymouth Harbor, on the ſouth-eaſtern ſhore of St. Mary's Bay, at the mouth of Siſſibou River, and directly oppoſite Sandy Cove, near the iron mine mentioned above.

lower than that of the mines, which is only a league and a half from the coaſt of Saint Margaret, being ſeparated by the breadth of the bay,[46] which is three leagues at its entrance. I took the altitude at this place, and found the latitude 45° 30′, and a little more,[47] the deflection of the magnetic needle being 17° 16′.

After having explored as particularly as I could the coaſts, ports, and harbors, I returned, without advancing any farther, to Long Iſland paſſage, whence I went back outſide of all the iſlands in order to obſerve whether there was any danger at all on the water ſide. But we found none whatever, except there were ſome rocks about half a league from Sea-Wolf Iſlands, which, however, can be eaſily avoided, ſince the ſea breaks over them. Continuing our voyage, we were overtaken by a violent wind, which obliged us to run our barque aſhore, where we were in danger of loſing her, which would have cauſed us extreme perplexity. The tempeſt having ceaſed, we reſumed the ſea, and the next day reached Port Mouton, where Sieur de Monts was awaiting us from day to day, thinking only of our long ſtay,[48] and whether ſome accident had not befallen us. I made a report to him of our voyage, and

[46] The diſtance acroſs the bay at this point, as here ſtated, is nearly accurate.

[47] This is clearly a miſtake; the true latitude at the Petit Paſſage is 44° 23′. It may here be remarked that Champlain's latitudes are very inaccurate, often varying more than half a degree; doubtleſs owing to the imperfection of the inſtruments which were employed in taking them.

[48] They had been occupied in this exploration about three weeks. Lescarbot ſays a month, but this is an overſtatement. By a careful examination of the text, it will appear that they departed from Port Mouton on the 19th of May, and that ſeveral days after their return, not leſs than nine, they were again in St. Mary's Bay, on the 16th of June. They had been abſent, therefore, about twenty-one days. The latitude of Port Mouton, ſtated a little below to be 44°, is in fact 43° 57′.

and where our veſſels might go in ſafety. Meanwhile, I obſerved very particularly that place which is in latitude 44°.

The next day Sieur de Monts gave orders to weigh anchor and proceed to the Bay of Saint Mary,[49] a place which we had found to be ſuitable for our veſſel to remain in, until we ſhould be able to find one more advantageous. Coaſting along, we paſſed near Cape Sable and the Sea-Wolf Iſlands, whither Sieur de Monts decided to go in a ſhallop, and ſee ſome iſlands of which we had made a report to him, as alſo of the countleſs number of birds found there. Accordingly, he ſet out, accompanied by Sieur de Poutrincourt, and ſeveral other noblemen, with the intention of going to Penguin Iſland, where we had previouſly killed with ſticks a large number of theſe birds. Being ſomewhat diſtant from our ſhip, it was beyond our power to reach it, and ſtill leſs to reach our veſſel; for the tide was ſo ſtrong that we were compelled to put in at a little iſland to paſs the night, where there was much game. I killed there ſome river-birds, which were very acceptable to us, eſpecially as we had taken only a few biſcuit, expecting to return the ſame day. The next day we reached Cape Fourchu, diſtant half a league from there. Coaſting along, we found our veſſel in the Bay of Saint Mary. Our company were very anxious about us for two days, fearing leſt ſome misfortune had befallen us; but, when they ſaw us all ſafe, they were much rejoiced.

Two or three days after our arrival, one of our prieſts, named

[49] This bay, ſtill retaining its ancient appellation, was so named by Champlain on his firſt viſit. "Ceſte baye fut nommée la baye Saincte Marie." — *Champlain's Voyages*, 1632, Quebec ed., Vol. V. p. 716.

named Meſire Aubry[50] from Paris, got loſt ſo completely in the woods while going after his ſword, which he had forgotten, that he could not find the veſſel. And he was thus ſeventeen days without any thing to ſubſiſt upon except ſome four and bitter plants like the ſorrel, and ſome ſmall fruit of little ſubſtance large as currants, which creep upon the ground.[51] Being at his wits' end, without hope of ever ſeeing us again, weak and feeble, he found himſelf on the ſhore of Baye Françoiſe, thus named by Sieur de Monts, near Long Iſland,[52] where his ſtrength gave out, when one of our ſhallops out fiſhing diſcovered him. Not being able to ſhout to them, he made a ſign with a pole, on the end of which he had put his hat, that they ſhould go and get him. This they did at once, and brought him off. Sieur de Monts had cauſed a ſearch to be made not only by his own men, but alſo by the ſavages of thoſe parts, who ſcoured all the woods, but brought

[50] Nicholas Aubry, a young Pariſian of good family, "vn certain homme d'Égliſe," as Leſcarbot ſays, probably not long in holy orders, had undertaken this voyage with De Monts to gratify his deſire to ſee the New World, though quite againſt the wiſhes of his friends, who had ſent in vain to Honfleur to prevent his embarkation. After the ſearch made by De Monts, with the ſounding of trumpets and the diſcharge of cannon, they left St. Mary's Bay, having given up all expectation of his recovery. Some two weeks afterward, an expedition was ſent out to St. Mary's Bay, conducted by De Champdoré, an experienced pilot, with a mineralogiſt, to ſearch for ſilver and iron ore. While ſome of the party were on a fiſhing excurſion, they reſcued him, as ſtated in the text. The ſafe return of the young and too venturesome eccleſiaſtic gave great relief to De Monts, as Leſcarbot ſays a Proteſtant was charged to have killed him, becauſe they quarrelled ſometimes about their religion. — *Vide Hiſtoire de Nouvelle-France*, par Marc Leſcarbot, Paris, 1612, Qvat. Liv. p. 453.

[51] The partridge-berry, *Mitchella*, a trailing evergreen, bearing ſcarlet berries, edible but nearly taſteleſs, which remain through the winter. It is peculiar to America, and this is probably the firſt time it was noticed by any hiſtorical writer.

[52] He was on the weſtern ſide of Digby Neck, at its ſouthern extremity, near the Petit Paſſage on the ſhore of the Bay of Fundy.

brought back no intelligence of him. Believing him to be dead, they all ſaw him coming back in the ſhallop to their great delight. A long time was needed to reſtore him to his uſual ſtrength.

CHAPTER III.

DESCRIPTION OF PORT ROYAL AND THE PECULIARITIES OF THE SAME. — ISLE HAUTE. — PORT OF MINES. — BAYE FRANÇOISE. — THE RIVER ST. JOHN, AND WHAT WE OBSERVED BETWEEN THE PORT OF MINES AND THE SAME. — THE ISLAND CALLED BY THE SAVAGES MANTHANE. — THE RIVER OF THE ETECHEMINS, AND SEVERAL FINE ISLANDS THERE. — ST. CROIX ISLAND, AND OTHER NOTEWORTHY OBJECTS ON THIS COAST.

SOME days after, Sieur de Monts decided to go and examine the coaſts of Baye Françoiſe. For this purpoſe, he ſet out from the veſſel on the 16th of May,[53] and we went through the ſtrait of Long Iſland.[54] Not having found in St. Mary's Bay any place in which to fortify ourſelves except at the coſt of much time, we accordingly reſolved to ſee whether there might not be a more favorable one in the other bay. Heading north-eaſt ſix leagues, there is a cove where veſſels can anchor in four, five, ſix, and ſeven fathoms of water. The bottom is ſandy. This place is only a kind of roadſtead.[55] Continuing two leagues farther on in the ſame direction, we entered one of the fineſt harbors I had ſeen along all theſe coaſts,

[53] For May read June. It could not have been in May, ſince Champlain ſet out from Port Mouton on his exploring expedition on the 19th of May, which muſt have been a month previous to this.

[54] What is now called the Petit Paſſage, the narrow ſtrait between Long Iſland and Digby Neck.

[55] Gulliver's Hole, about two leagues ſouth-weſt of Digby Strait.

coaſts, in which two thouſand veſſels might lie in ſecurity. The entrance is eight hundred paces broad; then you enter a harbor two leagues long and one broad, which I have named Port Royal.[56] Three rivers empty into it, one of which is very large, extending eaſtward, and called Rivière de l'Équille,[57] from a little fiſh of the ſize of an *eſplan ?*, which is caught there in large numbers, as is alſo the herring, and ſeveral other kinds of fiſh found in abundance in their ſeaſon. This river is nearly a quarter of a league broad at its entrance, where there is an iſland[58] perhaps half a league in circuit, and covered with wood like all the reſt of the country,

---

CHAMPLAIN'S DESCRIPTION OF THE ACCOMPANYING MAP.

PORT AU MOUTON.

The figures indicate fathoms of water.

A. Place where veſſels lie. *B*. Place where we made our camp. *C*. A pond. *D*. An iſland at the entrance to the harbor, covered with wood. *E*. A river very ſhallow. *F*. A pond. *G*. A very large brook coming from the pond F. *H*. Six little iſlands in the harbor. *L*. Country, containing only copſe and heath of very ſmall ſize. *M*. Sea-ſhore.

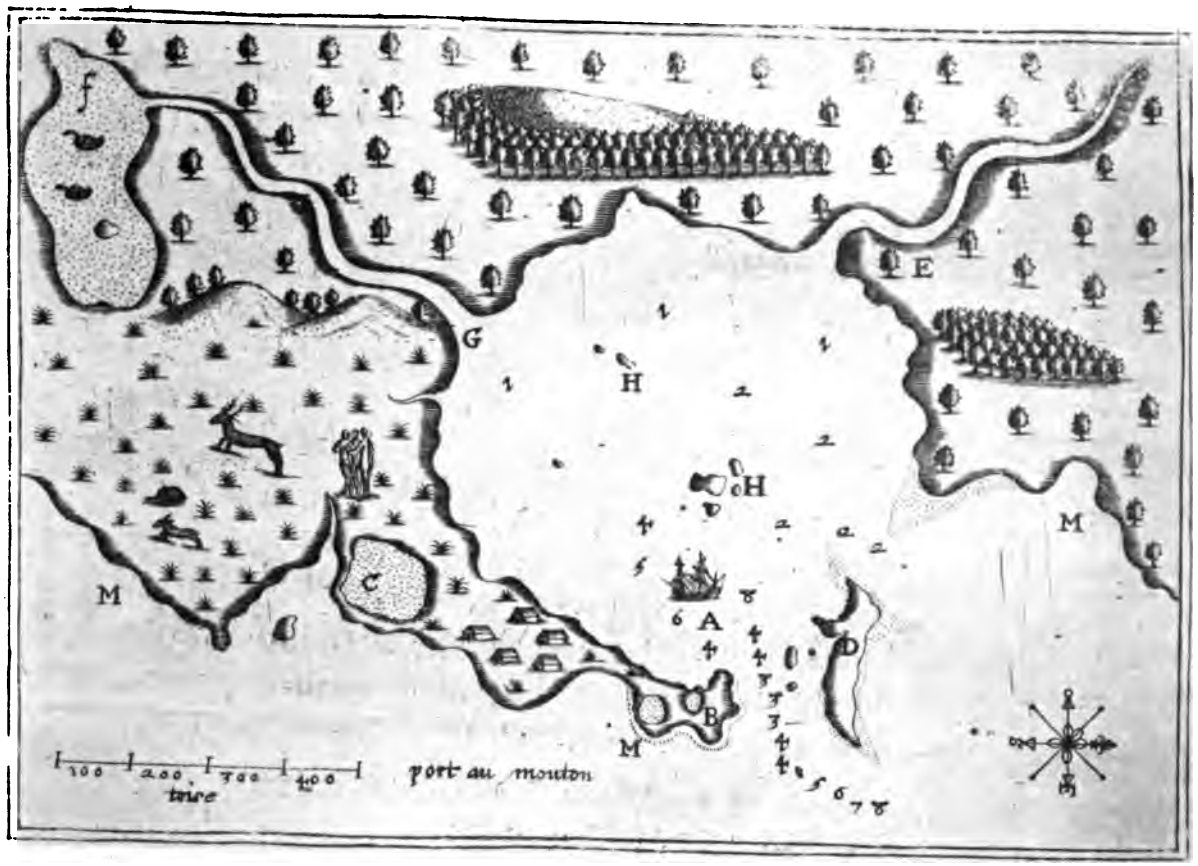
NOTE. — The wanting letter L ſhould probably be placed where the trees are repreſented as very ſmall, between the letters B and the iſland F.

---

[56] Champlain here names the whole harbor or baſin Port Royal, and not the place of habitation afterward ſo called. The firſt ſettlement was on the north ſide of the bay in the preſent hamlet of Lower Granville, not as often alleged at Annapolis. — *Vide* Champlain's engraving or map of Port Royal.

[57] "Équille." A name, on the coaſts between Caen and Havre, of the fiſh called *lançon* at Granville and St. Malo, a kind of malacopterygious fiſh, living on ſandy ſhores and hiding in the ſand at low tide. — *Littré*. A ſpecies of ſand eel. This ſtream is now known as the Annapolis River. Leſcarbot calls it Rivière du Dauphin.

[58] This iſland is ſituated at the point where the Annapolis River flows into the bay, or about nine miles from Digby, ſtraight. Champlain on his map gives it no name, but Leſcarbot calls it Biencourville. It is now called Goat Iſland.


f
G
H
H
E
M
M
C
A
D
B
M
100 200 300 400
toise
port au mouton

try, as pines, firs, ſpruces, birches, aſpens, and ſome oaks, although the latter are found in ſmall numbers in compariſon with the other kinds. There are two entrances to the above river, one on the north, the other on the ſouth ſide of the iſland. That on the north is the better, and veſſels can there anchor under ſhelter of the iſland in five, ſix, ſeven, eight, and nine fathoms. But it is neceſſary to be on one's guard againſt ſome ſhallows near the iſland on the one ſide, and the main land on the other, very dangerous, if one does not know the channel.

We aſcended the river ſome fourteen or fifteen leagues, where the tide riſes, and it is not navigable much farther. It has there a breadth of ſixty paces, and about a fathom and a half of water. The country bordering the river is filled with numerous oaks, aſhes, and other trees. Between the mouth of the river and the point to which we aſcended there are many meadows, which are flooded at the ſpring tides, many little ſtreams traverſing them from one ſide to the other, through which ſhallops and boats can go at full tide. This place was the moſt favorable and agreeable for a ſettlement that we had ſeen. There is another iſland[59] within the port, diſtant nearly two leagues from the former. At this point is another little ſtream, extending a conſiderable diſtance inland, which we named Rivière St. Antoine.[60] Its mouth is diſtant from the end of the Bay of St. Mary ſome four leagues through the woods. The remaining river is

[59] Leſcarbot calls it Claudiane. It is now known as Bear Iſland. It was ſometimes called Ile d'Hébert, and likewiſe Imbert Iſland. Laverdière ſuggeſts that the preſent name is derived from the French pronunciation of the laſt ſyllable of Imbert.

[60] At preſent known as Bear River; Leſcarbot has it Hebert, and Charlevoix, Imbert.

is only a small stream filled with [illegible], which cannot be ascended at all on account of the small amount of water, and which has been named [illegible]. This place is in latitude [illegible] and [illegible] S' [illegible] the magnetic needle.

After having explored this [illegible], we set out to advance farther on in Baye Françoise, [illegible] we could not find the copper mine[60] which had been discovered the year before. Heading north-east, and having [illegible] ten leagues [illegible]ng

CHAMPLAIN'S [illegible]

[illegible]

The [illegible]

[illegible] *B.* [illegible] Champlain. [illegible] *D.* [illegible] Sieur de Poutrincourt had made. [illegible] *E.* Entrance [illegible] Royal. *F.* Shoals, [illegible] *G.* [illegible] *H.* Place [illegible] for fowl[illegible] that Sieur de Poutrincourt had made. [illegible] Meadows overflowed [illegible] *M.* [illegible] River. *N.* Seacoast of [illegible] *O.* Ranges of mountains. *P.* Island [illegible] St. Antoine. *Q.* [illegible] Brook. *R.* Another brook. *S.* Mill [illegible] *T.* [illegible] *V.* Place [illegible] savages [illegible] sea[illegible] *X.* A [illegible] de Champlain [illegible]

[illegible] Granville. [2] [illegible] of [illegible] The site of the present town of An[illegible] River. [illegible] the first on the [illegible] and the [illegible]

[illegible] Brook [illegible] alleged [illegible] Northumber[illegible] [illegible] search. [illegible]

along the coaſt of Port Royal,[64] we croſſed a part of the bay ſome five or ſix leagues in extent, when we arrived at a place which we called the Cape of Two Bays;[65] and we paſſed by an iſland a league diſtant therefrom, a league alſo in circuit, riſing up forty or forty-five fathoms.[66] It is wholly ſurrounded by great rocks, except in one place which is ſloping, at the foot of which ſlope there is a pond of ſalt water, coming from under a pebbly point, having the form of a ſpur. The ſurface of the iſland is flat, covered with trees, and containing a fine ſpring of water. In this place is a copper mine. Thence we proceeded to a harbor a league and a half diſtant, where we ſuppoſed the copper mine was, which a certain Prevert of St. Malo had diſcovered by aid of the ſavages of the country. This port is in latitude 45° 40′, and is dry at low tide.[67] In order to enter it, it is neceſſary to place beacons, and mark out a ſand-bank at the entrance, which borders a channel that extends along the main land. Then you enter a bay nearly a league in length, and half a league in breadth. In ſome places, the bottom is oozy and ſandy, where

[64] Along the Bay of Fundy nearly parallel to the baſin of Port Royal would better expreſs the author's meaning.

[65] Cape Chignecto, the point where the Bay of Fundy is bifurcated; the northern arm forming Chignecto Bay, and the ſouthern, the Bay of Mines or Minas Baſin.

[66] Iſle Haute, or high iſland.—*Vide Charlevoix's Map.* On ſome maps this name has been ſtrangely perverted into Iſle Holt, Iſle Har, &c. Its height is 320 feet.

[67] This was Advocate's Harbor. Its diſtance from Cape Chignecto is greater than that ſtated in the text. Further on, Champlain calls it two leagues, which is nearly correct. Its latitude is about 45° 20′. By comparing the Admiralty charts and Champlain's map of this harbor, it will be ſeen that important changes have taken place ſince 1604. The tongue of land extending in a ſouth-eaſterly direction, covered with trees and ſhrubbery, which Champlain calls a ſand-bank, has entirely diſappeared. The ordinary tides riſe here from thirty-three to thirty-nine feet, and on a ſandy ſhore could hardly fail to produce important changes.

The sea falls and rises the ... We landed to see ... which Prevert had reported ... about a quarter of a league along ... we found none, nor did we recognize ... description of the harbor he had giv... had not himself been there, but probab... had been there, guided by ... partly by little streams, while ... at the mouth of a little river ... These men, upon their return ... pieces of copper, which he showed ... his voyage. Nevertheless, ... jour...

... DESCRIPTION OF THE MAP.

... of water.

... where vessels are liable to run aground. *B.* A small river. *C.* ... composed of large pebbles, which ... which is covered by the tide tw... Cape of Mines. *G.* Roadstead whe... Isle Haute, which is a league and ... *L.* Little River. *M.* Range of mo...

... Champlain probably obtained his ... There is a creek extending fro... ... tions to Advocate's Harbor, ... have seen, or at least he does ... made an island by the creek, has ... on which was the copper mine wh...

... Lescarbot, the lower part of the Gulf was sometimes ...

A
B
C
F
M
Port des mines
Toise

found in this harbor two mines of what ſeemed to be copper, according to the report of our miner, who conſidered it very good, although it was not native copper.

The head[69] of the Baye Françoiſe, which we croſſed, is fifteen leagues inland. All the land which we have ſeen in coaſting along from the little paſſage of Long Iſland is rocky, and there is no place except Port Royal where veſſels can lie in ſafety. The land is covered with pines and birches, and, in my opinion, is not very good.

On the 20th of May,[70] we ſet out from the Port of Mines to ſeek a place adapted for a permanent ſtay, in order to loſe no time, purpoſing afterwards to return, and ſee if we could diſcover the mine of pure copper which Prevert's men had found by aid of the ſavages. We ſailed weſt two leagues as far as the cape of the two bays, then north five or ſix leagues; and we croſſed the other bay,[71] where we thought the copper mine was, of which we have already ſpoken: inaſmuch as there are there two rivers,[72] the one coming from the direction of Cape Breton, and the other from Gaſpé or Tregatté, near the great river St. Lawrence. Sailing weſt ſome ſix leagues, we arrived at a little river,[73] at the mouth of which is rather a low

[69] They had juſt croſſed the Bay of Mines. From the place where they croſſed it to its head it is not far from fifteen leagues, and it is about the ſame diſtance to Port Royal, from which he may here eſtimate the diſtance inland.

[70] Read June. — *Vide antea*, note 53.

[71] Chignecto Bay. Charlevoix has Chignitou *ou Beau Baſſin*. On De Laet's Map of 1633, on Jacob von Meur's of 1673, and Homenn's of 1729, we have B. de Gennes. The Cape of Two Bays was Cape Chignecto.

[72] The rivers are the Cumberland Baſin with its tributaries coming from the eaſt, and the Petitcoudiac (*petit* and *coude*, little elbow, from the angle formed by the river at Moncton, called the Bend), which flows into Shepody Bay coming from the north or the direction of Gaſpé. Champlain mentions all theſe particulars, probably as anſwering to the deſcription given to them by M. Prevert of the place where copper mines could be found.

[73] Quaco River, at the mouth of which the

Ichan
A
B
C
D
E
G
H
I
M
N
P
L
30
28
25
20
14
13
12
10
9
7
6
60
90

ſerve carefully certain points and rocks on the two ſides. It is narrow at its entrance, and then becomes broader. A certain point being paſſed, it becomes narrower again, and forms a kind of fall between two large cliffs, where the water runs ſo rapidly that a piece of wood thrown in is drawn under and not ſeen again. But by waiting till high tide you can paſs this fall very eaſily.[78] Then it expands again to the extent of about a

---

CHAMPLAIN'S DESCRIPTION OF THE ACCOMPANYING MAP.

RIVIÈRE ST. JEHAN.

The figures indicate fathoms of water.

A. Three iſlands above the falls.[1] *B*. Mountains riſing up from the main land, two leagues ſouth of the river. *C*. The fall in the river. *D*. Shoals where veſſels, when the tide is out, are liable to run aground. *E*. Cabin where the ſavages fortify themſelves. *F*. A pebbly point where there is a croſs. *G*. An iſland at the entrance of the river.[2] *H*. A ſmall brook coming from a little pond.[3] *I*. Arm of the ſea dry at low tide.[4] *L*. Two little rocky iſlets.[5] *M*. A ſmall pond. *N*. Two brooks. *O*. Very dangerous ſhoals along the coaſt, which are dry at low tide. *P*. Way by which the ſavages carry their canoes in paſſing the falls. *Q*. Place for anchoring where the river runs with full current.

NOTES. 1. The iſlands are not cloſe together as here repreſented. One is very near the main land on one ſhore, and two on the other. 2. Partridge Iſland. 3. Mill Pond. 4. Marsh Creek, very ſhallow but not entirely dry at low tide. 5. Theſe iſlets are not now repreſented on the charts, and are probably rocks near the ſhore from which the ſoil may have been waſhed away ſince 1604.

---

[78] Champlain was under a miſſapprehenſion about paſſing the fall at the mouth of the St. John at high tide. It can in fact only be paſſed at about half tide. The waters of the river at low tide are about twelve feet higher than the waters of the ſea. At high tide, the waters of the ſea are about five feet higher than the waters of the river. Conſequently, at low tide there is a fall outward, and at high tide there is a fall inward, at neither of which times can the fall be paſſed. The only time for paſſing the fall is when the waters of the ſea are on a level with the waters of the river. This occurs twice every tide, at the level point at the flood and likewiſe at the ebb. The period for paſſing laſts about fifteen or twenty minutes, and of courſe occurs four times a day. Veſſels aſſemble in conſiderable numbers above and below to embrace the opportunity

a league in ſome places, where there are three iſlands. We did not explore it farther up.[79] But Ralleau, ſecretary of Sieur de Monts, went there ſome time after to ſee a ſavage named Secondon, chief of this river, who reported that it was beautiful, large, and extenſive, with many meadows and fine trees, as oaks, beeches, walnut-trees, and alſo wild grape-vines. The inhabitants of the country go by this river to Tadouſſac, on the great river St. Lawrence, making but a ſhort portage on the journey. From the river St. John to Tadouſſac is ſixty-five leagues.[80] At its mouth, which is in latitude 45° 40′, there is an iron mine.[81]

From the river St. John we went to four iſlands, on one of which we landed, and found great numbers of birds called magpies,[82] of which we captured many ſmall ones, which are as good as pigeons. Sieur de Poutrincourt came near getting loſt here, but he came back to our barque at laſt, when we had already gone to ſearch for him about the iſland, which is three leagues diſtant from the main land. Farther weſt are other iſlands; among them one ſix leagues in length, called by the ſavages Manthane,[83] ſouth of which there are among

opportunity of paſſing at the favoring moment. There are periods, however, when the river is ſwollen by rains and melting ſnow, at which the tides do not riſe as high as the river; and conſequently there is a conſtant fall outward, and veſſels cannot paſs until the high water ſubſides.

[79] They aſcended the river only a ſhort diſtance into the large bay juſt above the falls, near which are the three iſlands mentioned in the text.

[80] The diſtance from the mouth of the river St. John to Tadouſſac in a direct line is about ſixty-five leagues. But by the winding courſe of the St. John it would be very much greater.

[81] Champlain's latitude is inexact. St. John's Harbor is 45° 16′.

[82] *Margos*, magpies. The four iſlands which Champlain named the Magpies are now called the Wolves, and are near the mouth of Paſſamaquoddy Bay. Charlevoix has *Oiſeaux*, the Birds.

[83] Manan. Known as the Grand Manan in contradiſtinction to the Petit Manan, a ſmall iſland ſtill further weſt. It is about fourteen or fifteen miles long, and about ſix in its greateſt width. On the ſouth and eaſtern ſide are Long Iſland,

among the iſlands ſeveral good harbors for veſſels. From the Magpie Iſlands we proceeded to a river on the main land called the river of the Etechemins,[84] a tribe of ſavages ſo called in their country. We paſſed by ſo many iſlands that we could not aſcertain their number, which were very fine. Some were two leagues in extent, others three, others more or leſs. All of theſe iſlands are in a bay,[85] having, in my eſtimation, a circuit of more than fifteen leagues. There are many good places capable of containing any number of veſſels, and abounding in fiſh in the ſeaſon, ſuch as codfiſh, ſalmon, baſs, herring, halibut, and other kinds in great numbers. Sailing weſt-north-weſt three leagues through the iſlands, we entered a river almoſt half a league in breadth at its mouth, ſailing up which a league or two we found two iſlands: one very ſmall near the weſtern bank; and the other in the middle, having a circumference of perhaps eight or nine hundred paces, with rocky ſides three or four fathoms high all around, except in one ſmall place, where there is a ſandy point and clayey earth adapted for making brick and other uſeful articles. There is another place affording a ſhelter for veſſels from eighty to a hundred tons, but it is dry at low tide. The iſland is covered with firs, birches, maples, and oaks. It is by nature very well ſituated, except in one place, where for about forty paces it is lower than elſewhere: this, however, is eaſily fortified, the banks of the main

Iſland, Great Duck, Roſs, Cheyne, and White Head Iſlands, among which good harborage may be found. The name, as appears in the text, is of Indian origin. It is ſometimes ſpelled Menane, but that in the text prevails.

[84] The St. Croix River, ſometimes called the Scoudic.

[85] Paſſamaquoddy Bay. On Gaſtaldo's map of 1550 called Angouleſme. On Rouge's "Atlas Ameriquain," 1778, it is written Paſſamacadie.

main land being diſtant on both ſides ſome nine hundred to a thouſand paces. Veſſels could paſs up the river only at the mercy of the cannon on this iſland, and we deemed the location the moſt advantageous, not only on account of its ſituation and good ſoil, but alſo on account of the intercourſe which we propoſed with the ſavages of theſe coaſts and of the interior, as we ſhould be in the midſt of them. We hoped to pacify them in the courſe of time, and put an end to the wars which they carry on with one another, so as to derive ſervice from them in future, and convert them to the Chriſtian faith. This place was named by Sieur de Monts the Iſland of St. Croix.[86] Farther on, there is a great bay, in which

---

CHAMPLAIN'S DESCRIPTION OF THE ACCOMPANYING MAP.

ISLE DE SAINTE CROIX.

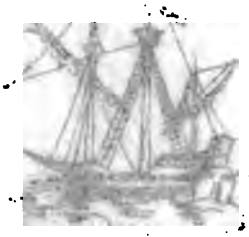
The figures indicate fathoms of water.

A. A plan of our habitation. *B*. Gardens. *C*. Little iſlet ſerving as a platform for cannon.[1] *D*. Platform where cannon were placed. *E*. The Cemetery. *F*. The Chapel. *G*. Rocky ſhoals about the Iſland Sainte Croix. *H*. A little iſlet.[2] *I*. Place where Sieur de Monts had a water-mill commenced. *L*. Place where we made our coal. *M*. Gardens on the weſtern ſhore. *N*. Other gardens on the eaſtern ſhore. *O*. Very large and high mountain on the main land.[3] *P*. River of the Etechemins flowing about the Iſland of St. Croix.

NOTES. 1. This refers to the ſouthern end of the iſland, which was probably ſeparated at high tide, where a cannon may be ſeen in poſition. 2. Little De Monts's Iſland, ſometimes called Little Dochet's Iſland. 3. This "mountain" is now called Chamcook Hill. Its height is 627 feet. At the northern end of the iſland on the right there is an extenſive ſandy ſhoal, dry at low tide, of a triangular ſhape as formerly, and has apparently changed very little ſince the days of Champlain.

---

[86] The Holy Croſs, *Sainſte Croix*. This name was ſuggeſted by the circumſtance that, a few miles above the iſland, two ſtreams flow into the main channel of the river at the ſame place, one from the eaſt and the other from the weſt,



which are two iſlands, one high and the other flat; alſo three rivers, two of moderate ſize, one extending towards the eaſt, the other towards the north, and the third of large ſize, towards the weſt. The latter is that of the Etechemins, of which we ſpoke before. Two leagues up this there is a waterfall, around which the ſavages carry their canoes ſome five hundred paces by land, and then re-enter the river. Paſſing afterwards from the river a ſhort diſtance overland, one reaches the rivers Norumbegue and St. John. But the falls are impaſſable for veſſels, as there are only rocks and but four or five feet of water.[87] In May and June, ſo great a number

weſt, while a bay makes up between them, preſenting the appearance of a croſs.

"Et d'autant qu'à deux lieuës au deſſus il y a des ruiſſeaux qui viennent comme en croix de décharger dans ce large bras de mer, cette île de la retraite des François fut appelée SAINCTE CROIX." — *His. Nouvelle-France*, par Leſcarbot, Paris, 1612, Qvat. Liv. pp. 461, 462.

It is now called De Monts's Iſland. It has been called Dochet's Iſland and Neutral Iſland, but there is great appropriateneſs in calling it after its firſt occupant and proprietor, and in honor of him it has been ſo named with ſuitable ceremonies. — *Vide Godfrey's Centennial Diſcourſe*, Bangor, 1870, p. 20. The United States maintain a light upon the iſland, which is ſeventy-one feet above the level of the ſea, and is viſible twelve nautical miles. The iſland itſelf is moderately high, and in the wideſt part is one hundred and eighty paces or about five hundred and forty feet. The area is probably not more than ſix or ſeven acres, although it has been eſtimated at twice that. It may have been diminiſhed in ſome ſlight degree ſince the time of Champlain by the action of the waves, but probably very little. On the ſouthern extremity of the iſland where De Monts placed his cannon, about twenty-five years ago a workman in excavating threw out five ſmall cannon-balls, one of which was obtained by Peter E. Voſe, Eſq., of Dennyſville, Me., who then reſided near the iſland, and was converſant with all the circumſtances of the diſcovery. They were about a foot and a half below the ſurface, and the workman was excavating for another purpoſe, and knew nothing of the hiſtory of the iſland. At our ſolicitation, the ball belonging to Mr. Voſe has recently been preſented to the New England Hiſtoric Genealogical Society, of which he is a member. It is iron, perfectly round, two and a quarter inches in diameter, and weighs 22¾ oz. avoirdupois. There can be no reaſonable doubt that theſe balls are relics of the little French colony of 1604, and probably the only memorial of the kind now in exiſtence.

[87] The deſcription in the text of the environs of the Iſland of St. Croix is entirely accurate. Some diſtance above,

number of herring and baſs are caught there that veſſels could be loaded with them. The ſoil is of the fineſt ſort, and there are fifteen or twenty acres of cleared land, where Sieur de Monts had ſome wheat ſown, which flouriſhed finely. The ſavages come here ſometimes five or ſix weeks during the fiſhing ſeaſon. All the reſt of the country conſiſts of very denſe foreſts. If the land were cleared up, grain would flouriſh excellently. This place is in latitude 45° 20′,[88] and 17° 32′ of the deflection of the magnetic needle.

CHAPTER IV.

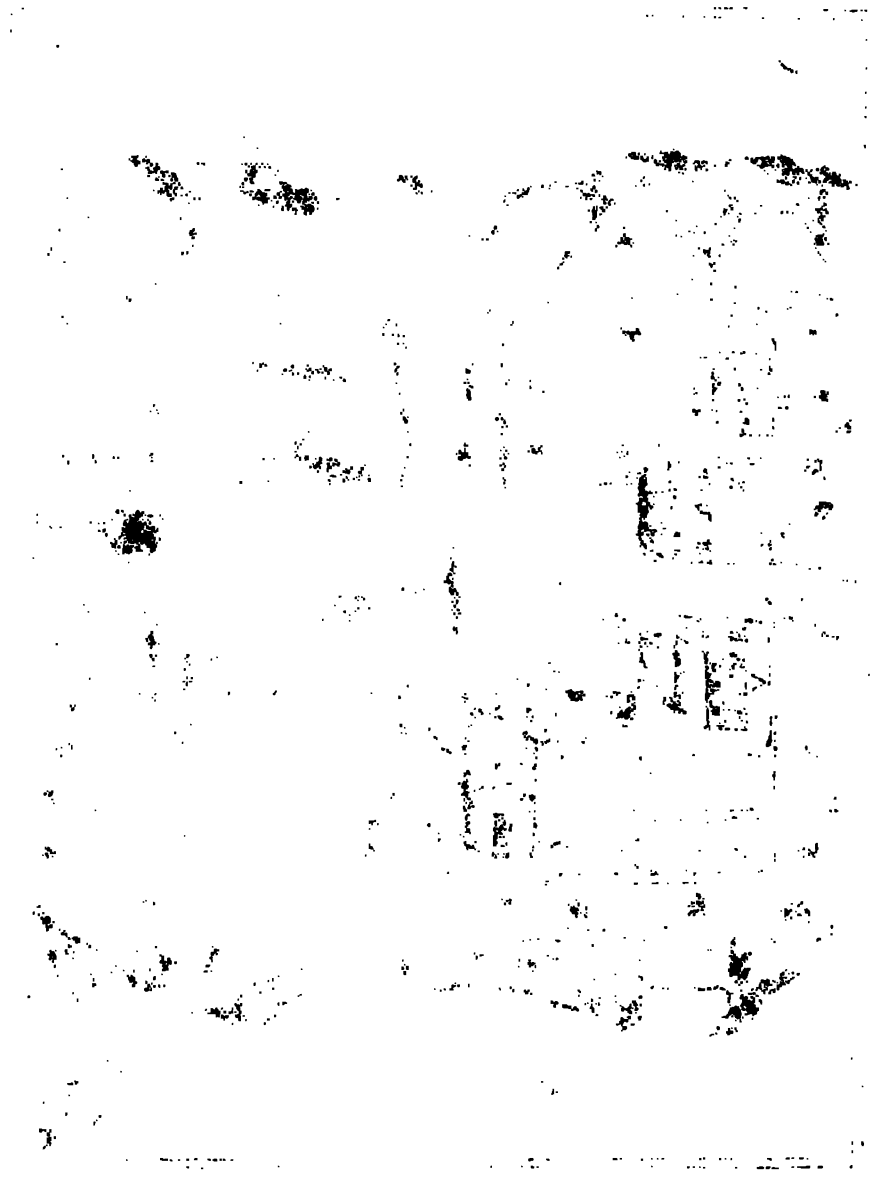
SIEUR DE MONTS, FINDING NO OTHER PLACE BETTER ADAPTED FOR A PERMANENT SETTLEMENT THAN THE ISLAND OF ST. CROIX, FORTIFIES IT AND BUILDS DWELLINGS. — RETURN OF THE VESSELS TO FRANCE, AND OF RALLEAU, SECRETARY OF SIEUR DE MONTS, FOR THE SAKE OF ARRANGING SOME BUSINESS AFFAIRS.

NOT finding any more ſuitable place than this iſland, we commenced making a barricade on a little iſlet a ſhort diſtance from the main iſland, which ſerved as a ſtation for placing our cannon. All worked ſo energetically that in a little while it was put in a ſtate of defence, although the moſquitoes (which

and in view from the iſland, is the fork, or Divide, as it is called. Here is a meeting of the waters of Warwig Creek from the eaſt, Oak Bay from the north, and the river of the Etechemins, now called the St. Croix, from the weſt. Theſe are the three rivers mentioned by Champlain, Oak Bay being conſidered as one of them, in which may be ſeen the two iſlands mentioned in the text, one high and the other low. A little above Calais is the waterfall, around which the Indians carried their bark canoes, when on their journey up the river through the Scoudic lakes, from which by land they reached the river St. John on the eaſt, or, on the weſt, paſſing through the Mettawamkeag, they reached the Norumbegue, or Penobſcot River.

[88] The latitude of the Iſland of St. Croix is 45° 7′ 43″.

habitasion de lile s.te
A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
T
V
X
Y



(which are little flies) annoyed us exceſſively in our work. For there were ſeveral of our men whoſe faces were ſo ſwollen by their bites that they could ſcarcely ſee. The barricade being finiſhed, Sieur de Monts ſent his barque to notify the reſt of our party, who were with our veſſel in the bay of St. Mary, to come to St. Croix. This was promptly done, and while awaiting them we ſpent our time very pleaſantly.

Some days after, our veſſels having arrived and anchored, all diſembarked. Then, without loſing time, Sieur de Monts proceeded to employ the workmen in building houſes for our abode, and allowed me to determine the arrangement of our ſettlement. After Sieur de Monts had determined the place for the ſtorehouſe, which is nine fathoms long, three wide, and twelve feet high, he adopted the plan for his own houſe, which he had promptly built by good workmen, and then aſſigned to each one his location. Straightway, the men began to gather together by fives and ſixes, each according to his deſire. Then all ſet to work to clear up the iſland, to go

---

CHAMPLAIN'S DESCRIPTION OF THE ACCOMPANYING MAP.

HABITATION DE L'ISLE STE. CROIX.

The figures indicate fathoms of water.

A. Dwelling of Sieur de Monts. *B*. Public building where we ſpent our time when it rained. *C*. The ſtorehouſe. *D*. Dwelling of the guard. *E*. The blackſmith ſhop. *F*. Dwelling of the carpenters. *G*. The well. *H*. The oven where the bread was made. *I*. Kitchen. *L*. Gardens. *M*. Other gardens. *N*. Place in the centre where a tree ſtands. *O*. Paliſade. *P*. Dwellings of the Sieurs d'Orville, Champlain, and Champdoré. *Q*. Dwelling of Sieur Boulay, and other artiſans. *R*. Dwelling where the Sieurs de Geneſtou, Sourin, and other artiſans lived. *T*. Dwelling of the Sieurs de Beaumont, la Motte Bourioli, and Fougeray. *V*. Dwelling of our curate. *X*. Other gardens. *Y*. The river ſurrounding the iſland.

go to the woods, to make the frame work, to carry earth and other things neceſſary for the buildings.

While we were building our houſes, Sieur de Monts deſpatched Captain Fouques in the veſſel of Roſſignol,[89] to find Pont Gravé at Canſeau, in order to obtain for our ſettlement what ſupplies remained.

Some time after he had ſet out, there arrived a ſmall barque of eight tons, in which was Du Glas of Honfleur, pilot of Pont Gravé's veſſel, bringing the Baſque ſhip-maſters, who had been captured by the above Pont Gravé[90] while engaged in the fur-trade, as we have ſtated. Sieur de Mǫnts received them civilly, and ſent them back by the above Du Glas to Pont Gravé, with orders for him to take the veſſels he had captured to Rochelle, in order that juſtice might be done. Meanwhile, work on the houſes went on vigorouſly and without ceſſation; the carpenters engaged on the ſtorehouſe and dwelling of Sieur de Monts, and the others each on his own houſe, as I was on mine, which I built with the aſſiſtance of ſome ſervants belonging to Sieur d'Orville and myſelf. It was forthwith completed, and Sieur de Monts lodged in it until his own was finiſhed. An oven was alſo made, and a hand-mill for grinding our wheat, the working of which involved much trouble and labor to the moſt of us, ſince it was a toilſome operation. Some gardens were afterwards laid out, on the main land as well as on the iſland. Here many kinds of ſeeds were planted, which flouriſhed very well on the main land,

[89] This was the veſſel taken from Captain Roſſignol and confiſcated. — *Vide antea*, pp. 10, 12; alſo note 26.

[90] Champlain and others often write only Pont for Pont Gravé. Leſcarbot ſays Gravé was his ſurname. — *Vide Hiſtoire de la Nou. Fran.*, Paris, 1612, Qvat. Liv. p. 501. To prevent any confuſion, we write it Pont Gravé in all caſes.

land, but not on the iſland, ſince there was only ſand here, and the whole were burned up when the ſun ſhone, although ſpecial pains were taken to water them.

Some days after, Sieur de Monts determined to aſcertain where the mine of pure copper was which we had ſearched for ſo much. With this object in view, he deſpatched me together with a ſavage named Meſſamoüet, who aſſerted that he knew the place well. I ſet out in a ſmall barque of five or ſix tons, with nine ſailors. Some eight leagues from the iſland, towards the river St. John, we found a mine of copper which was not pure, yet good according to the report of the miner, who ſaid that it would yield eighteen per cent. Farther on we found others inferior to this. When we reached the place where we ſuppoſed that was which we were hunting for, the ſavage could not find it, ſo that it was neceſſary to come back, leaving the ſearch for another time.

Upon my return from this trip, Sieur de Monts reſolved to ſend his veſſels back to France, and alſo Sieur de Poutrincourt, who had come only for his pleaſure, and to explore countries and places ſuitable for a colony, which he deſired to found; for which reaſon he aſked Sieur de Monts for Port Royal, which he gave him in accordance with the power and directions he had received from the king.[91] He ſent back alſo Ralleau, his ſecretary, to arrange ſome matters concerning the voyage. They ſet out from the Iſland of St. Croix the laſt day of Auguſt, 1604.

CHAPTER V.

[91] De Monts's charter provided for the diſtribution of lands to coloniſts. This gift to De Poutrincourt was confirmed afterwards by the king. We may here remark that there is the uſual diſcrepancy in the orthography of this name. Leſcarbot, De Laet, and Charlevoix write Poutrincourt. In his Latin epitaph, *vide Murdoch's Nova Scotia*, Vol. I. p. 59, it is Potrincurtius, while Champlain

CHAPTER V.

Of the Coast, Inhabitants, and River of Norumbegue, and of all that occurred during the Exploration of the Latter.

AFTER the departure of the veſſels, Sieur de Monts, without loſing time, decided to ſend perſons to make diſcoveries along the coaſt of Norumbegue; and he intruſted me with this work, which I found very agreeable.

In order to execute this commiſſion, I ſet out from St. Croix on the 2d of September with a patache of ſeventeen or eighteen tons, twelve ſailors, and two ſavages, to ſerve us as guides to the places with which they were acquainted. The ſame day we found the veſſels where Sieur de Poutrincourt was, which were anchored at the mouth of the river St. Croix in conſequence of bad weather, which place we could not leave before the 5th of the month. Having gone two or three leagues ſeaward, ſo denſe a fog aroſe that we at once loſt ſight of their veſſels. Continuing our courſe along the coaſt, we made the ſame day ſome twenty-five leagues, and paſſed by a large number of iſlands, banks, reefs, and rocks, which in places extend more than four leagues out to ſea. We called the iſlands the Ranges, moſt of which are covered with

Champlain has Poitrincourt. In Poutrincourt's letter to the Roman Pontiff, Paul V., written in Latin, he ſays, *Ego Johannes de Biencour, vulgò De Povtrincovr a vitæ religionis amator et atteſtor perpetuus*, etc. This muſt be concluſive for Poutrincourt as the proper orthography. — *Vide His. Nov. Fra.*, par Leſcarbot, Paris, 1612, p. 612.

with pines, firs, and other trees of an inferior ſort. Among theſe iſlands are many fine harbors, but undeſirable for a permanent ſettlement. The ſame day we paſſed alſo near to an iſland about four or five leagues long, in the neighborhood of which we juſt eſcaped being loſt on a little rock on a level with the water, which made an opening in our barque near the keel. From this iſland to the main land on the north, the diſtance is leſs than a hundred paces. It is very high, and notched in places, ſo that there is the appearance to one at ſea, as of ſeven or eight mountains extending along near each other. The ſummit of the moſt of them is deſtitute of trees, as there are only rocks on them. The woods conſiſt of pines, firs, and birches only. I named it Iſle des Monts Déſerts.[92] The latitude is 44° 30′.

The next day, the 6th of the month, we ſailed two leagues, and perceived a ſmoke in a cove at the foot of the mountains above mentioned. We ſaw two canoes rowed by ſavages, which came within muſket range to obſerve us. I ſent our two ſavages in a boat to aſſure them of our friendſhip. Their fear of us made them turn back. On the morning of the next day, they came alongſide of our barque and talked with our ſavages. I ordered ſome biſcuit, tobacco, and other trifles to be given them. Theſe ſavages had come beaver-hunting

[92] The natives called this iſland Pemetiq. *Iſle que les Sauuages appellent Pemetiq.—Vide Relation de la Nouvelle-France*, par P. Biard, 1616, Relations des Jéſuites, Quebec ed. 1858, p. 44. When the attempt was made in 1613 to plant a colony there by the Marchioneſs de Guercheville, the ſettlement was named St. Sauveur. This iſland was alſo by the Engliſh called Mount Manſell. But the name given to it by Champlain has prevailed, and ſtill adheres to it.

The deſcription here given of the barrenneſs of the iſland clearly ſuggeſts the origin of the name. Deſert ſhould therefore be pronounced with the accent on the firſt ſyllable. The latitude of the moſt northern limit of the iſland is 44° 24′.

hunting and to catch fiſh, ſome of which they gave us. Having made an alliance with them, they guided us to their river of Pentegoüet,[93] ſo called by them, where they told us was their captain, named Beſſabez, chief of this river. I think this river is that which ſeveral pilots and hiſtorians call Norumbegue,[94] and which moſt have deſcribed as large and extenſive, with very many iſlands, its mouth being in latitude 43°, 43° 30′, according to others in 44°, more or leſs. With regard to the deflection, I have neither read, nor heard any one ſay any thing. It is related alſo that there is a large, thickly

[93] Penobſcot. The name of this river has been variouſly written Pentagoet, Pentagwet, Pemptegoet, Pentagovett, Penobſkeag, Penaubſket, and in various other ways. The Engliſh began early to write it Penobſcot. It is a word of Indian origin, and different meanings have been aſſigned to it by thoſe who have undertaken to interpret the language from which it is derived.

[94] The Abbé Laverdière is of the opinion that the river Norumbegue was identical with the Bay of Fundy. His only authority is Jean Alfonſe, the chief pilot of Roberval in 1541–42. Alfonſe ſays: "Beyond the cape of Noroveregue deſcends the river of the ſaid Noroveregue, which is about twenty-five leagues from the cape. The ſaid river is more than forty leagues broad at its mouth, and extends this width inward well thirty or forty leagues, and is all full of iſlands which enter ten or twelve leagues into the ſea, and it is very dangerous with rocks and reefs." If the cape of Norumbegue is the preſent Cape Sable, as it is ſuppoſed to be, by coaſting along the ſhores of Nova Scotia from that cape in a north-weſterly direction a little more than twenty leagues, we ſhall reach St. Mary's Bay, which may be regarded as the beginning of the Bay of Fundy, and from that point in a ſtraight line to the mouth of the Penobſcot the diſtance is more than forty leagues, which was the breadth of the Norumbegue at its mouth, according to the ſtatement of Alfonſe. The Abbé Laverdière is not quite correct in ſaying that the river Norumbegue is the ſame as the Bay of Fundy. It includes, according to Alfonſe, who is not altogether conſiſtent with himſelf, not only the Bay of Fundy, but likewiſe the Penobſcot River and the bay of the ſame name, with its numerous iſlands. Alfonſe left a drawing or map of this region in his Coſmography, which Laverdière had not probably ſeen, on which the Bay of Fundy and the Penobſcot are correctly laid down, and the latter is deſignated the "Rivière de Norvebergue." It is therefore obvious, if this map can be relied upon, that the river of Norumbegue was identical, not with the Bay of Fundy, but with the Penobſcot, in the opinion of Alfonſe, in common with the "pluſieurs pilottes et hiſtoriens" referred to by Champlain. — *Vide copy of the Chart from the MS. Coſmography of Jean Alfonſe* in Bibliothèque Nationale, Paris, in Mr. Murphy's Voyage of Verrazzano, New York, 1875.

thickly ſettled town of ſavages, who are adroit and ſkilful, and who have cotton yarn. I am confident that moſt of thoſe who mention it have not ſeen it, and ſpeak of it becauſe they have heard perſons ſay ſo, who knew no more about it than they themſelves. I am ready to believe that ſome may have ſeen the mouth of it, becauſe there are in reality many iſlands, and it is, as they ſay, in latitude 44° at its entrance. But that any one has ever entered it there is no evidence, for then they would have deſcribed it in another manner, in order to relieve the minds of many of this doubt.

I will accordingly relate truly what I explored and ſaw, from the beginning as far as I went.

In the firſt place, there are at its entrance ſeveral iſlands diſtant ten or twelve leagues from the main land, which are in latitude 44°, and 18° 40′ of the deflection of the magnetic needle. The Iſle des Monts Déſerts forms one of the extremities of the mouth, on the eaſt; the other is low land, called by the ſavages Bedabedec,[95] to the weſt of the former, the two being diſtant from each other nine or ten leagues. Almoſt midway between theſe, out in the ocean, there is another iſland very high and conſpicuous, which on this account I have named Iſle Haute.[96] All around there is a vaſt number of varying extent and breadth, but the largeſt

[95] An indefinite region about Rockland and Camden, on the weſtern bank of the Penobſcot near its mouth, appears to have been the domain of the Indian chief, Beſſabez, and was denominated Bedabedec. The Camden Hills were called the mountains of Bedabedec, and Owl's Head was called Bedabedec Point.

[96] Iſle Haute, *high iſland*, which name it ſtill retains. Champlain wrote it on his map, 1632, "Iſle Haulte." It has been anglicized by ſome into Iſle Holt. It is nearly ſix miles long, and has an average width of over two miles, and is the highest land in its vicinity, reaching at its higheſt point four hundred feet above the level of the ſea.

largeſt is that of the Monts Déſerts. Fiſhing as alſo hunting are very good here; the fiſh are of various kinds. Some two or three leagues from the point of Bedabedec, as you coaſt northward along the main land which extends up this river, there are very high elevations of land, which in fair weather are ſeen twelve or fifteen leagues out at ſea.[97] Paſſing to the ſouth of the Iſle Haute, and coaſting along the ſame for a quarter of a league, where there are ſome reefs out of water, and heading to the weſt until you open all the mountains northward of this iſland, you can be ſure that, by keeping in ſight the eight or nine peaks of the Monts Déſerts and Bedabedec, you will croſs the river Norumbegue; and in order to enter it you muſt keep to the north, that is, towards the higheſt mountains of Bedabedec, where you will ſee no iſlands before you, and can enter, ſure of having water enough, although you ſee a great many breakers, iſlands, and rocks to the eaſt and weſt of you. For greater ſecurity, one ſhould keep the ſounding lead in hand. And my obſervations lead me to conclude that one cannot enter this river in any other place except in ſmall veſſels or ſhallops. For, as I ſtated above, there are numerous iſlands, rocks, ſhoals, banks, and breakers on all ſides, ſo that it is marvellous to behold.

Now to reſume our courſe: as one enters the river, there are beautiful iſlands, which are very pleaſant and contain fine

[97] Camden Hills or Mountains. They are five or ſix in number, from 900 to 1,500 feet high, and may be ſeen, it is ſaid, twenty leagues at ſea. The more prominent are Mt. Batty, Mt. Pleaſant, and Mt. Hoſmer, or Ragged Mountain. They are ſometimes called the Megunticook Range. Colonel Benjamin Church denominates them "Mathebeſtuck's Hills." —*Vide Church's Hiſtory of King Philip's War*, Newport, 1772, p. 143. Captain John Smith calls them the mountains of Penobſcot, "againſt whoſe feet doth beat the ſea," which, he adds, "you may well ſee ſixteen or eighteen leagues from their ſituation."

fine meadows. We proceeded to a place to which the ſavages guided us, where the river is not more than an eighth of a league broad, and at a diſtance of ſome two hundred paces from the weſtern ſhore there is a rock on a level with the water, of a dangerous character.[98] From here to the Iſle Haute, it is fifteen leagues. From this narrow place, where there is the leaſt breadth that we had found, after ſailing ſome ſeven or eight leagues, we came to a little river near which it was neceſſary to anchor, as we ſaw before us a great many rocks which are uncovered at low tide, and ſince alſo, if we had deſired to ſail farther, we could have gone ſcarcely half a league, in conſequence of a fall of water there coming down a ſlope of ſeven or eight feet, which I ſaw as I went there in a canoe with our ſavages; and we found only water enough for a canoe. But excepting the fall, which is ſome two hundred paces broad, the river is beautiful, and unobſtructed up to the place where we had anchored. I landed to view the country, and, going on a hunting excurſion, found it very pleaſant ſo far as I went. The oaks here appear as if they were planted for ornament. I ſaw only a few firs, but numerous pines on one ſide of the river; on the other only oaks, and ſome copſe wood which extends far into the interior.[99]

And

[98] This narrow place in the river is juſt above Caſtine, where Cape Jelliſon ſtretches out towards the eaſt, at the head of the bay, and at the mouth of the river. At the extremity of the cape is Fort Point, ſo called from Fort Pownall, erected there in 1759, a ſteep rocky elevation of about eighty feet in height. Before the erection of the fort by Governor Pownall, it was called Waſaumkeag Point. —*Vide Pownall's Journal*, Col. Me. His. Soc., Vol. V. p. 385. The "rock" alluded to by Champlain is Fort Point Ledge, bare at half tide, ſouth-eaſt by eaſt from the Point, and diſtant over half a mile. Champlain's diſtances here are ſomewhat overeſtimated.

[99] The terminus of this exploration of the Penobſcot was near the preſent ſite of the city of Bangor. The ſmall river near the mouth of which they anchored

And I will ſtate that from the entrance to where we went, about twenty-five leagues, we ſaw no town, nor village, nor the appearance of there having been one, but one or two cabins of the ſavages without inhabitants. Theſe were made in the ſame way as thoſe of the Souriquois, being covered with the bark of trees. So far as we could judge, the ſavages on this river are few in number, and are called Etechemins. Moreover, they only come to the iſlands, and that only during ſome months in ſummer for fiſh and game, of which there is a great quantity. They are a people who have no fixed abode, ſo far as I could obſerve and learn from them. For they ſpend the winter now in one place and now in another, according as they find the beſt hunting, by which they live when urged by their daily needs, without laying up any thing for times of ſcarcity, which are ſometimes ſevere.

Now this river muſt of neceſſity be the Norumbegue; for, having coaſted along paſt it as far as the 41° of latitude, we have found no other on the parallel above mentioned, except that of the Quinibequy, which is almoſt in the ſame latitude, but not of great extent. Moreover, there cannot be in any other place a river extending far into the interior of the country, ſince the great river St. Lawrence waſhes the coaſt of La Cadie and Norumbegue, and the diſtance from one to the other by land is not more than forty-five leagues, or ſixty at the wideſt point, as can be ſeen on my geographical map.

Now I will drop this diſcuſſion to return to the ſavages who had

chored was the Kenduſkeag. The falls which Champlain viſited with the Indians in a canoe are thoſe a ſhort diſtance above the city. The ſentence, a few lines back, beginning "But excepting this fall" is complicated, and not quite logical, but the author evidently means to deſcribe the river from its mouth to the place of their anchorage at Bangor.

had conducted me to the falls of the river Norumbegue, who went to notify Beſſabez, their chief, and other ſavages, who in turn proceeded to another little river to inform their own, named Cabahis, and give him notice of our arrival.

The 16th of the month there came to us ſome thirty ſavages on aſſurances given them by thoſe who had ſerved us as guides. There came alſo to us the ſame day the above-named Beſſabez with ſix canoes. As ſoon as the ſavages who were on land ſaw him coming, they all began to ſing, dance, and jump, until he had landed. Afterwards, they all ſeated themſelves in a circle on the ground, as is their cuſtom, when they wiſh to celebrate a feſtivity, or an harangue is to be made. Cabahis, the other chief, arrived alſo a little later with twenty or thirty of his companions, who withdrew one ſide and enjoyed greatly ſeeing us, as it was the firſt time they had ſeen Chriſtians. A little while after, I went on ſhore with two of my companions and two of our ſavages who ſerved as interpreters. I directed the men in our barque to approach near the ſavages, and hold their arms in readineſs to do their duty in caſe they noticed any movement of theſe people againſt us. Beſſabez, ſeeing us on land, bade us ſit down, and began to ſmoke with his companions, as they uſually do before an addreſs. They preſented us with veniſon and game.

I directed our interpreter to ſay to our ſavages that they ſhould cauſe Beſſabez, Cabahis, and their companions to underſtand that Sieur de Monts had ſent me to them to ſee them, and alſo their country, and that he deſired to preſerve friendſhip with them and to reconcile them with their enemies, the Souriquois and Canadians, and moreover that he deſired

deſired to inhabit their country and ſhow them how to cultivate it, in order that they might not continue to lead ſo miſerable a life as they were doing, and ſome other words on the ſame ſubject. This our ſavages interpreted to them, at which they ſignified their great ſatisfaction, ſaying that no greater good could come to them than to have our friendſhip, and that they deſired to live in peace with their enemies, and that we ſhould dwell in their land, in order that they might in future more than ever before engage in hunting beavers, and give us a part of them in return for our providing them with things which they wanted. After he had finiſhed his diſcourſe, I preſented them with hatchets, paternoſters, caps, knives, and other little knick-knacks, when we ſeparated from each other. All the reſt of this day and the following night, until break of day, they did nothing but dance, ſing, and make merry, after which we traded for a certain number of beavers. Then each party returned, Beſſabez with his companions on the one ſide, and we on the other, highly pleaſed at having made the acquaintance of this people.

The 17th of the month I took the altitude,[100] and found the latitude 45° 25′. This done, we ſet out for another river called Quinibequy, diſtant from this place thirty-five leagues,

[100] The interview with the Indians on the 16th, and the taking of the altitude on the 17th, muſt have occurred before the party left their anchorage at Bangor with the purpoſe, but which they did not accompliſh that year, of viſiting the Kennebec. This may be inferred from Champlain's ſtatement that the Kennebec was thirty-five leagues diſtant from the place where they then were, and nearly twenty leagues diſtant from Bedabedec. Conſequently, they were fifteen leagues above Bedabedec, which was ſituated near the mouth of the river. The latitude, which they obtained from their obſervations, was far from correct: it ſhould be 44° 46′.

leagues, and nearly twenty from Bedabedec. This nation of ſavages of Quinibequy are called Etechemins, as well as thoſe of Norumbegue.

The 18th of the month we paſſed near a ſmall river where Cabahis was, who came with us in our barque ſome twelve leagues; and having aſked him whence came the river Norumbegue, he told me that it paſſes the fall which I mentioned above, and that one journeying ſome diſtance on it enters a lake by way of which they come to the river of St. Croix, by going ſome diſtance over land, and then entering the river of the Etechemins. Moreover, another river enters the lake, along which they proceed ſome days, and afterwards enter another lake and paſs through the midſt of it. Reaching the end of it, they make again a land journey of ſome diſtance, and then enter another little river, which has its mouth a league from Quebec, which is on the great river St. Lawrence.[101] All theſe people of Norumbegue are very ſwarthy, dreſſed

[101] The Indian chief Cabahis here points out two trails, the one leading to the French habitation juſt eſtabliſhed on the Iſland of St. Croix, the other to Quebec; by the former, paſſing up the Penobſcot from the preſent ſite of Bangor, entering the Matawamkeag, keeping to the eaſt in their light bark canoes to Lake Boſcanhegan, and from there paſſing by land to the ſtream then known as the river of the Etechemins, now called the Scoudic or St. Croix. The expreſſion "by which they come to the river of St. Croix" is explanatory: it has no reference to the name of the river, but means ſimply that the trail leads to the river in which was the iſland of St. Croix. This river had not then been named St. Croix, but had been called by them the river of the Etechemins. — *Vide antea*, p. 31.

The other trail led up the north branch of the Penobſcot, paſſing through Lake Pemadumcook, and then on through Lake Cheſuncook, finally reaching the ſource of this ſtream which is near that of the Chaudière, which latter flows into the St. Lawrence, near Quebec. It would ſeem from the text that Champlain ſuppoſed that the Penobſcot flowed from a lake into which ſtreams flowed from both the objective points, viz. St. Croix and Quebec; but this was a miſtake not at all unnatural, as he had never been over the ground, and obtained his information from the Indians, whoſe language he imperfectly underſtood.

dreſſed in beaver-ſkins and other furs, like the Canadian and Souriquois ſavages, and they have the ſame mode of life.

The 20th of the month we ſailed along the weſtern coaſt, and paſſed the mountains of Bedabedec,[102] when we anchored. The ſame day we explored the entrance to the river, where large veſſels can approach; but there are inſide ſome reefs, to avoid which one muſt advance with ſounding lead in hand. Our ſavages left us, as they did not wiſh to go to Quinibequy, for the ſavages of that place are great enemies to them. We ſailed ſome eight leagues along the weſtern coaſt to an iſland[103] ten leagues diſtant from Quinibequy, where we were obliged to put in on account of bad weather and contrary wind. At one point in our courſe, we paſſed a large number of iſlands and breakers extending ſome leagues out to ſea, and very dangerous. And in view of the bad weather, which was ſo unfavorable to us, we did not ſail more than three or four leagues farther. All theſe iſlands and coaſts are covered with extenſive woods, of the ſame ſort as that which I have reported above as exiſting on the other coaſts. And in conſideration of the ſmall quantity of proviſions which we had, we reſolved to return to our ſettlement and wait until the following year, when we hoped to return and explore more extenſively. We accordingly ſet out on our return on the 23d of September, and arrived at our ſettlement on the 2d of October following.

The above is an exact ſtatement of all that I have obſerved

[102] Bedabedec is an Indian word, ſignifying *cape of the waters*, and was plainly the point known as Owl's Head. It gave name to the Camden Mountains alſo. *Vide antea*, note 95.

[103] Moſquito and Metinic Iſlands are each about ten leagues eaſt of the Kennebec. As the party went but four leagues further, the voyage muſt have terminated in Muſcongus Bay.

ſerved reſpecting not only the coaſts and people, but alſo the river of Norumbegue; and there are none of the marvels there which ſome perſons have deſcribed.[104] I am of opinion that this region is as diſagreeable in winter as that of our ſettlement, in which we were greatly deceived.

CHAPTER VI.

OF THE MAL DE LA TERRE, A VERY DESPERATE MALADY. — HOW THE SAVAGES, MEN AND WOMEN, SPEND THEIR TIME IN WINTER. — AND ALL THAT OCCURRED AT THE SETTLEMENT WHILE WE WERE PASSING THE WINTER.

HEN we arrived at the Iſland of St. Croix, each one had finiſhed his place of abode. Winter came upon us ſooner than we expected, and prevented us from doing many things which we had propoſed. Nevertheleſs, Sieur de Monts did not fail to have ſome gardens made on the iſland. Many began

[104] An idle ſtory had been circulated, and even found a place on the pages of ſober hiſtory, that on the Penobſcot, or Norumbegue, as it was then called, there exiſted a fair town, a populous city, with the acceſſories of luxury and wealth. Champlain here takes pains to ſhow, in the fulleſt manner, that this ſtory was a baſeleſs dream of fancy, and utterly without foundation. Of it Leſcarbot naïvely ſays, "If this beautiful town hath ever exiſted in nature, I would fain know who hath pulled it down, for there are now only a few ſcattered wigwams made of poles covered with the bark of trees and the ſkins of wild beaſts." There is no evidence, and no probability, that this river had been navigated by Europeans anterior to this exploration of Champlain. The exiſtence of the bay and the river had been noted long before. They are indicated on the map of Ribero in 1529. Rio de Gamas and Rio Grande appear on early maps as names of this river, but are ſoon diſplaced for Norumbega, a name which was ſometimes extended to a wide range of territory on both ſides of the Penobſcot. On the Mappe-Monde of 1543-47, iſſued by the late M. Jomard, it is denominated Auorobagra, evidently intended for Norumbega. Thevet, who viſited it, or ſailed along its mouth in 1556, ſpeaks of it as Norumbegue. It is alleged that the aborigines called it Agguncia. According to Jean Alfonſe, it

began to clear up the ground, each his own. I alſo did ſo with mine, which was very large, where I planted a quantity of ſeeds, as alſo did the others who had any, and they came up very well. But ſince the iſland was all ſandy, every thing dried up almoſt as ſoon as the ſun ſhone upon it, and we had no water for irrigation except from the rain, which was infrequent.

Sieur de Monts cauſed alſo clearings to be made on the main land for making gardens, and at the falls three leagues from our ſettlement he had work done and ſome wheat ſown, which came up very well and ripened. Around our habitation there is, at low tide, a large number of ſhell-fiſh, ſuch as cockles, muſcles, ſea-urchins, and ſea-ſnails, which were very acceptable to all.

The ſnows began on the 6th of October. On the 3d of December, we ſaw ice paſs which came from ſome frozen river. The cold was ſharp, more ſevere than in France, and of much longer duration; and it ſcarcely rained at all the entire winter. I ſuppoſe that is owing to the north and north-weſt winds paſſing over high mountains always covered with ſnow. The latter was from three to four feet deep up to the end of the month of April; laſting much longer, I ſuppoſe, than it would if the country were cultivated.

During the winter, many of our company were attacked by a certain malady called the *mal de la terre;* otherwiſe ſcurvy, as I have ſince heard from learned men. There were produced, in the mouths of thoſe who had it, great pieces of ſuperfluous

it was diſcovered by the Portugueſe and Spaniards.—*Vide His. de la N. France*, par M. Leſcarbot, Paris, 1612, Qvat. Liv. p. 495. The orthography of this name is various among early writers, but Norumbegue is adopted by the moſt approved modern authors.

fluous and drivelling fleſh (cauſing extenſive putrefaction), which got the upperhand to ſuch an extent that ſcarcely any thing but liquid could be taken. Their teeth became very looſe, and could be pulled out with the fingers without its cauſing them pain. The ſuperfluous fleſh was often cut out, which cauſed them to eject much blood through the mouth. Afterwards, a violent pain ſeized their arms and legs, which remained ſwollen and very hard, all ſpotted as if with flea-bites; and they could not walk on account of the contraction of the muſcles, ſo that they were almoſt without ſtrength, and ſuffered intolerable pains. They experienced pain alſo in the loins, ſtomach, and bowels, had a very bad cough, and ſhort breath. In a word, they were in ſuch a condition that the majority of them could not riſe nor move, and could not even be raiſed up on their feet without falling down in a ſwoon. So that out of ſeventy-nine, who compoſed our party, thirty-five died, and more than twenty were on the point of death. The majority of thoſe who remained well alſo complained of ſlight pains and ſhort breath. We were unable to find any remedy for theſe maladies. A *poſt mortem* examination of ſeveral was made to inveſtigate the cauſe of their diſeaſe.

In the caſe of many, the interior parts were found mortified, ſuch as the lungs, which were ſo changed that no natural fluid could be perceived in them. The ſpleen was ſerous and ſwollen. The liver was *legueux?* and ſpotted, without its natural color. The *vena cava*, ſuperior and inferior, was filled with thick coagulated and black blood. The gall was tainted. Nevertheleſs, many arteries, in the middle as well as lower bowels, were found in very good condition. In the

they follow until they get ſight of the creature, when they ſhoot at it with their bows, or kill it by means of daggers attached to the end of a ſhort pike, which is very eaſily done, as the animals cannot walk on the ſnow without ſinking in. Then the women and children come up, erect a hut, and they give themſelves to feaſting. Afterwards, they return in ſearch of other animals, and thus they paſs the winter. In the month of March following, ſome ſavages came and gave us a portion of their game in exchange for bread and other things which we gave them. This is the mode of life in winter of theſe people, which ſeems to me a very miſerable one.

We looked for our veſſels at the end of April; but, as this paſſed without their arriving, all began to have an ill-boding, fearing that ſome accident had befallen them. For this reaſon, on the 15th of May, Sieur de Monts decided to have a barque of fifteen tons and another of ſeven fitted up, ſo that we might go at the end of the month of June to Gaſpé in queſt of veſſels in which to return to France, in caſe our own ſhould not meanwhile arrive. But God helped us better than we hoped; for, on the 15th of June enſuing, while on guard about 11 o'clock at night, Pont Gravé, captain of one of the veſſels of Sieur de Monts, arriving in a ſhallop, informed us that his ſhip was anchored ſix leagues from our ſettlement, and he was welcomed amid the great joy of all.

The next day the veſſel arrived, and anchored near our habitation. Pont Gravé informed us that a veſſel from St. Malo, called the St. Éſtienne, was following him, bringing us proviſions and ſupplies.

On the 17th of the month, Sieur de Monts decided to go in

in queſt of a place better adapted for an abode, and with a better temperature than our own. With this view, he had the barque made ready, in which he had purpoſed to go to Gaſpé.

CHAPTER VII.

Discovery of the Coast of the Almouchiquois as far as the Forty-second Degree of Latitude, and Details of this Voyage.

ON the 18th of June, 1605, Sieur de Monts ſet out from the Iſland of St. Croix with ſome gentlemen, twenty ſailors, and a ſavage named Panounias, together with his wife, whom he was unwilling to leave behind. Theſe we took, in order to ſerve us as guides to the country of the Almouchiquois, in the hope of exploring and learning more particularly by their aid what the character of this country was, eſpecially ſince ſhe was a native of it.

Coaſting along inſide of Manan, an iſland three leagues from the main land, we came to the Ranges on the ſeaward ſide, at one of which we anchored, where there was a large number of crows, of which our men captured a great many, and we called it the Iſle aux Corneilles. Thence we went to the Iſland of Monts Déſerts, at the entrance of the river Norumbegue, as I have before ſtated, and ſailed five or ſix leagues among many iſlands. Here there came to us three ſavages in a canoe from Bedabedec Point, where their captain was; and, after we had had ſome converſation with them, they returned the ſame day.

On Friday, the 1ſt of July, we ſet out from one of the iſlands

iſlands at the mouth of the river, where there is a very good harbor for veſſels of a hundred or a hundred and fifty tons. This day we made ſome twenty-five leagues between Bedabedec Point and many iſlands and rocks, which we obſerved as far as the river Quinibequy, at the mouth of which is a very high iſland, which we called the Tortoiſe.[107] Between the latter and the main land there are ſome ſcattering rocks, which are covered at full tide, although the ſea is then ſeen to break over them.[108] Tortoiſe Iſland and the river lie ſouth-ſouth-eaſt and north-north-weſt. As you enter, there are two medium-ſized iſlands forming the entrance, one on one ſide, the other on the other;[109] and ſome three hundred paces farther in are two rocks, where there is no wood, but ſome little graſs. We anchored three hundred paces from the entrance in

---

CHAMPLAIN'S DESCRIPTION OF THE ACCOMPANYING MAP.

QUINIBEQUY.

The figures indicate fathoms of water.

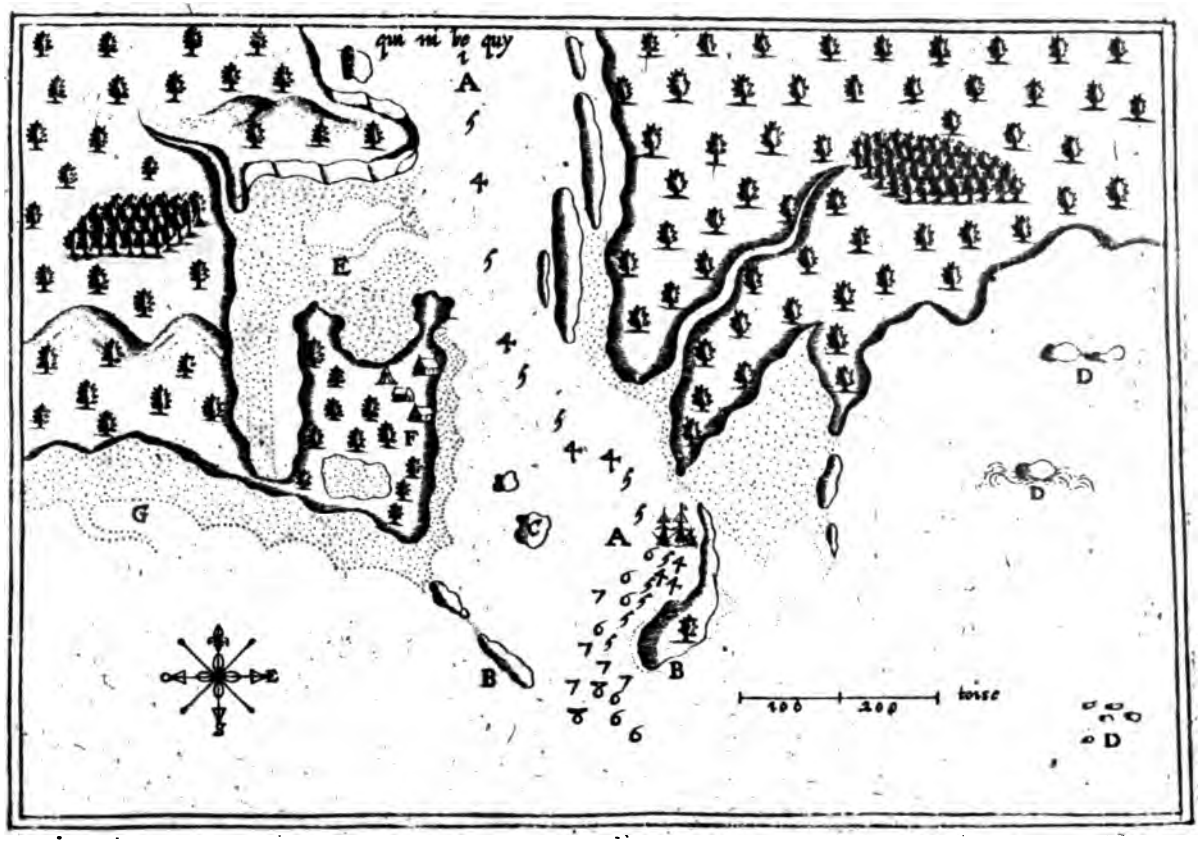
A. The courſe of the river. *B*. Two iſlands at the entrance of the river. *C*. Two very dangerous rocks in the river. *D*. Iſlets and rocks along the coaſt. *E*. Shoals where at full tide veſſels of ſixty tons' burden may run aground. *F*. Place where the ſavages encamp when they come to fiſh. *G*. Sandy ſhoals along the coaſt. *H*. Pond of freſh water. *I*. Brook where ſhallops can enter at half tide. *L*. Iſlands to the number of four juſt within the mouth of the river.

---

[107] *Iſle de la Tortue*, commonly known as Seguin Iſland, high and rocky, with precipitous ſhores. It is nearly equidiſtant from Wood, Pond, and Salter's Iſlands at the mouth of the Kennebec, and about one mile and three quarters from each. The United States light upon it is 180 feet above the level of the ſea. It may be ſeen at the diſtance of twenty miles.

[108] Ellingwood Rock, Seguin Ledges, and White Ledge.

[109] Pond Iſland on the weſt, and Stage Iſland on the eaſt: the two rocks referred to in the ſame ſentence are now called the Sugar Loaves.


qui ni be quy
A
E
A
F
G
C
A
B
B
D
D
D
100
200
toise

in five and ſix fathoms of water. While in this place, we were overtaken by fogs, on account of which we reſolved to enter, in order to ſee the upper part of the river and the ſavages who live there; and we ſet out for this purpoſe on the 5th of the month. Having made ſome leagues, our barque came near being loſt on a rock which we grazed in paſſing.[110] Further on, we met two canoes which had come to hunt birds, which for the moſt part are moulting at this ſeaſon, and cannot fly. We addreſſed theſe ſavages by aid of our own, who went to them with his wife, who made them underſtand the reaſon of our coming. We made friends with them and with the ſavages of this river, who ſerved us as guides. Proceeding farther, in order to ſee their captain, named Manthoumermer, we paſſed, after we had gone ſeven or eight leagues, by ſome iſlands, ſtraits, and brooks, which extend

[110] This was apparently in the upper part of Back River, where it is exceedingly narrow. The minute and circumſtantial deſcription of the mouth of the Kennebec, and the poſitive ſtatement in the text that they entered the river ſo deſcribed, and the conformity of the deſcription to that laid down on our Coaſt Survey Charts, as well as on Champlain's local map, all render it certain that they entered the mouth of the Kennebec proper; and, having entered, they muſt have paſſed on a flood-tide into and through Back River, which in ſome places is ſo narrow that their little barque could hardly fail to be grazed in paſſing. Having reached Hockomock Bay, they paſſed down through the lower Hell Gate, rounded the ſouthern point of Weſt Port or Jerremiſquam Iſland, ſailing up its eaſtern ſhore until they reached the harbor of Wiſcaſſet; then down the weſtern ſide, turning Hockomock Point, threading the narrow paſſage of the Saſanoa River through the upper Hell Gate, entering the Sagadahoc, paſſing the Chops, and finally through the Neck, into Merrymeeting Bay. The narrowneſs of the channel and the want of water at low tide in Back River would ſeem at firſt bluſh to throw a doubt over the poſſibility of Champlain's paſſing through this tidal paſſage. But it has at leaſt ſeven feet of water at high tide. His little barque, of fifteen tons, without any cargo, would not draw more than four feet at moſt, and would paſs through without any difficulty, incommoded only by the narrowneſs of the channel to which Champlain refers. With the ſame barque, they paſſed over the bar at Nauſet, or Mallebarre, where Champlain diſtinctly ſays there were only four feet of water.—*Vide poſtea*, p. 81.

extend along the river, where we ſaw ſome fine meadows. After we had coaſted along an iſland [111] ſome four leagues in length, they conducted us to where their chief was [112] with twenty-five or thirty ſavages, who, as ſoon as we had anchored, came to us in a canoe, ſeparated a ſhort diſtance from ten others, in which were thoſe who accompanied him. Coming near our barque, he made an harangue, in which he expreſſed the pleaſure it gave him to ſee us, and ſaid that he deſired to form an alliance with us and to make peace with his enemies through our mediation. He ſaid that, on the next day, he would ſend to two other captains of ſavages, who were in the interior, one called Marchin, and the other Saſinou, chief of the river Quinibequy. Sieur de Monts gave them ſome cakes and peas, with which they were greatly pleaſed. The next day they guided us down the river another way than that by which we had come, in order to go to a lake; and, paſſing by ſome iſlands, they left, each one of them, an arrow near a cape [113] where all the ſavages paſs, and they believe that if they ſhould not do this ſome misfortune would befall them, according to the perſuaſions of the devil. They live in ſuch ſuperſtitions, and practiſe many others of the ſame ſort. Beyond this cape we paſſed a very narrow waterfall, but only with great difficulty; for, although we had a favorable and freſh wind, and trimmed our ſails to receive it as well as poſſible, in order to ſee whether we could not paſs it in that way, we were obliged to attach a hawſer to ſome trees on

[111] Weſt Port, or Jerremiſquam Iſland.

[112] This was Wiſcaſſet Harbor, as farther on it will be ſeen that from this point they ſtarted down the river, taking another way than that by which they had come.

[113] Hockomock Point, a rocky precipitous bluff.

on ſhore and all pull on it. In this way, by means of our arms together with the help of the wind, which was favorable to us, we ſucceeded in paſſing it. The ſavages accompanying us carried their canoes by land, being unable to row them. After going over this fall, we ſaw ſome fine meadows. I was greatly ſurpriſed by this fall, ſince as we deſcended with the tide we found it in our favor, but contrary to us when we came to the fall. But, after we had paſſed it, it deſcended as before, which gave us great ſatisfaction.[114] Purſuing our route, we came to the lake,[115] which is from three to

[114] The movement of the waters about this "narrow waterfall" has been a puzzle from the days of Champlain to the preſent time. The phenomena have not changed. Having conſulted the United States Coaſt Pilot and likewiſe ſeveral perſons who have navigated theſe waters and have a perſonal knowledge of the "fall," the following is, we think, a ſatisfactory explanation. The ſtream in which the fall occurs is called the Saſanoa, and is a tidal current flowing from the Kennebec, oppoſite the city of Bath, to the Sheepſcot. It was up this tidal paſſage that Champlain was ſailing from the waters of the Sheepſcot to the Kennebec, and the "narrow waterfall" was what is now called the upper Hell Gate, which is only fifty yards wide, hemmed in by walls of rock on both ſides. Above it the Saſanoa expands into a broad bay. When the tide from the Kennebec has filled this bay, the water ruſhes through this narrow gate with a velocity ſometimes of thirteen miles an hour. There is properly no fall in the bed of the ſtream, but the appearance of a fall is occaſioned by the pent-up waters of the bay above ruſhing through this narrow outlet, having accumulated faſter than they could be drained off. At half ebb, on a ſpring tide, a wall of water from ſix inches to a foot ſtretches acroſs the ſtream, and the roar of the flood boiling over the rocks at the Gate can be heard two miles below. The tide continues to flow up the Saſanoa from the Sheepſcot not only on the flood, but for ſome time on the ebb, as the waters in the upper part of the Sheepſcot and its bays, in returning, naturally force themſelves up this paſſage until they are ſufficiently drained off to turn the current in the Saſanoa in the other direction. Champlain, ſailing from the Sheepſcot up the Saſanoa, arrived at the Gate probably juſt as the tide was beginning to turn, and when there was comparatively only a ſlight fall, but yet enough to make it neceſſary to force their little barque up through the Gate by means of hawſers as deſcribed in the text. After getting a ſhort diſtance from the narrows, he would be on the water ebbing back into the Kennebec, and would be ſtill moving with the tide, as he had been until he reached the fall.

[115] Merrymeeting Bay, ſo called from the meeting in this bay of the two rivers mentioned in the text a little below, viz., the Kennebec and the Androſcoggin.

to four leagues in length. Here are ſome iſlands, and two rivers enter it, the Quinibequy coming from the north north-eaſt, and the other from the north-weſt, whence were to come Marchin and Saſinou. Having awaited them all this day, and as they did not come, we reſolved to improve our time. We weighed anchor accordingly, and there accompanied us two ſavages from this lake to ſerve as guides. The ſame day we anchored at the mouth of the river, where we caught a large number of excellent fiſh of various ſorts. Meanwhile, our ſavages went hunting, but did not return. The route by which we deſcended this river is much ſafer and better than that by which we had gone. Tortoiſe Iſland before the mouth of this river is in latitude[116] 44°; and 19° 12′ of the deflection of the magnetic needle. They go by this river acroſs the country to Quebec ſome fifty leagues, making only one portage of two leagues. After the portage, you enter another little ſtream which flows into the great river St. Lawrence.[117] This river Quinibequy is very dangerous for veſſels half a league from its mouth, on account of the ſmall amount of water, great tides, rocks and ſhoals outſide as well as within. But it has a good channel, if it were well marked out. The land, ſo far as I have ſeen it along the ſhores of the river, is very poor, for there are only rocks on all ſides. There are a great many ſmall oaks, and very little arable land. Fiſh abound here, as in the other rivers which I have mentioned. The people live like thoſe in the neighborhood

[116] The latitude of Seguin, here called Tortoiſe Iſland, is 43° 42′ 25″.

[117] The head-waters of the Kennebec, as well as thoſe of the Penobſcot, approach very near to the Chaudière, which flows into the St. Lawrence near Quebec.

neighborhood of our ſettlement; and they told us that the ſavages, who plant the Indian corn, dwelt very far in the interior, and that they had given up planting it on the coaſts on account of the war they had with others, who came and took it away. This is what I have been able to learn about this region, which I think is no better than the others.

On the 8th of the month, we ſet out from the mouth of this river, not being able to do ſo ſooner on account of the fogs. We made that day ſome four leagues, and paſſed a bay,[118] where there are a great many iſlands. From here large mountains[119] are ſeen to the weſt, in which is the dwelling-place of a ſavage captain called Aneda, who encamps near the river Quinibequy. I was ſatisfied from this name that it was one of his tribe that had diſcovered the plant called Aneda,[120] which Jacques Cartier ſaid was so powerful againſt the malady called ſcurvy, of which we have already ſpoken, which haraſſed his company as well as our own, when they wintered in Canada. The ſavages have no knowledge at all of this plant, and are not aware of its exiſtence, although

[118] Caſco Bay, which ſtretches from Cape Small Point to Cape Elizabeth. It has within it a hundred and thirty-ſix iſlands. They anchored and paſſed the night ſomewhere within the limits of this bay, but did not attempt its exploration.

[119] Theſe were the White Mountains in New Hampſhire, towering above the ſea 6,225 feet. They are about ſixty miles diſtant from Caſco Bay, and were obſerved by all the early voyagers as they ſailed along the coaſt of Maine. They are referred to on Ribero's Map of 1529 by the Spaniſh word *mõtañas*, and were evidently ſeen by Eſtevan Gomez in 1525, whoſe diſcoveries are delineated by this map. They will alſo be found on the Mappe-Monde of about the middle of the ſixteenth century, and on Sebaſtian Cabot's map, 1544, both included in the "Monuments de la Géographie" of Jomard, and they are alſo indicated on numerous other early maps.

[120] This conjecture is not ſuſtained by any evidence beyond the ſimilarity of the names. There are numerous idle opinions as to the kind of plant which was ſo efficacious a remedy for the ſcurvy, but they are utterly without foundation. There does not appear to be any means of determining what the healing plant was.

although the above-mentioned ſavage has the ſame name. The following day we made eight leagues.[121] As we paſſed along the coaſt, we perceived two columns of ſmoke which ſome ſavages made to attract our attention. We went and anchored in the direction of them behind a ſmall iſland near the main land,[122] where we ſaw more than eighty ſavages running along the ſhore to ſee us, dancing and giving expreſſion to their joy. Sieur de Monts ſent two men together with our ſavage to viſit them. After they had ſpoken ſome time with them, and aſſured them of our friendſhip, we left with them one of our number, and they delivered to us one of their companions as a hoſtage. Meanwhile, Sieur de Monts viſited an iſland, which is very beautiful in view of what it produces; for it has fine oaks and nut-trees, the ſoil cleared up, and many vineyards bearing beautiful grapes in their ſeaſon, which were the firſt we had ſeen on all theſe coaſts from the Cap de la Hève. We named it Iſle de Bacchus.[123] It being full tide, we weighed anchor and entered

[121] The four leagues of the previous day added to the eight of this bring them from the Kennebec to Saco Bay.

[122] The ſmall iſland "proche de la grande terre" was Stratton Iſland: they anchored on the northern ſide and nearly eaſt of Bluff Iſland, which is a quarter of a mile diſtant. The Indians came down to welcome them from the promontory long known as Black Point, now called Prout's Neck. Compare Champlain's local map and the United States Coaſt Survey Charts.

[123] Champlain's narrative, together with his ſketch or drawing, illuſtrating the mouth of the Saco and its environs, compared with the United States Coaſt Survey Charts, renders it certain that this was Richmond Iſland. Leſcarbot deſcribes it as a great iſland, about half a league in compaſs, at the entrance of the bay of the ſaid place of Choüacoet. It is about a mile long, and eight hundred yards in its greateſt width. — *Coaſt Pilot.* It received its preſent name at a very early period. It was granted under the title of "a ſmall iſland, called Richmond," by the Council for New England to Walter Bagnall, Dec. 2, 1631. — *Vide Calendar of Eng. State Papers*, Col. 1574–1660, p. 137. Concerning the death of Bagnall on this iſland a ſhort time before the above grant was made, *vide Winthrop's Hiſt. New Eng.*, ed. 1853, Vol. I. pp. 75, 118.

tered a little river, which we could not ſooner do; for there is a bar, there being at low tide only half a fathom of water, at full tide a fathom and a half, and at the higheſt water two fathoms. On the other ſide of the bar there are three, four, five, and ſix fathoms. When we had anchored, a large number of ſavages came to the bank of the river, and began to dance. Their captain at the time, whom they called Honemechin,[124] was not with them. He arrived about two or three hours later with two canoes, when he came ſweeping entirely round our barque. Our ſavage could underſtand only a few words, as the language of the Almouchiquois[125] (for that is the name of this nation) differs entirely from that of the Souriquois and Etechemins. Theſe people gave ſigns of being greatly pleaſed. Their chief had a good figure, was young and agile. We ſent ſome articles of merchandiſe on ſhore to barter with them; but they had nothing but their robes to give in exchange, for they preſerve only ſuch furs as they need for their garments. Sieur de Monts ordered ſome proviſions to be given to their chief, with which he was greatly pleaſed, and came ſeveral times to the ſide of our boat to ſee us. Theſe ſavages ſhave off the hair far up on the head, and wear what remains very long, which they comb and twiſt behind in various ways very neatly, intertwined with feathers which they attach to the head. They paint their faces black and red, like the other ſavages which we have ſeen. They are an agile people, with well-formed bodies.

[124] Leſcarbot calls him Olmechin. — *Hiſtoire de la Nouvelle France*, par M. Leſcarbot, Paris, 1612, p. 558.

[125] They had hoped that the wife of Panounias, their Indian guide, who was ſaid to have been born among the Almouchiquois, would be able to interpret their language, but in this they appear to have been diſappointed. — *Vide antea*, p. 55.

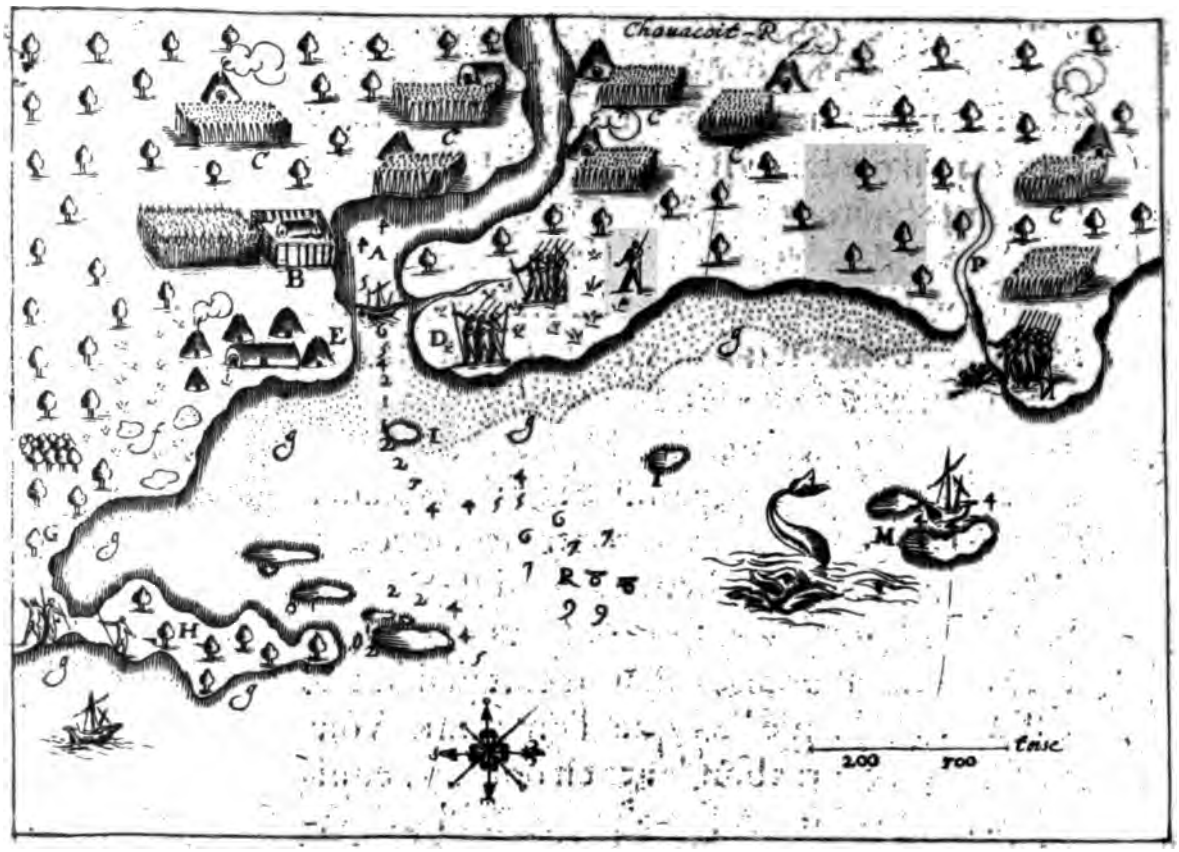
ies. Their weapons are pikes, clubs, bows and arrows, at the end of which ſome attach the tail of a fiſh called the ſignoc, others bones, while the arrows of others are entirely of wood. They till and cultivate the ſoil, ſomething which we have not hitherto obſerved. In the place of ploughs, they uſe an inſtrument of very hard wood, ſhaped like a ſpade. This river is called by the inhabitants of the country Choüacoet.[126]

The next day Sieur de Monts and I landed to obſerve their tillage on the bank of the river. We ſaw their Indian corn, which they raiſe in gardens. Planting three or four kernels in one place, they then heap up about it a quantity of earth with ſhells of the ſignoc before mentioned. Then three feet diſtant they plant as much more, and thus in ſucceſſion. With this corn they put in each hill three or four Brazilian beans,[127] which are of different colors. When they grow up, they interlace with the corn, which reaches to the height of from five to ſix feet; and they keep the ground very free from weeds. We ſaw there many ſquaſhes,[128] and

[126] From the Indian word, M'-ſoo-ah-koo-et, or, as the French pronounced it, *Choüacoet*, which had been the name applied by the aborigines to this locality we know not how long, is derived the name Saco, now given to the river and city in the ſame vicinity. The orthography given to the original word is various, as Sawocotuck, Sowocatuck, Sawakquatook, Sockhigones, and Choüacoſt. The variations in this, as in other Indian words, may have ariſen from a miſapprehenſion of the ſound given by the aborigines, or from ignorance, on the part of writers, of the proper method of repreſenting ſounds, joined to an utter indifference to a matter which ſeemed to them of trifling importance.

[127] *Febues du Bréſil.* This is the well-known trailing or buſh-bean of New England, *Phaſeolus vulgaris*, called the "Brazilian bean" becauſe it reſembled a bean known in France at that time under that name. It is ſometimes called the kidney-bean. It is indigenous to America.

[128] *Citrouilles*, the common ſummer ſquaſh, *Cucurbita polymorpha*, as may be ſeen by reference to Champlain's map of 1612, where its form is delineated over the inſcription, *la forme des citroules.*


Chouacoit-R
A
B
C
D
E
G
H
I
M
P
200
500
toise

and pumpkins,[129] and tobacco, which they likewiſe cultivate.[130]

The

Champlain's Explanation of the accompanying Map.

Chouacoit R.

The figures indicate fathoms of water.

A. The river. *B*. Place where they have their fortreſs. *C*. Cabins in the open fields, near which they cultivate the land and plant Indian corn. *D*. Extenſive tract of land which is ſandy, but covered with graſs. *E*. Another place where they have their dwellings all together after they have planted their corn. *f*. Marſhes with good paſturage. *G*. Spring of freſh water. *H*. A large point of land all cleared up except ſome fruit trees and wild vines. *I*. Little iſland at the entrance of the river. *L*. Another iſlet. *M*. Two iſlands under ſhelter of which veſſels can anchor with good bottom. *N*. A point of land cleared up where Marchin came to us. *O*. Four iſlands. *P*. Little brook dry at low tide. *q*. Shoals along the coaſt. *R*. Roadſted where veſſels can anchor while waiting for the tide.

Notes. Of the two iſlands in the northern part of the bay, the larger, marked *M*, is Stratton Iſland, nearly half a mile long, and a mile and a half from Prout's Neck, which lies north of it. A quarter of a mile from Stratton is Bluff Iſland, a ſmall iſland north-weſt of it. Of the four iſlands at the ſouthern end of the bay, the moſt eaſtern is Wood Iſland, on which the United States maintain a light. The next on the weſt, two hundred and fifty yards diſtant, is Negro Iſland. The third ſtill further weſt is Stage Iſland. The fourth, quarter of a mile weſt of the laſt named, is Baſket Iſland. The neck or peninſula, ſouth-weſt of the iſlands, is now called the Pool, much reſorted to as a watering-place in the ſummer. The iſland near the mouth of the river is Ram Iſland, and that directly north of it is Eagle Iſland. From the mouth of the River to Prout's Neck, marked *N*, is one of the fineſt beaches in New England, extending about ſix nautical miles. Its ſouthern extremity is known as Ferry, the northern Scarborough, and midway between them is Old Orchard Beach, the latter a popular reſort in the ſummer months of perſons from diſtant parts of the United States and Canada.

ſitroules. It is indigenous to America. Our word ſquaſh is derived from the Indian *aſkutaſquaſh* or *iſquouterſquaſh*. "In ſummer, when their corne is ſpent, Iſquouterſquaſhes is their beſt bread, a fruit like the young Pumpion." — *Wood's New England Proſpect*, 1634, Prince Society ed., p. 76. "*Aſkutaſquaſh*, their Vine aples, which the *Engliſh* from them call *Squaſhes*, about the bigneſſe of Apples, of ſeverall colours, a ſweet, light, wholeſome refreſhing." — *Roger Williams, Key*, 1643, Narraganſett Club ed., p. 125.

[129] *Courges*, the pumpkin, *Cucurbita maxima*, indigenous to America. As

The Indian corn which we ſaw was at that time about two feet high, ſome of it as high as three. The beans were beginning to flower, as alſo the pumpkins and ſquaſhes. They plant their corn in May, and gather it in September.

We

the pumpkin and likewiſe the ſquaſh were vegetables hitherto unknown to Champlain, there was no French word by which he could accurately identify them. The names given to them were ſuch as he thought would deſcribe them to his countrymen more nearly than any others. Had he been a botaniſt, he would probably have given them new names.

180 *Petum.* Tobacco, *Nicotiana ruſtica*, ſometimes called wild tobacco. It was a ſmaller and more hardy ſpecies than the *Nicotiana tabàcum*, now cultivated in warmer climates, but had the ſame qualities though inferior in ſtrength and aroma. It was found in cultivation by the Indians all along our coaſt and in Canada. Cartier obſerved it growing in Canada in 1535. Of it he ſays: "There groweth alſo a certain kind of herbe, whereof in Sommer they make a great prouiſion for all the yeere, making great account of it, and onely men vſe of it, and firſt they cauſe it to be dried in the Sunne, then weare it about their neckes wrapped in a little beaſts ſkinne made like a little bagge, with a hollow peece of ſtone or wood like a pipe; then when they pleaſe they make pouder of it, and then put it in one of the ends of the ſaid Cornet or pipe, and laying a cole of fire vpon it, at the other ende ſucke ſo long, that they fill their bodies full of ſmoke, till that it commeth out of their mouth and noſtrils, euen as out of the Tonnell of a chimney. They ſay that this doth keepe them warme and in health: they neuer goe without ſome of it about them. We ourſelues haue tryed the ſame ſmoke, and hauing put it in our mouthes, it ſeemed almoſt as hot as Pepper." — *Jacques Cartier*, 2 *Voyage*, 1535; *Hakluyt*, London, ed. 1810, Vol. III. p. 276.

We may here remark that the eſculents found in cultivation at Saco, beans, ſquaſhes, pumpkins, and corn, as well as the tobacco, are all American tropical or ſubtropical plants, and muſt have been tranſmitted from tribe to tribe, from more ſouthern climates. The Indian traditions would ſeem to indicate this. "They have a tradition," ſays Roger Williams, "that the Crow brought them at firſt an *Indian* Graine of Corne in one Eare, and an *Indian* or *French* Beane in another, from the Great God *Kautantouwit's* field in the Southweſt from whence they hold came all their Corne and Beanes." — *Key to the Language of America*, London, 1643, Narraganſett Club ed., p. 144.

Seventy years before Champlain, Jacques Cartier had found nearly the ſame vegetables cultivated by the Indians in the valley of the St. Lawrence. He ſays: "They digge their grounds with certaine peeces of wood, as bigge as halfe a ſword, on which ground groweth their corne, which they call Offici; it is as bigge as our ſmall peaſon. . . . They haue alſo great ſtore of Muſkemilions, Pompions, Gourds, Cucumbers, Peaſon, and Beanes of euery colour, yet differing from ours." — *Hakluyt*, Vol. III. p. 276. For a full hiſtory of theſe plants, the reader is referred to the Hiſtory of Plants, a learned and elaborate work now in preſs, by Charles Pickering, M.D., of Boſton.

We ſaw alſo a great many nuts, which are ſmall and have ſeveral diviſions. There were as yet none on the trees, but we found plenty under them, from the preceding year. We ſaw alſo many grape-vines, on which there was a remarkably fine berry, from which we made ſome very good verjuice. We had heretofore ſeen grapes only on the Iſland of Bacchus, diſtant nearly two leagues from this river. Their permanent abode, the tillage, and the fine trees led us to conclude that the air here is milder and better than that where we paſſed the winter, and at the other places we viſited on the coaſt. But I cannot believe that there is not here a conſiderable degree of cold, although it is in latitude 43° 45′.[131] The foreſts in the interior are very thin, although abounding in oaks, beeches, aſhes, and elms; in wet places there are many willows. The ſavages dwell permanently in this place, and have a large cabin ſurrounded by paliſades made of rather large trees placed by the ſide of each other, in which they take refuge when their enemies make war upon them.[132] They cover their cabins with oak bark. This place is very pleaſant, and as agreeable as any to be ſeen. The river is very abundant in fiſh, and is bordered by meadows. At the mouth there is a ſmall iſland adapted for the conſtruction of a good fortreſs, where one could be in ſecurity.

On Sunday,[133] the 12th of the month, we ſet out from the river

[131] The latitude of Wood Iſland at the mouth of the Saco, where they were at anchor, is 43° 27′ 23″.

[132] The ſite of this Indian fortification was a rocky bluff on the weſtern ſide of the river, now owned by Mr. John Ward, where from time to time Indian relics have been found. The iſland at the mouth of the river, which Champlain ſpeaks of as a ſuitable location for a fortreſs, is Ram Iſland, and is low and rocky, and about a hundred and fifty yards in length.

[133] For Sunday read Tueſday. — *Vide Shurtleff's Calendar.*

river Choüacoet. After coaſting along ſome ſix or ſeven leagues, a contrary wind aroſe, which obliged us to anchor and go aſhore,[134] where we ſaw two meadows, each a league in length and half a league in breadth. We ſaw there two ſavages, whom at firſt we took to be the great birds called buſtards, to be found in this country; who, as ſoon as they caught ſight of us, took flight into the woods, and were not ſeen again. From Choüacoet to this place, where we ſaw ſome little birds, which ſing like blackbirds, and are black excepting the ends of the wings, which are orange-colored,[135] there is a large number of grape-vines and nut-trees. This coaſt is ſandy, for the moſt part, all the way from Quinibequy. This day we returned two or three leagues towards Choüacoet, as far as a cape which we called Iſland Harbor,[136] favorable for veſſels of a hundred tons, about which are three iſlands. Heading north-eaſt a quarter north, one can enter another harbor[137] near this place, to which there is no approach, although there are iſlands, except the one where you enter. At the entrance there are ſome dangerous reefs. There are in theſe iſlands ſo many red currants that one ſees for the moſt part nothing elſe,[138] and an infinite number of

[134] This landing was probably near Wells Neck, and the meadows which they ſaw were the ſalt marſhes of Wells.

[135] The Red-wing Blackbird, *Agelæus phœniceus*, of luſtrous black, with the bend of the wing red. They are ſtill abundant in the ſame locality, and indeed across the whole continent to the Pacific Ocean. — *Vide* Coues's *Key*, Boſton, 1872, p. 150; *Baird's Report*, Waſhington, 1858, Part II. p. 526.

[136] *Le Port aux Iſles*. This Iſland Harbor is the preſent Cape Porpoiſe Harbor.

[137] This harbor is Gooſe Fair Bay, from one to two miles north-eaſt of Cape Porpoiſe, in the middle of which are two large ledges, "the dangerous reefs" to which Champlain refers.

[138] This was the common red currant of the gardens, *Ribes rubrum*, which is a native of America. The fetid currant, *Ribes proſtratum*, is also indigenous to this country. It has a pale red fruit, which gives forth a very diſagreeable odor. Joſſelyn refers to the currant both in his Voyages and in his Rarities.

Tuckerman

of pigeons,[139] of which we took a great quantity. This Iſland Harbor[140] is in latitude 43° 25′.

On the 15th of the month we made twelve leagues. Coaſting along, we perceived a ſmoke on the ſhore, which we approached as near as poſſible, but ſaw no ſavage, which led us to believe that they had fled. The ſun ſet, and we could find no harbor for that night, ſince the coaſt was flat and ſandy. Keeping off, and heading ſouth, in order to find an anchorage, after proceeding about two leagues, we obſerved a cape[141] on the main land ſouth a quarter ſouth-eaſt of us, ſome ſix leagues diſtant. Two leagues to the eaſt we ſaw three or four rather high iſlands,[142] and on the weſt a large bay. The coaſt of this bay, reaching as far as the cape, extends inland from where we were perhaps four leagues. It has a breadth of two leagues from north to ſouth, and three at its entrance.[143] Not obſerving any place favorable for putting in,

Tuckerman found it growing wild in the White Mountains.

[139] The paſſenger pigeon, *Ectopiſtes migratorius*, formerly numerous in New England. Commonly known as the wild pigeon. Wood ſays they fly in flocks of millions of millions. — *New England Proſpect*, 1634, Prince Society ed., p. 31.

[140] Champlain's latitude is leſs inaccurate than uſual. It is not poſſible to determine the exact point at which he took it. But the latitude of Cape Porpoiſe, according to the Coaſt Survey Charts, is 43° 21′ 43″.

[141] Cape Anne.

[142] The point at which Champlain firſt ſaw Cape Anne, and the "iſles aſſez hautes," the Iſles of Shoals, was eaſt of Little Boar's Head, and three miles from the ſhore. Nine years afterward, Captain John Smith viſited theſe iſlands, and denominated them on his map of New England Smith's Iſles. They began at a very early date to be called the Iſles of Shoals. "Smith's Iſles are a heape together, none neere them, againſt Accominticus." — *Smith's Deſcription of New England.* Rouge's map, 1778, has Iſles of Shoals, *ou des Ecoles*. For a full deſcription and hiſtory of theſe iſlands, the reader is referred to "The Iſles of Shoals," by John S. Jenneſs, New York, 1875.

[143] Champlain has not been felicitous in his deſcription of this bay. He probably means to ſay that from the point where he then was, off Little Boar's Head, to the point where it extends fartheſt into the land, or to the weſt, it appeared to be about twelve miles, and that the depth of the bay appeared to be ſix miles, and eight at the point of greateſt depth. As he did not explore the

in,[144] we reſolved to go to the cape above mentioned with ſhort ſail, which occupied a portion of the night. Approaching to where there were ſixteen fathoms of water, we anchored until daybreak.

On the next day we went to the above-mentioned cape, where there are three iſlands[145] near the main land, full of wood of different kinds, as at Choüacoet and all along the coaſt; and ſtill another flat one, where there are breakers, and which extends a little farther out to ſea than the others, on which there is no wood at all. We named this place Iſland Cape,[146] near which we ſaw a canoe containing five or ſix ſavages, who came out near our barque, and then went back and danced on the beach. Sieur de Monts ſent me on ſhore

the bay, it is obvious that he intended to ſpeak of it only as meaſured by the eye. No name has been aſſigned to this expanſe of water on our maps. It waſhes the coaſt of Hampton, Saliſbury, Newburyport, Ipſwich, and Anniſquam. It might well be called Merrimac Bay, after the name of the important river that empties its waters into it, midway between its northern and ſouthern extremities.

[144] It is to be obſerved that, ſtarting from Cape Porpoiſe Harbor on the morning of the 15th of July, they ſailed twelve leagues before the ſail of the night commenced. This would bring them, allowing for the ſinuoſities of the ſhore, to a point between Little Boar's Head and the Iſles of Shoals. In this diſtance, they had paſſed the ſandy ſhores of Wells Beach and York Beach in Maine, and Foſs's Beach and Rye Beach in New Hampſhire, and ſtill ſaw the white ſands of Hampton and Saliſbury Beaches ſtretching far into the bay on their right. The excellent harbor of Portſmouth, land-locked by numerous iſlands, had been paſſed unobſerved. A ſail of eighteen nautical miles brought them to their anchorage at the extreme point of Cape Anne.

[145] Straitſmouth, Thatcher, and Milk Iſland. They were named by Captain John Smith the "Three Turks' Heads," in memory of the three Turks' heads cut off by him at the ſiege of Caniza, by which he acquired from Sigiſmundus, prince of Tranſylvania, their effigies in his ſhield for his arms. — *The true Travels, Adventures, and Obſervations of Captaine John Smith*, London, 1629.

[146] What Champlain here calls "le Cap aux Iſles," Iſland Cape, is Cape Anne, called Cape Tragabigzanda by Captain John Smith, the name of his miſtreſs, to whom he was given when a priſoner among the Turks. The name was changed by Prince Charles, afterward Charles I., to Cape Anne, in honor of his mother, who was Anne of Denmark.—*Vide Deſcription of New England* by Capt. John Smith, London, 1616.

ſhore to obſerve them, and to give each one of them a knife and ſome biſcuit, which cauſed them to dance again better than before. This over, I made them underſtand, as well as I could, that I deſired them to ſhow me the courſe of the ſhore. After I had drawn with a crayon the bay,[147] and the Iſland Cape, where we were, with the ſame crayon they drew the outline of another bay,[148] which they repreſented as very large; here they placed ſix pebbles at equal diſtances apart, giving me to underſtand by this that theſe ſigns repreſented as many chiefs and tribes.[149] Then they drew within the firſt mentioned bay a river which we had paſſed, which has ſhoals and is very long.[150] We found in this place a great many vines, the green grapes on which were a little larger than peas, alſo many nut-trees, the nuts on which were no larger than muſket-balls. The ſavages told us that all thoſe inhabiting this country cultivated the land and ſowed ſeeds like the others, whom we had before ſeen. The latitude of this place is 43° and ſome minutes.[151] Sailing half a league farther,

[147] This was the bay weſt of a line drawn from Little Boar's Head to Cape Anne, which may well be called Merrimac Bay.

[148] Maſſachuſetts Bay.

[149] It is intereſting to obſerve the agreement of the ſign-writing of this ſavage on the point of Cape Anne with the ſtatement of the hiſtorian Gookin, who in 1656 was ſuperintendent of Indian affairs in Maſſachuſetts, and who wrote in 1674. He ſays: "Their chief ſachem held dominion over many other petty governours; as thoſe of Weechagaſkas, Neponſitt, Punkapaog, Nonantam, Naſhaway, and ſome of the Nipmuck people, as far as Pokomtacuke, as the old men of Maſſachuſetts affirmed." Here we have the ſix tribes, repreſented by the pebbles, recorded ſeventy years later as a tradition handed down by the old men of the tribe. Champlain remarks further on, "I obſerved in the bay all that the ſavages had deſcribed to me at Iſland Cape."

[150] This was the Merrimac with its ſhoals at the mouth, which they had paſſed without obſerving, having ſailed from the offing near Little Boar's Head directly to the head of Cape Anne, during the darkneſs of the previous night.

[151] The latitude of the Straitſmouth Iſland Light on the extreme point of Cape Anne is 42° 39′ 43″. A little eaſt of it, where they probably anchored, there are now ſixteen fathoms of water.

ther, we obſerved ſeveral ſavages on a rocky point,[152] who ran along the ſhore, dancing as they went, to their companions to inform them of our coming. After pointing out to us the direction of their abode, they made a ſignal with ſmoke to ſhow us the place of their ſettlement. We anchored near a little iſland,[153] and ſent our canoe with knives and cakes for the ſavages. From the large number of thoſe we ſaw, we concluded that theſe places were better inhabited than the others we had ſeen.

After a ſtay of ſome two hours for the ſake of obſerving theſe people, whoſe canoes are made of birch bark, like thoſe of the Canadians, Souriquois, and Etechemins, we weighed anchor and ſet ſail with a promiſe of fine weather. Continuing our courſe to the weſt-ſouth-weſt, we ſaw numerous iſlands on one ſide and the other. Having ſailed ſeven or eight leagues, we anchored near an iſland,[154] whence we obſerved many ſmokes along the ſhore, and many ſavages running up to ſee us. Sieur de Monts ſent two or three men in a canoe to them, to whom he gave ſome knives and paternoſters to preſent to them; with which they were greatly pleaſed, and danced ſeveral times in acknowledgment. We could not aſcertain the name of their chief, as we did not know their language. All along the ſhore there is a great deal

[152] Emmerſon's Point, forming the eaſtern extremity of Cape Anne, twenty or twenty-five feet high, fringed with a wall of bare rocks on the ſea.

[153] Thatcher's Iſland, near the point juſt mentioned. It is nearly half a mile long and three hundred and fifty yards wide, and about fifty feet high.

[154] It is not poſſible to determine with abſolute certainty the place of this anchorage. But as Champlain deſcribes, at the end of this chapter, what muſt have been Charles River coming from the country of the Iroquois or the weſt, moſt likely as ſeen from his anchorage, there can be little doubt that he anchored in Boſton Harbor, near the weſtern limit of Noddle's Iſland, now known as Eaſt Boſton.

deal of land cleared up and planted with Indian corn. The country is very pleaſant and agreeable, and there is no lack of fine trees. The canoes of thoſe who live there are made of a ſingle piece, and are very liable to turn over if one is not ſkilful in managing them. We had not before ſeen any of this kind. They are made in the following manner. After cutting down, at a coſt of much labor and time, the largeſt and talleſt tree they can find, by means of ſtone hatchets (for they have no others except ſome few which they received from the ſavages on the coaſts of La Cadie,[155] who obtained them

[155] The fiſhermen and fur-traders had viſited theſe coaſts from a very early period. — *Vide antea*, note 18. From them they obtained the axe, a moſt important implement in their rude mode of life, and it was occaſionally found in uſe among tribes far in the interior.

La Cadie. Careleſſneſs or indifference in regard to the orthography of names was general in the time of Champlain. The volumes written in the vain attempt to ſettle the proper method of ſpelling the name of Shakeſpeare, are the fruit of this indifference. La Cadie did not eſcape this treatment. Champlain writes it Arcadie, Accadie, La Cadie, Acadie, and L'Acadie; while Leſcarbot uniformly, as far as we have obſerved, La Cadie. We have alſo ſeen it written L'Arcadie and L'Accadie, and in ſome, if not in all the preceding forms, with a Latin termination in *ia*. It is deemed important to ſecure uniformity, and to follow the French form in the tranſlation of a French work rather than the Latin. In this work, it is rendered LA CADIE in all caſes except in quotations. The hiſtory of the name favors this form rather than any other. The commiſſion or charter given to De Monts by Henry IV. in 1603, a ſtate paper or legal document, drawn, we may ſuppoſe, with more than uſual care, has La Cadie, and repeats it four times without variation. It is a name of Indian origin, as may be inferred by its appearing in compoſition in ſuch words as Paſſamacadie, Subenacadie, and Tracadie, plainly derived from the language ſpoken by the Souriquois and Etechemins. Fifty-five years before it was introduced into De Monts's commiſſion, it appeared written *Larcadia* in Gaſtaldo's map of "Terra Nova del Bacalaos," in the Italian tranſlation of Ptolemy's Geography, by Pietro Andrea Mattiolo, printed at Venice in 1548. The colophon bears date October, 1547. This rare work is in the poſſeſſion of Henry C. Murphy, LL.D., to whom we are indebted for a very beautiful copy of the map. It appeared again in 1561 on the map of Ruſcelli, which was borrowed, as well as the whole map, from the above work. — *Vide Ruſcelli's map in Dr. Kohl's Documentary Hiſtory of Maine*, Maine Hiſt. Soc., Portland, 1869, p. 233. On this map, Larcadia ſtands on the coaſt of Maine, in the midſt of the vaſt territory included in De Monts's grant, between the degrees of forty and forty-ſix north latitude. It will be obſerved, if we take

them in exchange for furs), they remove the bark, and round off the tree except on one ſide, where they apply fire gradually along its entire length; and ſometimes they put red-hot pebble-ſtones on top. When the fire is too fierce, they extinguiſh it with a little water, not entirely, but ſo that the edge of the boat may not be burnt. It being hollowed out as much as they wiſh, they ſcrape it all over with ſtones, which they uſe inſtead of knives. Theſe ſtones reſemble our muſket flints.

On the next day, the 17th of the month, we weighed anchor to go to a cape we had ſeen the day before, which ſeemed to lie on our ſouth ſouth-weſt. This day we were able to make only five leagues, and we paſſed by ſome iſlands[156] covered with wood. I obſerved in the bay all that the ſavages had deſcribed to me at Iſland Cape. As we continued our courſe, large numbers came to us in canoes from the iſlands and main land. We anchored a league from a cape, which we named St. Louis,[157] where we noticed ſmoke in

take away the Latin termination, that the pronunciation of this word as it firſt appeared in 1547, would not differ in *ſound* from La Cadie. It ſeems, therefore, very clear that the name of the territory ſtretching along the coaſt of Maine, we know not how far north or ſouth, as it was caught from the lips of the natives at ſome time anterior 1547, was beſt repreſented by La Cadie, as pronounced by the French. Whether De Monts had obtained the name of his American domain from thoſe who had recently viſited the coaſt and had caught its ſound from the natives, or whether he had taken it from this ancient map, we muſt remain uninformed. Several writers have ventured to interpret the word, and give us its original meaning. The following definitions have been offered: 1. The land of dogs; 2. Our village; 3. The fiſh called pollock; 4. Place; 5. Abundance. We do not undertake to decide between the diſagreeing doctors. But it is obvious to remark that a rich field lies open ready for a noble harveſt for any young ſcholar who has a genius for philology, and who is prepared to make a life work of the ſtudy and elucidation of the original languages of North America. The laurels in this field are ſtill to be gathered.

[156] The iſlands in Boſton Bay.

[157] This attempt to land was in Marſhfield near the mouth of South River. Not

in ſeveral places. While in the act of going there, our barque grounded on a rock, where we were in great danger, for, if we had not ſpeedily got it off, it would have overturned in the ſea, ſince the tide was falling all around, and there were five or ſix fathoms of water. But God preſerved us, and we anchored near the above-named cape, when there come to us fifteen or ſixteen canoes of ſavages. In ſome of them there were ſifteen or ſixteen, who began to manifeſt great ſigns of joy, and made various harangues, which we could not in the leaſt underſtand. Sieur de Monts ſent three or four men on ſhore in our canoe, not only to get water, but to ſee their chief, whoſe name was Honabetha. The latter had a number of knives and other trifles, which Sieur de Monts gave him, when he came alongſide to ſee us, together with ſome of his companions, who were preſent both along the ſhore and in their canoes. We received the chief very cordially, and made him welcome; who, after remaining ſome time, went back. Thoſe whom we had ſent to them brought us ſome little ſquaſhes as big as the fiſt, which we ate as a ſalad, like cucumbers, and which we found very good. They brought alſo ſome purſlane,[158] which grows in large quantities among the Indian corn, and of which they make no more account than of weeds. We ſaw here a great many little houſes, ſcattered over the fields where they plant their Indian corn.

There

Not ſucceeding, they ſailed forward a league, and anchored at Brant Point, which they named the Cape of St. Louis.

[158] This purſlane, *Portulaca oleracea*, ſtill grows vigorouſly among the Indian corn in New England, and is regarded with no more intereſt now than in 1605. It is a tropical plant, and was introduced by the Indians probably by accident with the ſeeds of tobacco or other plants.

There is, moreover, in this bay a very broad river, which we named River du Guaſt.[159] It ſtretches, as it ſeemed to me, towards the Iroquois, a nation in open warfare with the Montagnais, who live on the great river St. Lawrence.

CHAPTER VIII.

CONTINUATION OF THE DISCOVERIES ALONG THE COAST OF THE ALMOUCHIQUOIS, AND WHAT WE OBSERVED IN DETAIL.

THE next day we doubled Cap St. Louis,[160] ſo named by Sieur de Monts, a land rather low, and in latitude 42° 45′.[161] The ſame day we ſailed two leagues along a ſandy coaſt, as we paſſed along which we ſaw a great many cabins and gardens. The wind being contrary, we entered a little bay

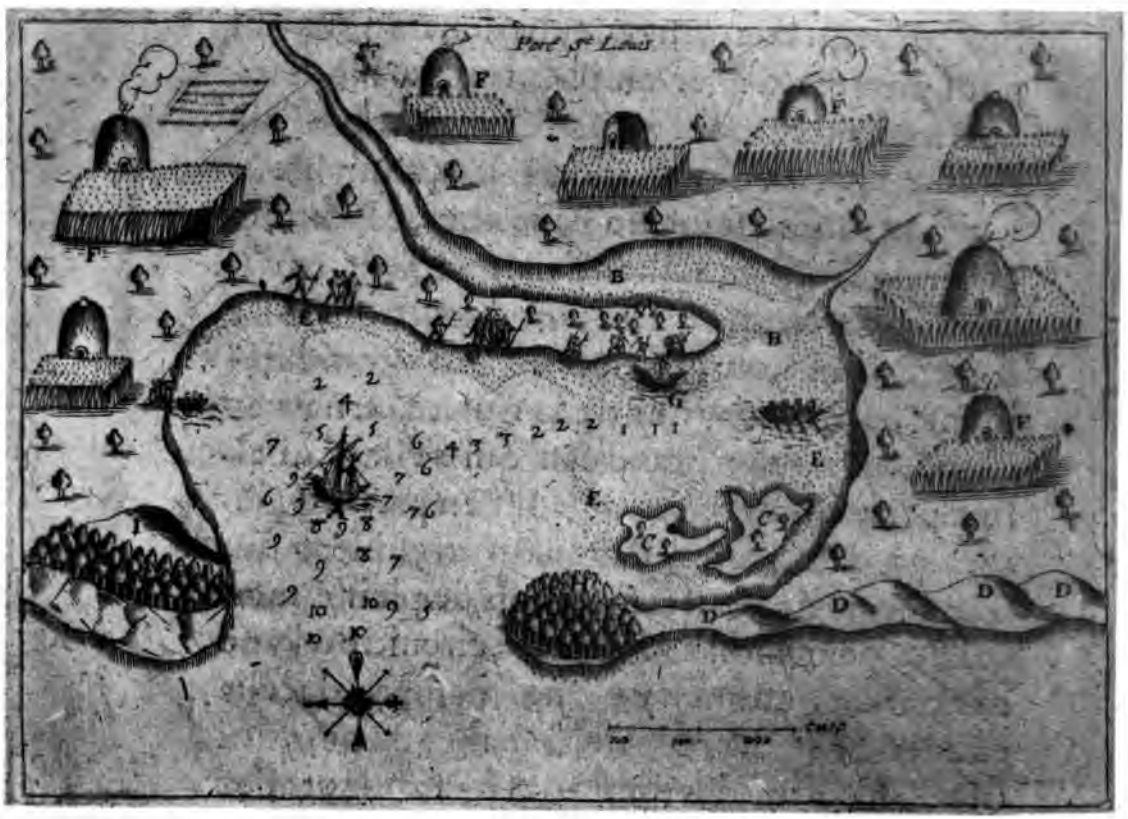
[159] Here at the end of the chapter Champlain ſeems to be reminded that he had omitted to mention the river of which he had learned, and had probably ſeen in the bay. This was Charles River. From the weſtern ſide of Noddle's Iſland, or Eaſt Boſton, where they were probably at anchor, it appeared at its confluence with the Myſtic River to come from the weſt, or the country of the Iroquois. By reference to Champlain's large map of 1612, this river will be clearly identified as Charles River, in connection with Boſton Bay and its numerous iſlands. On that map it is repreſented as a long river flowing from the weſt. This deſcription of the river by Champlain was probably from perſonal obſervation. Had he obtained his information from the Indians, they would not have told him that it was broad or that it came from the weſt, for ſuch are not the facts; but they would have repreſented to him that it was ſmall, winding in its courſe, and that it came from the ſouth. We infer, therefore, that he not only ſaw it himſelf, but probably from the deck of the little French barque, as it was riding at anchor in our harbor near Eaſt Boſton, where Charles River, augmented by the tide, flows into the harbor from the weſt, in a ſtrong, broad, deep current. They named it in honor of Pierre du Guaſt, Sieur de Monts, the commander of this expedition. Champlain writes the name "du Gas;" De Laet has "de Gua;" while Charlevoix writes "du Guaſt." This latter orthography generally prevails.

[160] It will be obſerved that, after doubling this cape, they ſailed two leagues, and then entered Plymouth Harbor, and conſequently this cape muſt have been what is now known as Brant Point.

[161] The latitude is 42° 5′.

bay to await a time favorable for proceeding. There came to us two or three canoes, which had juſt been fiſhing for cod and other fiſh, which are found there in large numbers. Theſe they catch with hooks made of a piece of wood, to which they attach a bone in the ſhape of a ſpear, and faſten it very ſecurely. The whole has a fang-ſhape, and the line attached to it is made out of the bark of a tree. They gave me one of their hooks, which I took as a curioſity. In it the bone was faſtened on by hemp, like that in France, as it ſeemed to me, and they told me that they gathered this plant without being obliged to cultivate it; and indicated that it grew to the height of four or five feet.[162] This canoe went back on ſhore to give notice to their fellow inhabitants, who cauſed columns of ſmoke to ariſe on our account. We ſaw eighteen or twenty ſavages, who came to the ſhore and began to dance. Our canoe landed in order to give them ſome bagatelles, at which they were greatly pleaſed. Some of them came to us and begged us to go to their river. We weighed anchor to do ſo, but were unable to enter on account of the ſmall amount of water, it being low tide, and were accordingly obliged to anchor at the mouth. I went aſhore, where I ſaw many others, who received us very cordially. I made alſo an examination of the river, but ſaw only an arm of water extending a ſhort diſtance inland, where the land is only

[162] This was plainly our Indian hemp, *Aſclepias incarnata*. "The fibres of the bark are ſtrong, and capable of being wrought into a fine ſoft thread; but it is very difficult to ſeparate the bark from the ſtalk. It is ſaid to have been uſed by the Indians for bow-ſtrings."—*Vide Cutler in Memoirs of the American Academy*, Vol. I. p. 424. It is the Swamp Milkweed of Gray, and grows in wet grounds. One variety is common in New England. The Pilgrims found at Plymouth "an excellent ſtrong kind of Flaxe and Hempe."—*Vide Mourt's Relation*, Dexter's ed., p. 62.


Port St Louis
F
B
G
E
C
D

two leagues from the above cape, and ten from the Iſland Cape. It is in about the ſame latitude as Cap St. Louis.

On the 19th of the month, we ſet out from this place. Coaſting along in a ſoutherly direction, we ſailed four or five leagues, and paſſed near a rock on a level with the ſurface of the water. As we continued our courſe, we ſaw ſome land which ſeemed to us to be iſlands, but as we came nearer we found it to be the main land, lying to the north-north-weſt of us, and that it was the cape of a large bay,[164] containing more than eighteen or nineteen leagues in circuit, into which we had run ſo far that we had to wear off on the other tack in order to double the cape which we had ſeen. The latter we named Cap Blanc,[165] ſince it contained ſands and downs which

is plain that the "Port du Cap St. Louis" is Plymouth Harbor, where anchored the "Mayflower" a little more than fifteen years later than this, freighted with the firſt permanent Engliſh colony eſtabliſhed in New England, commonly known as the Pilgrims. The Indian name of the harbor, according to Captain John Smith, who viſited it in 1614, was Accomack. He gave it, by direction of Prince Charles, the name of Plymouth. More recent inveſtigations point to this harbor as the one viſited by Martin Pring in 1603. — *Vide Paper by the Rev. Benj. F. De Coſta, before the New England His. Gen. Society*, Nov. 7, 1877, New England His. and Gen. Regiſter, Vol. XXXII. p. 79.

The interview of the French with the natives was brief, but courteous and friendly on both ſides. The Engliſh viſits were interrupted by more or leſs hoſtility. "When Pring was about ready to leave, the Indians became hoſtile and ſet the woods on fire, and he ſaw it burn 'for a mile ſpace.'" — *De Coſta.* A ſkirmiſh of ſome ſerioufneſs occurred with Smith's party. "After much kindneſſe vpon a ſmall occaſion, wee fought alſo with fortie or fiftie of thoſe: though ſome were hurt, and ſome ſlaine, yet within an hour after they became friends." — *Smith's New England*, Boſton, ed. 1865, p. 45.

[164] Cape Cod Bay.

[165] They named it "le Cap Blanc," the White Cape, from its white appearance, while Bartholomew Goſnold, three years before, had named it Cape Cod from the multitude of codfiſh near its ſhores. Captain John Smith called it Cape James. All the early navigators who paſſed along our Atlantic coaſt ſeem to have ſeen the headland of Cape Cod. It is well defined on Juan de la Coſa's map of 1500, although no name is given to it. On Ribero's map of 1529 it is called *C. de arenas.* On the map of Nic. Vallard de Dieppe of 1543, it is called *C. de Croix.*

which had a white appearance. A favorable wind was of great aſſiſtance to us here, for otherwiſe we ſhould have been in danger of being driven upon the coaſt. This bay is very ſafe, provided the land be not approached nearer than a good league, there being no iſlands nor rocks except that juſt mentioned, which is near a river that extends ſome diſtance inland, which we named St. Suzanne du Cap Blanc,[166] whence acroſs to Cap St. Louis the diſtance is ten leagues. Cap Blanc is a point of ſand, which bends around towards the ſouth ſome ſix leagues. This coaſt is rather high, and conſiſts of ſand, which is very conſpicuous as one comes from the ſea. At a diſtance of ſome fifteen or eighteen leagues from land, the depth of the water is thirty, forty, and fifty fathoms, but only ten on nearing the ſhore, which is unobſtructed. There is a large extent of open country along the ſhore before reaching the woods, which are very attractive and beautiful. We anchored off the coaſt, and ſaw ſome ſavages, towards whom four of our company proceeded. Making their way upon a ſand-bank, they obſerved ſomething like a bay, and cabins bordering it on all ſides. When they were about a league and a half from us, there came to them a ſavage dancing all over, as they expreſſed it. He had come down

[166] Wellfleet Harbor. It may be obſerved that a little farther back Champlain ſays that, having ſailed along in a ſoutherly direction four or five leagues, they were at a place where there was a "rock on a level with the ſurface of the water," and that they ſaw lying north-north-weſt of them Cap Blanc, that is, Cape Cod; he now ſays that the "rock" is near a river, which they named St. Suzanne du Cap Blanc, and that from it to Cap St. Louis the diſtance is ten leagues. Now, as the diſtance acroſs to Brant Point, or Cap St. Louis, from Wellfleet Harbor, is ten leagues, and as Cap Blanc or Cape Cod is north-north-weſt of it, it is plain that Wellfleet Harbor or Herring River, which flows into it, was the river which they named St. Suzanne du Cap Blanc, and that the "rock on a level with the water" was one of the ſeveral to be found near the entrance of Wellfleet Bay. It may have been the noted Bay Rock or Blue Rock.

down from the high ſhore, but turned about ſhortly after to inform his fellow inhabitants of our arrival.

The next day, the 20th of the month, we went to the place which our men had ſeen, and which we found a very dangerous harbor in conſequence of the ſhoals and banks, where we ſaw breakers in all directions. It was almoſt low tide when we entered, and there were only four feet of water in the northern paſſage; at high tide, there are two fathoms. After we had entered, we found the place very ſpacious, being perhaps three or four leagues in circuit, entirely ſurrounded by little houſes, around each one of which there was as much land as the occupant needed for his ſupport. A ſmall river enters here, which is very pretty, and in which at low tide there are ſome three and a half feet of water. There are alſo two or three brooks bordered by meadows. It would be a very fine place, if the harbor were good. I took the altitude, and found the latitude 42°, and the deflection of the magnetic needle 18° 40′. Many ſavages, men and women, viſited us, and ran up on all ſides dancing. We named this place Port de Mallebarre.[167]

The next day, the 21ſt of the month, Sieur de Monts determined to go and ſee their habitation. Nine or ten of us accompanied him with our arms; the reſt remained to guard the barque. We went about a league along the coaſt. Before reaching their cabins, we entered a field planted with Indian

[167] *Port de Mallebarre*, Nauſet Harbor, in latitude 41° 48′. By comparing Champlain's map of the harbor, it will be ſeen that important changes have taken place ſince 1605. The entrance has receded a mile or more towards the ſouth, and this has apparently changed its interior channel, and the whole form of the bay. The name itſelf has drifted away with the ſands, and feebly clings to the extremity of Monomoy Point at the heel of the Cape.

Indian corn in the manner before deſcribed. The corn was in flower, and five and a half feet high. There was ſome leſs advanced, which they plant later. We ſaw many Brazilian beans, and many ſquaſhes of various ſizes, very good for eating; ſome tobacco, and roots which they cultivate, the latter having the taſte of an artichoke. The woods are filled with oaks, nut-trees, and beautiful cypreſſes,[168] which are of a reddiſh color and have a very pleaſant odor. There were alſo ſeveral fields entirely uncultivated, the land being allowed to remain

---

CHAMPLAIN'S EXPLANATION OF THE ACCOMPANYING MAP.

MALLEBARRE.

The figures indicate fathoms of water.

A. The two entrances to the harbor. *B*. Sandy downs where the ſavages killed a ſailor belonging to the barque of Sieur de Monts. *C*. Places in the harbor where the barque of Sieur de Monts was. *D*. Spring on the ſhore of the harbor. *E*. A river flowing into the harbor. *F*. A brook. *G*. A ſmall river where quantities of fiſh are caught. *H*. Sandy downs with low ſhrubs and many vines. *I*. Iſland at the point of the downs. *L*. Houſes and dwelling-places of the ſavages that till the land. *M*. Shoals and ſand-banks at the entrance and inſide of the harbor. *O*. Sandy downs. *P*. Sea-coaſt. *q*. Barque of Sieur de Poutrincourt, when he viſited the place two years after Sieur de Monts. *R*. Landing of the party of Sieur de Poutrincourt.

NOTES. A compariſon of this map with the Coaſt Survey Charts will ſhow very great changes in this harbor ſince the days of Champlain. Not only has the mouth of the bay receded towards the ſouth, but this receſſion appears to have left entirely dry much of the area which was flooded in 1605. Under reference *q*, on the above map, it is intimated that De Poutrincourt's viſit was two years after that of De Monts. It was more than one, and was the ſecond year after, but not, ſtrictly ſpeaking, "two years after."

---

[168] Not ſtrictly a cypreſs, but rather a juniper, the Savin, or red cedar, *Juniperus Virginiana*, a tree of excluſively American origin; and conſequently it could not be truly characterized by any name then known to Champlain.

remain fallow. When they wiſh to plant it, they ſet fire to the weeds, and then work it over with their wooden ſpades. Their cabins are round, and covered with heavy thatch made of reeds. In the roof there is an opening of about a foot and a half, whence the ſmoke from the fire paſſes out. We aſked them if they had their permanent abode in this place, and whether there was much ſnow. But we were unable to aſcertain this fully from them, not underſtanding their language, although they made an attempt to inform us by ſigns, by taking ſome ſand in their hands, ſpreading it out over the ground, and indicating that it was of the color of our collars, and that it reached the depth of a foot. Others made ſigns that there was leſs, and gave us to underſtand alſo that the harbor never froze; but we were unable to aſcertain whether the ſnow laſted long. I conclude, however, that this region is of moderate temperature, and the winter not ſevere. While we were there, there was a north-eaſt ſtorm, which laſted four days; the ſky being ſo overcaſt that the ſun hardly ſhone at all. It was very cold, and we were obliged to put on our great-coats, which we had entirely left off. Yet I think the cold was accidental, as it is often experienced elſewhere out of ſeaſon.

On the 23d of July, four or five ſeamen having gone on ſhore with ſome kettles to get freſh water, which was to be found in one of the ſand-banks a ſhort diſtance from our barque, ſome of the ſavages, coveting them, watched the time when our men went to the ſpring, and then ſeized one out of the hands of a ſailor, who was the firſt to dip, and who had no weapons. One of his companions, ſtarting to run after him, ſoon returned, as he could not catch him, ſince he ran much

much faſter than himſelf. The other ſavages, of whom there were a large number, ſeeing our ſailors running to our barque, and at the ſame time ſhouting to us to fire at them, took to flight. At the time there were ſome of them in our barque, who threw themſelves into the ſea, only one of whom we were able to ſeize. Thoſe on the land who had taken to flight, ſeeing them ſwimming, returned ſtraight to the ſailor from whom they had taken away the kettle, hurled ſeveral arrows at him from behind, and brought him down. Seeing this, they ran at once to him, and deſpatched him with their knives. Meanwhile, haſte was made to go on ſhore, and muſkets were fired from our barque: mine, burſting in my hands, came near killing me. The ſavages, hearing this diſcharge of fire-arms, took to flight, and with redoubled ſpeed when they ſaw that we had landed, for they were afraid when they ſaw us running after them. There was no likelihood of our catching them, for they are as ſwift as horſes. We brought in the murdered man, and he was buried ſome hours later. Meanwhile, we kept the priſoner bound by the feet and hands on board of our barque, fearing that he might eſcape. But Sieur de Monts reſolved to let him go, being perſuaded that he was not to blame, and that he had no previous knowledge of what had tranſpired, as alſo thoſe who, at the time, were in and about our barque. Some hours later there came ſome ſavages to us, to excuſe themſelves, indicating by ſigns and demonſtrations that it was not they who had committed this malicious act, but others farther off in the interior. We did not wiſh to harm them, although it was in our power to avenge ourſelves.

All theſe ſavages from the Iſland Cape wear neither robes nor

nor furs, except very rarely: moreover, their robes are made of graſſes and hemp, ſcarcely covering the body, and coming down only to their thighs. They have only the ſexual parts concealed with a ſmall piece of leather; ſo likewiſe the women, with whom it comes down a little lower behind than with the men, all the reſt of the body being naked. Whenever the women came to ſee us, they wore robes which were open in front. The men cut off the hair on the top of the head like thoſe at the river Choüacoet. I ſaw, among other things, a girl with her hair very neatly dreſſed, with a ſkin colored red, and bordered on the upper part with little shell-beads. A part of her hair hung down behind, the reſt being braided in various ways. Theſe people paint the face red, black, and yellow. They have ſcarcely any beard, and tear it out as faſt as it grows. Their bodies are well-proportioned. I cannot tell what government they have, but I think that in this reſpect they reſemble their neighbors, who have none at all. They know not how to worſhip or pray; yet, like the other ſavages, they have ſome ſuperſtitions, which I ſhall deſcribe in their place. As for weapons, they have only pikes, clubs, bows and arrows. It would ſeem from their appearance that they have a good diſpoſition, better than thoſe of the north, but they are all in fact of no great worth. Even a ſlight intercourſe with them gives you at once a knowledge of them. They are great thieves and, if they cannot lay hold of any thing with their hands, they try to do ſo with their feet, as we have oftentimes learned by experience. I am of opinion that, if they had any thing to exchange with us, they would not give themſelves to thieving. They bartered away to us their bows, arrows, and quivers,

ers, for pins and buttons; and if they had had any thing elſe better they would have done the ſame with it. It is neceſſary to be on one's guard againſt this people, and live in a ſtate of diſtruſt of them, yet without letting them perceive it. They gave us a large quantity of tobacco, which they dry and then reduce to powder.[169] When they eat Indian corn, they boil it in earthen pots, which they make in a way different from ours.[170] They bray it alſo in wooden mortars and reduce it to flour, of which they then make cakes, like the Indians of Peru.

In this place and along the whole coaſt from Quinibequy, there are a great many *figuenocs*,[171] which is a fiſh with a ſhell

[169] The method of preparing tobacco here for ſmoking was probably not different from that of the Indian tribes in Canada. Among the Huron antiquities in the Muſeum at the Univerſity Laval are pipes which were found already filled with tobacco, ſo prepared as to reſemble our fine-cut tobacco. — *Vide Laverdière in loco.*

[170] The following deſcription of the Indian pottery, and the method of its manufacture by their women, as quoted by Laverdière from Sagard's Hiſtory of Canada, who wrote in 1636, will be intereſting to the antiquary, and will illuſtrate what Champlain means by "a way different from ours:" —

"They are ſkilful in making good earthen pots, which they harden very well on the hearth, and which are ſo ſtrong that they do not, like our own, break over the fire when having no water in them. But they cannot ſuſtain dampneſs nor cold water ſo long as our own, ſince they become brittle and break at the leaſt ſhock given them; otherwiſe they laſt very well. The ſavages make them by taking ſome earth of the right kind, which they clean and knead well in their hands, mixing with it, on what principle I know not, a ſmall quantity of greaſe. Then making the maſs into the ſhape of a ball, they make an indentation in the middle of it with the fiſt, which they make continually larger by ſtriking repeatedly on the outſide with a little wooden paddle as much as is neceſſary to complete it. Theſe veſſels are of different ſizes, without feet or handles, completely round like a ball, excepting the mouth, which projects a little."

[171] This cruſtacean, *Limulus polyphemus*, is ſtill ſeen on the ſtrands of New England. They are found in great abundance in more ſouthern waters: on the ſhores of Long Iſland and New Jerſey, they are collected in boat-loads and made uſeful for fertilizing purpoſes. Champlain has left a drawing of it on his large map. It is vulgarly known as the king-crab, or horſe-foot; to the latter it bears a ſtriking ſimilarity. This very accurate deſcription of Champlain was copied by De Laet into his elaborate work "Novvs Orbis," publiſhed in

ſhell on its back like the tortoiſe, yet different, there being in the middle a row of little prickles, of the color of a dead leaf, like the reſt of the fiſh. At the end of this ſhell, there is another ſtill ſmaller, bordered by very ſharp points. The length of the tail varies according to their ſize. With the end of it, theſe people point their arrows, and it contains alſo a row of prickles like the large ſhell in which are the eyes. There are eight ſmall feet like thoſe of the crab, and two behind longer and flatter, which they uſe in ſwimming. There are alſo in front two other very ſmall ones with which they eat. When walking, all the feet are concealed excepting the two hindermoſt, which are ſlightly viſible. Under the ſmall ſhell there are membranes which ſwell up, and beat like the throat of a frog, and reſt upon each other like the folds of a waiſtcoat. The largeſt ſpecimen of this fiſh that I ſaw was a foot broad, and a foot and a half long.

We ſaw alſo a ſea-bird [172] with a black beak, the upper part ſlightly aquiline, four inches long and in the form of a lancet; namely, the lower part repreſenting the handle and the upper the blade, which is thin, ſharp on both ſides, and ſhorter by a

in 1633, accompanied by an excellent wood-engraving. This ſpecies is peculiar to our Atlantic waters, and naturally at that time attracted the attention of Europeans, who had not ſeen it before.

[172] The Black Skimmer or Cut-water, *Rhynchops nigra*. It appears to be diſtinct from, but cloſely related to, the Terns. This bird is here deſcribed with general accuracy. According to Dr. Coues, it belongs more particularly to the South Atlantic and Gulf States, where it is very abundant; it is frequent in the Middle States, and only occaſionally ſeen in New England. The wings are exceedingly long; they fly in cloſe flocks, moving ſimultaneouſly. They ſeem to feed as they ſkim low over the water, the under-mandible grazing or cutting the ſurface, and thus taking in their food. — *Vide Coues's Key to North American Birds*, Boſton, 1872, p. 324.

Whether Champlain ſaw this bird as a "ſtray" on the ſhores of Cape Cod, or whether it has ſince ceaſed to come in large numbers as far north as formerly, offers an intereſting inquiry for the ornithologiſts. Specimens may be ſeen in the Muſeum of the Boſton Society of Natural Hiſtory.

a third than the other, which circumſtance is a matter of aſtoniſhment to many perſons, who cannot comprehend how it is poſſible for this bird to eat with ſuch a beak. It is of the ſize of a pigeon, the wings being very long in proportion to the body, the tail ſhort, as alſo the legs, which are red; the feet being ſmall and flat. The plumage on the upper part is gray-brown, and on the under part pure white. They go always in flocks along the ſea-ſhore, like the pigeons with us.

The ſavages, along all theſe coaſts where we have been, ſay that other birds, which are very large, come along when their corn is ripe. They imitated for us their cry, which reſembles that of the turkey. They ſhowed us their feathers in ſeveral places, with which they feather their arrows, and which they put on their heads for decoration; and alſo a kind of hair which they have under the throat like thoſe we have in France, and they ſay that a red creſt falls over upon the beak. According to their deſcription, they are as large as a buſtard, which is a kind of gooſe, having the neck longer and twice as large as thoſe with us. All theſe indications led us to conclude that they were turkeys.[173] We ſhould have been very

[173] Champlain was clearly correct in his concluſion. The wild Turkey, *Meleagris gallopavo*, was not uncommon in New England at that period. Wood and Joſſelyn and Higginſon, all ſpeak of it fully: —

"Of theſe, ſometimes there will be forty, threeſcore and a hundred of a flocke; ſometimes more, and ſometimes leſſe; their feeding is Acornes, Hawes, and Berries; ſome of them get a haunt to frequent our *Engliſh* corne: In winter, when the ſnow covers the ground, they reſort to the Sea ſhore to look for Shrimps, and ſuch ſmal Fiſhes at low tides. Such as love Turkie hunting, moſt follow it in winter after a new-falne Snow, when hee may followe them by their tracts; ſome haue killed ten or a dozen in half a day; if they can be found towards an evening and watched where they peirch, if one come about ten or eleven of the clock, he may ſhoote as often as he will, they will ſit, unleſſe they be ſlenderly wounded. Theſe Turkies remaine all the yeare long, the price of a good Turkey cocke is foure ſhillings; and he is well worth it, for he may be in weight forty pound; a Hen, two ſhillings." — *Wood's New England Proſpect*,

very glad to ſee ſome of theſe birds, as well as their feathers, for the ſake of greater certainty. Before ſeeing their feathers, and the little bunch of hair which they have under the throat, and hearing their cry imitated, I ſhould have thought that they were certain birds like turkeys, which are found in ſome places in Peru, along the ſea-ſhore, eating carrion and other dead things like crows. But theſe are not ſo large; nor do they have ſo long a bill, or a cry like that of real turkeys; nor are they good to eat like thoſe which the Indians ſay come in flocks in ſummer, and at the beginning of winter go away to warmer countries, their natural dwelling-place.

CHAPTER IX.

Proſpect, 1634, Prince Society ed., Boſton, p. 32.

"The *Turkie*, who is blacker than ours; I haue heard ſeveral credible perſons affirm, they haue ſeen *Turkie Cocks* that have weighed forty, yea ſixty pound; but out of my perſonal experimental knowledge I can aſſure you, that I haue eaten my ſhare of a *Turkie Cock*, that when he was pull'd and garbidg'd, weighed thirty [9] pound; and I haue alſo ſeen threeſcore broods of young *Turkies* on the ſide of a marſh, ſunning themſelves in a morning betimes, but this was thirty years ſince, the *Engliſh* and the *Indians* having now deſtroyed the breed, ſo that 'tis very rare to meet with a wild *Turkie* in the Woods; But ſome of the *Engliſh* bring up great ſtore of the wild kind, which remain about their Houſes as tame as ours in *England*." — *New England's Rarities*, by John Joſſelyn, Gent., London, 1672, Tuckerman's ed., pp. 41, 42.

"Here are likewiſe abundance of Turkies often killed in the Woods, farre greater then our Engliſh Turkies, and exceeding fat, ſweet, and fleſhy, for here they haue aboundance of feeding all the yeere long, as Strawberriees, in Summer at places are full of them and all manner of Berries and Fruits." — *New England Plantation*, by Francis Higginſon, London, 1630. *Vide* alſo *Bradford's Hiſt. Plym. Plantation*, 1646, Deane's ed., Boſton, 1856, p. 105.

It appears to be the opinion among recent ornithologiſts that the ſpecies of turkey, thus early found in New England, was the *Meleagris Americana*, long ſince extirpated, and not identical with our domeſticated bird. Our domeſtic turkey is ſuppoſed to have originated in the Weſt Indies or in Mexico, and to have been tranſplanted as tamed to other parts of this continent, and to Europe, and named by Linnæus *Meleagris gallopavo*. — *Vide Report on the Zoölogy of Pacific Railroad Routes*, by Baird, Waſhington, 1858, Vol. IX. Part II. pp. 613–618; *Coues's Key*, Boſton, 1872, pp. 231, 232.

CHAPTER IX.

RETURN FROM THE DISCOVERIES ALONG THE COAST OF THE ALMOUCHIQUOIS.

WE had ſpent more than five weeks in going over three degrees of latitude, and our voyage was limited to ſix, ſince we had not taken proviſions for a longer time. In conſequence of fogs and ſtorms, we had not been able to go farther than Mallebarre, where we waited ſeveral days for fair weather, in order to ſail. Finding ourſelves accordingly preſſed by the ſcantineſs of proviſions, Sieur de Monts determined to return to the Iſland of St. Croix, in order to find another place more favorable for our ſettlement, as we had not been able to do on any of the coaſts which we had explored on this voyage.

Accordingly, on the 25th of July, we ſet out from this harbor, in order to make obſervations elſewhere. In going out, we came near being loſt on the bar at the entrance, from the miſtake of our pilots, Cramolet and Champdoré, maſters of the barque, who had imperfectly marked out the entrance of the channel on the ſouthern ſide, where we were to go. Having eſcaped this danger, we headed north-eaſt [174] for ſix leagues, until we reached Cap Blanc, ſailing on from there to

[174] Champlain is in error as to the longitude of Mallebarre, or Nauſet harbor, from which they took their departure on the 25th of July, 1605. This port is about 38′ eaſt of Iſland Cape, or Cape Anne, and about 16′ eaſt of the weſtern point of Cap Blanc, or Cape Cod; and, to reach their deſtination, they muſt have ſailed north-weſt, and not north-eaſt, as he erroneouſly ſtates.

to Iſland Cape, a diſtance of fifteen leagues, with the ſame wind. Then we headed eaſt-north-eaſt ſixteen leagues, as far as Choüacoet, where we ſaw the ſavage chief, Marchin,[175] whom we had expected to ſee at the Lake Quinibequy. He had the reputation of being one of the valiant ones of his people. He had a fine appearance: all his motions were dignified, ſavage as he was. Sieur de Monts gave him many preſents, with which he was greatly pleaſed; and, in return, Marchin gave him a young Etechemin boy, whom he had captured in war, and whom we took away with us; and thus we ſet out, mutually good friends. We headed north-eaſt a quarter eaſt for fifteen leagues, as far as Quinibequy, where we arrived on the 29th of the month, and where we were expecting to find a ſavage, named Saſinou, of whom I ſpoke before. Thinking that he would come, we waited ſome time for him, in order to recover from him an Etechemin young man and girl, whom he was holding as priſoners. While waiting, there came to us a captain called Anaſſou, who trafficked a little in furs, and with whom we made an alliance. He told us that there was a ſhip, ten leagues off the harbor, which was engaged in fiſhing, and that thoſe on her had killed five ſavages of this river, under cover of friendſhip. From his deſcription of the men on the veſſel, we concluded that they were Engliſh, and we named the iſland where they were La Nef;[176] for, at a diſtance, it had the appearance

[175] They had failed to meet him at the lake in the Kennebec; namely, Merrymeeting Bay. — *Vide antea*, p. 60.

[176] The iſland which they thus named *La Nef*, the Ship, was Monhegan, about twenty-five nautical miles eaſt from the mouth of the Kennebec, a mile and a third long, with an elevation at its higheſt point of a hundred and forty feet above the level of the ſea, and in latitude 43° 45′ 52″. Champlain's

appearance of a ship. Finding that the above-mentioned Saſinou

plain's conjecture as to the nationality of the ſhip was correct. It was the "Archangel," commanded by the celebrated explorer, Captain George Weymouth, who under the patronage of the Earl of Southampton came to explore our Atlantic coaſt in the ſpring of 1605, for the purpoſe of ſelecting a ſite for an Engliſh colony. He anchored near Monhegan on the 28th of May, N. S.; and, after ſpending nearly a month in reconnoitring the iſlands and mainland in the vicinity, and capturing five of the natives, he took his departure for England on the 26th of June. On the 5th of July, juſt 9 days after Weymouth left the coaſt, De Monts and Champlain entered with their little barque the mouth of the Kennebec. They do not appear to have ſeen at that time any of the natives at or about the mouth of the river; and it is not unlikely that, on account of the ſeizure and, as they ſuppoſed, the murder of their comrades by Weymouth, they had retired farther up the river for greater ſafety. On the return, however, of the French from Cape Cod, on the 29th of July, Anaſſou gave them, as ſtated in the text, a friendly reception, and related the ſtory of the ſeizure of his friends.

To prevent the interference of other nations, it was the policy of Weymouth and his patron not to diſcloſe the locality of the region he had explored; and conſequently Roſier, the narrator of the voyage, ſo ſkilfully withheld whatever might clearly identify the place, and couched his deſcriptions in ſuch indefinite language, that there has been and is now a great diverſity of opinion on the ſubject among local hiſtorians. It was the opinion of the Rev. Thomas Prince that Weymouth explored the Kennebec, or Sagadahoc, and with him coincide Mr. John McKeen and the Rev. Dr. Ballard, of Brunſwick. The Rev. Dr. Belknap, after ſatisfactory examinations, decided that it was the Penobſcot; and he is followed by Mr. William Willis, late Preſident of the Maine Hiſtorical Society. Mr. George Prince, of Bath, has publiſhed an elaborate paper to prove that it was St. George's River; and Mr. David Cuſhman, of Warren, coincides in this view. Other writers, not entering into the diſcuſſion at length, accept one or another of the theories above mentioned. It does not fall within the purview of our preſent purpoſe to enter upon the diſcuſſion of this ſubject. But the ſtatement in the text, not referred to by any of the above-mentioned writers, "that thoſe on her had killed five ſavages *of this river*," *que ceux de dedans auoient tué cinq ſauuages d'icelle riuière*, can hardly fail to have weight in the deciſion of this intereſting queſtion.

The chief Anaſſou reported that they were "killed," a natural inference under the circumſtances; but in fact they were carefully concealed in the hold of the ſhip, and three of them, having been tranſported to England and introduced into his family, imparted much important information to Sir Ferdinando Gorges, whoſe diſtinguiſhed career was afterward ſo intimately connected with the progreſs of American colonization. For the diſcuſſion touching the river explored by Weymouth, *vide Prince's Annals*, 1736, *in loco; Belknap's American Biography*, 1794, Vol. II., art. Weymouth; *Remarks on the Voyage of George Waymouth*, by John McKeen, Col. Me. His. Society, Vol. V. p. 309; *Comments on Waymouth's Voyage*, by William Willis, idem, p. 344; *Voyage of Captain George Weymouth*, by George Prince, Col. Me. His. Soc., Vol. VI. p. 293; *Weymouth's Voyage*, by

Saſinou did not come, we headed eaſt-ſouth-eaſt,[176½] for twenty leagues, to Iſle Haute, where we anchored for the night.

On the next day, the 1ſt of Auguſt, we ſailed eaſt ſome twenty leagues to Cap Corneille,[177] where we ſpent the night. On the 2d of the month, we ſailed north-eaſt ſeven leagues to the mouth of the river St. Croix, on the weſtern ſhore. Having anchored between the two firſt iſlands,[178] Sieur de Monts embarked in a canoe, at a diſtance of ſix leagues from the ſettlement of St. Croix, where we arrived the next day with our barque. We found there Sieur des Antons of St. Malo, who had come in one of the veſſels of Sieur de Monts, to bring proviſions and alſo other ſupplies for thoſe who were to winter in this country.

CHAPTER X.

by David Cuſhman, *idem*, p. 309; *George Weymouth and the Kennebec*, by the Rev. Edward Ballard, D.D., Memorial Volume of the Popham Celebration, Portland, 1863, p. 301.

[176½] *We headed eaſt ſouth-eaſt.* It is poſſible that, on leaving the mouth of the Kennebec, they ſailed for a ſhort diſtance to the ſouth-eaſt; but the general courſe was to the north-eaſt.

[177] *Cap Corneille*, or Crow Cape, was apparently the point of land advancing out between Machias and Little Machias Bays, including perhaps Croſs Iſland. De Monts and his party probably anchored and paſſed the night in Machias Bay. The poſition of Cap Corneille may be ſatisfactorily fixed by its diſtance and direction from the Grand Manan, as ſeen on Champlain's map of 1612, to which the reader is referred.

[178] This anchorage was between Campobello and Mooſe Iſland, on which is ſituated the town of Eaſtport.

CHAPTER X.

THE DWELLING-PLACE ON THE ISLAND OF ST. CROIX TRANSFERRED TO PORT ROYAL, AND THE REASON WHY.

SIEUR DE MONTS determined to change his location, and make another ſettlement, in order to avoid the ſevere cold and the bad winter which we had had in the Iſland of St. Croix. As we had not, up to that time, found any ſuitable harbor, and, in view of the ſhort time we had for building houſes in which to eſtabliſh ourſelves, we fitted out two barques, and loaded them with the frame-work taken from the houſes of St. Croix, in order to tranſport it to Port Royal, twenty-five leagues diſtant, where we thought the climate was much more temperate and agreeable. Pont Gravé and I ſet out for that place; and, having arrived, we looked for a ſite favorable for our reſidence, under ſhelter from the north-weſt wind, which we dreaded, having been very much haraſſed by it.

After ſearching carefully in all directions, we found no place more ſuitable and better ſituated than one ſlightly elevated, about which there are ſome marſhes and good ſprings of water. This place is oppoſite the iſland at the mouth of the river Équille.[179] To the north of us about

a

[179] In the original, Champlain has written the name of this river in this particular inſtance *Guille*, probably an abbreviation for *Anguille*, the French name of the fiſh which we call the eel. Leſcarbot ſays the "river was named *L'Équille* becauſe the firſt fiſh taken therein was an *équille*. — *Vide antea*, note 57.

a league, there is a range of mountains,[180] extending nearly ten leagues in a north-eaſt and ſouth-weſt direction. The whole country is filled with thick foreſts, as I mentioned above, except at a point a league and a half up the river, where there are ſome oaks, although ſcattering, and many wild vines, which one could eaſily remove and put the ſoil under cultivation, notwithſtanding it is light and ſandy. We had almoſt reſolved to build there; but the conſideration that we ſhould have been too far up the harbor and river led us to change our mind.

Recognizing accordingly the ſite of our habitation as a good one, we began to clear up the ground, which was full of trees, and to erect houſes as ſoon as poſſible. Each one was buſy in this work. After every thing had been arranged, and the majority of the dwellings built, Sieur de Monts determined to return to France, in order to petition his Majeſty to grant him all that might be neceſſary for his undertaking. He had deſired to leave Sieur d'Orville to command in this place in his abſence. But the climatic malady, *mal de la terre*, with which he was afflicted would not allow him to gratify the wiſh of Sieur de Monts. On this account, a conference was held with Pont Gravé on the ſubject, to whom this charge was offered, which he was happy to accept; and he finiſhed what little of the habitation remained to be built. I, at the ſame time, hoping to have an opportunity to make ſome new explorations towards Florida, determined to ſtay there alſo, of which Sieur de Monts approved.

CHAPTER XI.

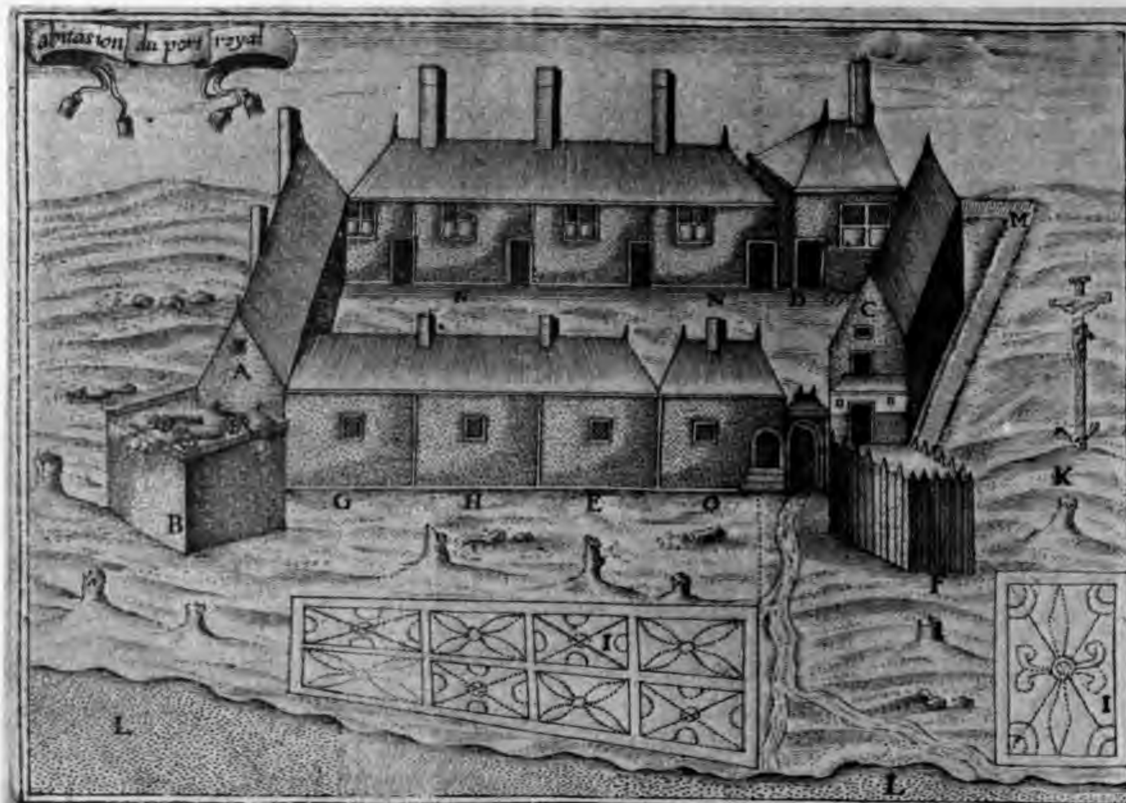
[180] The elevation of this range varies from ſix hundred to ſeven hundred feet.

CHAPTER XI.

WHAT TOOK PLACE AFTER THE DEPARTURE OF SIEUR DE MONTS, UNTIL, NO TIDINGS OF WHAT HE HAD PROMISED BEING RECEIVED, WE DEPARTED FROM PORT ROYAL TO RETURN TO FRANCE.

AS ſoon as Sieur de Monts had departed, a portion of the forty or forty-five who remained began to make gardens. I, alſo, for the ſake of occupying my time, made one, which was ſurrounded with ditches full of water, in which I placed ſome fine trout, and into which flowed three brooks of very fine running water, from which the greater part of our ſettlement was ſupplied. I made alſo a little ſluice-way towards the ſhore, in order to draw off the water when I wiſhed. This ſpot was entirely ſurrounded by meadows, where I conſtructed a ſummer-houſe, with ſome fine trees, as a reſort for enjoying the freſh air. I made there, alſo, a little reſervoir for holding ſalt-water fiſh, which we took out as we wanted them. I took eſpecial pleaſure in it, and planted there ſome ſeeds which turned out well. But much work had to be laid out in preparation. We reſorted often to this place as a paſtime; and it ſeemed as if the little birds round about took pleaſure in it, for they gathered there in large numbers, warbling and chirping ſo pleaſantly that I think I never heard the like.

The plan of the ſettlement was ten fathoms long and eight wide, making the diſtance round thirty-ſix. On the eaſtern ſide is a ſtore-houſe, occupying the width of it, and a very fine



abitasion du port royal
A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
K
L
M
N
O

fine cellar from five to ſix feet deep. On the northern ſide are the quarters of Sieur de Monts, handſomely finiſhed. About the back yard are the dwellings of the workmen. At a corner of the weſtern ſide is a platform, where four cannon were placed; and at the other corner, towards the eaſt, is a paliſade ſhaped like a platform, as can be ſeen from the accompanying illuſtration.

Some days after the buildings were completed, I went to the river St. John to find the ſavage named Secondon, the ſame that conducted Prevert's party to the copper mine, which I had already gone in ſearch of with Sieur de Monts, when we were at the Port of Mines, though without ſucceſs.[181] Having found him, I begged him to go there with us, which he

---

CHAMPLAIN'S EXPLANATION OF THE ACCOMPANYING MAP.

L'ABITASION DU PORT ROYAL.

The figures indicate fathoms of water.

A. Dwelling of the artiſans. *B*. Platform where the cannon were placed. *C*. The ſtore-houſe. *D*. Dwelling of Sieur de Pont Gravé and Champlain. *E*. The blackſmith's ſhop. *F*. Paliſade of pickets. *G*. The bakery. *H*. The kitchen. *O*. Small houſe where the equipment of our barques was ſtored. This Sieur de Poutrincourt afterwards had rebuilt, and Sieur Boulay dwelt there when Sieur du Pont Gravé returned to France. *P*. Gate to our habitation. *Q*. The Cemetery. *R*. The River.

NOTES. The habitation of Port Royal was on the preſent ſite of the hamlet of Lower Granville in Nova Scotia. *I*. Points to the garden-plots. *K*. Takes the place of *Q*, which is wanting on the map, and marks the place of the cemetery, where may be ſeen the crucifix, the death's-head, and croſs-bones. *L*. Takes the place of *R*, which is wanting, to indicate the river. *M*. Indicates the moat on the north ſide of the dwelling. *N*. Probably indicates the dwelling of the gentlemen, De Monts and others.

---

[181] *Vide antea*, pp. 25, 26.

he very readily conſented to do, and proceeded to ſhow it to us. We found there ſome little pieces of copper of the thickneſs of a ſou, and others ſtill thicker imbedded in grayiſh and red rocks. The miner accompanying us, whoſe name was Maſter Jacques, a native of Sclavonia, a man very ſkilful in ſearching for minerals, made the entire circuit of the hills to ſee if he could find any gangue,[182] but without ſucceſs. Yet he found, ſome ſteps from where we had taken the pieces of copper before mentioned, ſomething like a mine, which, however, was far from being one. He ſaid that, from the appearance of the ſoil, it might prove to be good, if it were worked; and that it was not probable that there could be pure copper on the ſurface of the earth, without there being a large quantity of it underneath. The truth is that, if the water did not cover the mines twice a day, and if they did not lie in ſuch hard rocks, ſomething might be expected from them.

After making this obſervation, we returned to our ſettlement, where we found ſome of our company ſick with the *mal de la terre*, but not ſo ſeriouſly as at the Iſland of St. Croix; although, out of our number of forty-five, twelve died, including the miner, and five were ſick, who recovered the following ſpring. Our ſurgeon, named Des Champs, from Honfleur, ſkilful in his profeſſion, opened ſome of the bodies, to ſee whether he might be more ſucceſsful in diſcovering the cauſe of the maladies than our ſurgeons had been the year before. He found the parts of the body affected in the ſame manner as thoſe opened at the Iſland of St. Croix, but could diſcover no means of curing them, any more than the other ſurgeons.

On

[182] *La gangue.* This is the technical word for the matrix, or ſubſtance containing the ore of metals.

On the 20th of December, it began to ſnow, and ſome ice paſſed along before our ſettlement. The winter was not ſo ſharp as the year before, nor the ſnow ſo deep, or of ſo long duration. Among other incidents, the wind was ſo violent on the 20th of February, 1605,[183] that it blew over a large number of trees, roots and all, and broke off many others. It was a remarkable ſight. The rains were very frequent, which was the cauſe of the mild winter in compariſon with the paſt one, although it is only twenty-five leagues from Port Royal to St. Croix.

On the firſt day of March, Pont Gravé ordered a barque of ſeventeen or eighteen tons to be fitted up, which was ready on the 15th, in order to go on a voyage of diſcovery along the coaſt of Florida.[184] With this view, we ſet out on the 16th following, but were obliged to put in at an iſland to the ſouth of Manan, having gone that day eighteen leagues. We anchored in a ſandy cove, expoſed to the ſea and the ſouth wind.[185] The latter increaſed, during the night, to ſuch an impetuoſity that we could not ſtand by our anchor, and were compelled, without choice, to go aſhore, at the mercy of God and the waves. The latter were ſo heavy and furious that while we were attaching the buoy to the anchor, ſo as to cut the cable at the hawſe-hole, it did not give us time, but broke ſtraightway of itſelf. The wind and the ſea caſt us as the wave receded upon a little rock, and we awaited only the moment

[183] For 1605, read 1606.

[184] Florida, as then known, extended from the peninſula indefinitely to the north.

[185] Seal Cove, which makes up between the ſouth-weſt end of the Grand Manan and Wood Iſland, the latter being ſouth of Manan, and is plainly the iſland referred to in the text. This cove is open to the ſouth wind and the ſea in a ſtorm. Wood Iſland has a ſandy ſhore with occaſional rocks.

moment to ſee our barque break up, and to ſave ourſelves, if poſſible, upon its fragments. In theſe deſperate ſtraits, after we had received ſeveral waves, there came one ſo large and fortunate for us that it carried us over the rock, and threw us on to a little ſandy beach, which inſured us for this time from ſhipwreck.

The barque being on ſhore, we began at once to unload what there was in her, in order to aſcertain where the damage was, which was not ſo great as we expected. She was ſpeedily repaired by the diligence of Champdoré, her maſter. Having been put in order, ſhe was reloaded; and we waited for fair weather and until the fury of the ſea ſhould abate, which was not until the end of four days, namely, the 21ſt of March, when we ſet out from this miſerable place, and proceeded to Port aux Coquilles,[186] ſeven or eight leagues diſtant. The latter is at the mouth of the river St. Croix, where there was a large quantity of ſnow. We ſtayed there until the 29th of the month, in conſequence of the fogs and contrary winds, which are uſual at this ſeaſon, when Pont Gravé determined to put back to Port Royal, to ſee in what condition our companions were, whom we had leſt there ſick. Having arrived there, Pont Gravé was attacked with illneſs, which delayed us until the 8th of April.

On the 9th of the month he embarked, although ſtill indiſpoſed, from his deſire to ſee the coaſt of Florida, and in the belief that a change of air would reſtore his health. The ſame

[186] *Port aux Coquilles*, the harbor of ſhells. This port was near the northeaſtern extremity of Campobello Iſland, and was probably Head Harbor, which affords a good harbor of refuge. — *Vide* Champlain's Map of 1612, reference 9.

ſame day we anchored and paſſed the night at the mouth of the harbor, two leagues diſtant from our ſettlement.

The next morning before day, Champdoré came to aſk Pont Gravé if he wiſhed to have the anchor raiſed, who replied in the affirmative, if he deemed the weather favorable for ſetting out. Upon this, Champdoré had the anchor raiſed at once, and the ſail ſpread to the wind, which was north-north-eaſt, according to his report. The weather was thick and rainy, and the air full of fog, with indications of foul rather than fair weather.

While going out of the mouth of the harbor,[187] we were ſuddenly carried by the tide out of the paſſage, and, before perceiving them, were driven upon the rocks on the eaſt-north-eaſt coaſt.[188] Pont Gravé and I, who were aſleep, were awaked by hearing the ſailors ſhouting and exclaiming, "We are loſt!" which brought me quickly to my feet, to ſee what was the matter. Pont Gravé was ſtill ill, which prevented him from riſing as quickly as he wiſhed. I was ſcarcely on deck, when the barque was thrown upon the coaſt; and the wind, which was north, drove us upon a point. We unfurled the mainſail, turned it to the wind, and hauled it up as high as we could, that it might drive us up as far as poſſible on the rocks, for fear that the reflux of the ſea, which fortunately was falling, would draw us in, when it would have been impoſſible to ſave ourſelves. At the firſt blow of our boat upon the rocks, the rudder broke, a part of the keel and three or

[187] By "harbor" is here meant Annapolis Bay.

This wreck of the barque took place on the Granville ſide of Digby Strait, where the tides riſe from twenty-three to twenty-ſeven feet.

[188] North-eaſt. The text has *noroueſt*, clearly a miſprint for *nordeſt*.

or four planks were ſmaſhed, and ſome ribs ſtove in, which frightened us, for our barque filled immediately; and all that we could do was to wait until the ſea fell, ſo that we might get aſhore. For, otherwiſe, we were in danger of our lives, in conſequence of the ſwell, which was very high and furious about us. The ſea having fallen, we went on ſhore amid the ſtorm, when the barque was ſpeedily unloaded, and we ſaved a large portion of the proviſions in her, with the help of the ſavage, Captain Secondon and his companions, who came to us with their canoes, to carry to our habitation what we had ſaved from our barque, which, all ſhattered as ſhe was, went to pieces at the return of the tide. But we, moſt happy at having ſaved our lives, returned to our ſettlement with our poor ſavages, who ſtayed there a large part of the winter; and we praiſed God for having reſcued us from this ſhipwreck, from which we had not expected to eſcape ſo eaſily.

The loſs of our barque cauſed us great regret, ſince we found ourſelves, through want of a veſſel, deprived of the proſpect of being able to accompliſh the voyage we had undertaken. And we were unable to build another; for time was preſſing, and although there was another barque on the ſtocks, yet it would have required too long to get it ready, and we could ſcarcely have made uſe of it before the return from France of the veſſels we were daily expecting.

This was a great misfortune, and owing to the lack of foreſight on the part of the maſter, who was obſtinate, but little acquainted with ſeamanſhip, and truſting only his own head. He was a good carpenter, ſkilful in building veſſels, and careful

ful in proviſioning them with all neceſſaries, but in no wiſe adapted to ſailing them.

Pont Gravé, having arrived at the ſettlement, received the evidence againſt Champdoré, who was accuſed of having run the barque on ſhore with evil intent. Upon ſuch information, he was impriſoned and handcuffed, with the intention of taking him to France and handing him over to Sieur de Monts, to be treated as juſtice might direct.

On the 15th of June, Pont Gravé, finding that the veſſels did not return from France, had the handcuffs taken off from Champdoré, that he might finiſh the barque which was on the ſtocks, which ſervice he diſcharged very well.

On the 16th of July, the time when we were to leave, in caſe the veſſels had not returned, as was provided in the commiſſion which Sieur de Monts had given to Pont Gravé, we ſet out from our ſettlement to go to Cape Breton or to Gaſpé in ſearch of means of returning to France, ſince we had received no intelligence from there.

Two of our men remained, of their own accord, to take care of the proviſions which were left at the ſettlement, to each of whom Pont Gravé promiſed fifty crowns in money, and fifty more which he agreed to eſtimate their pay at when he ſhould come to get them the following year.[189]

There was a captain of the ſavages named Mabretou,[190] who promiſed to take care of them, and that they ſhould be treated as kindly as his own children. We found him a friendly

[189] Theſe two men were M. La Taille and Miquelet, of whom Leſcarbot ſpeaks in terms of enthuſiaſtic praiſe for their patriotic courage in voluntarily riſking their lives for the good of New France. *Vide Hiſtoire Nouvelle France*, Paris, 1612, pp. 545, 546.

[190] *Mabretou*, by Leſcarbot written Membertou.

friendly ſavage all the time we were there, although he had the name of being the worſt and moſt traitorous man of his tribe.

CHAPTER XII.

DEPARTURE FROM PORT ROYAL TO RETURN TO FRANCE.—MEETING RALLEAU AT CAPE SABLE, WHICH CAUSED US TO TURN BACK.

ON the 17th of the month, in accordance with the reſolution we had formed, we ſet out from the mouth of Port Royal with two barques, one of eighteen tons, the other of ſeven or eight, with the view of purſuing the voyage to Cape Breton or Canſeau. We anchored in the ſtrait of Long Iſland,[191] where during the night our cable broke, and we came near being loſt, owing to the violent tides which ſtrike upon ſeveral rocky points in and about this place. But, through the diligent exertions of all, we were ſaved, and eſcaped once more.

On the 21ſt of the month there was a violent wind, which broke the irons of our rudder between Long Iſland and Cape Fourchu, and reduced us to ſuch extremities that we were at a loſs what to do. For the fury of the ſea did not permit us to land, ſince the breakers ran mountain high along the coaſt, ſo that we reſolved to periſh in the ſea rather than to land, hoping that the wind and tempeſt would abate, ſo that, with the wind aſtern, we might go aſhore on ſome ſandy beach.

[191] Petit Paſſage, leading into St. Mary's Bay.

beach. As each one thought by himſelf what might be done for our preſervation, a ſailor ſaid that a quantity of cordage attached to the ſtern of our barque, and dragging in the water, might ſerve in ſome meaſure to ſteer our veſſel. But this was of no avail; and we ſaw that, unleſs God ſhould aid us by other means, this would not preſerve us from ſhipwreck. As we were thinking what could be done for our ſafety, Champdoré, who had been again handcuffed, ſaid to ſome of us that, if Pont Gravé deſired it, he would find means to ſteer our barque. This we reported to Pont Gravé, who did not refuſe this offer, and the reſt of us ſtill leſs. He accordingly had his handcuffs taken off the ſecond time, and at once taking a rope, he cut it and faſtened the rudder with it in ſuch a ſkilful manner that it would ſteer the ſhip as well as ever. In this way, he made amends for the miſtakes he had made leading to the loſs of the previous barque, and was diſcharged from his accuſation through our entreaties to Pont Gravé who, although ſomewhat reluctantly, acceded to it.

The ſame day we anchored near La Baye Courante,[192] two leagues from Cape Fourchu, and there our barque was repaired.

On the 23d of July, we proceeded near to Cape Sable.

On the 24th of the month, at two o'clock in the afternoon, we perceived a ſhallop, near Cormorant Iſland, coming from Cape Sable. Some thought it was ſavages going away from Cape

[192] *La Baye Courante*, the bay at the mouth of Argyl or Abuptic River, ſometimes called Lobſter Bay. — *Vide Campbell's Yarmouth County, N. S.*, p. 13. The anchorage for the repair of the barque near this bay, two leagues from Cape Fourchu, was probably near Pinckney Point, or it may have been under the lee of one of the Tuſquet Iſlands.

Cape Breton or the Iſland of Canſeau. Others ſaid it might be ſhallops ſent from Canſeau to get news of us. Finally, as we approached nearer, we ſaw that they were Frenchmen, which delighted us greatly. When it had almoſt reached us, we recognized Ralleau, the Secretary of Sieur de Monts, which redoubled our joy. He informed us that Sieur de Monts had deſpatched a veſſel of a hundred and twenty tons, commanded by Sieur de Poutrincourt, who had come with fifty men to act as Lieutenant-General, and live in the country; that he had landed at Canſeau, whence the above-mentioned veſſel had gone out to ſea, in order, if poſſible, to find us, while he, meanwhile, was proceeding along the coaſt in a ſhallop, in order to meet us in caſe we ſhould have ſet out, ſuppoſing we had departed from Port Royal, as was in fact the caſe: in ſo doing, they acted very wiſely. All this intelligence cauſed us to turn back; and we arrived at Port Royal on the 25th of the month, where we found the above-mentioned veſſel and Sieur de Poutrincourt, and were greatly delighted to ſee realized what we had given up in deſpair.[193] He told us that his delay had been cauſed by an accident which happened to the ſhip in leaving the boom at

[193] Leſcarbot, who with De Poutrincourt was in this veſſel, the "Jonas," gives a very elaborate account of their arrival and reception at Port Royal. It ſeems that, at Canſeau, Poutrincourt, ſuppoſing that the colony at Port Royal, not receiving expected ſuccors, had poſſibly already embarked for France, as was in fact the caſe, had deſpatched a ſmall boat in charge of Ralleau to reconnoitre the coaſt, with the hope of meeting them, if they had already embarked. The "Jonas" paſſed them unobſerved, perhaps while they were repairing their barque at Baye Courante. As Ralleau did not join the "Jonas" till after their arrival at Port Royal, Poutrincourt did not hear of the departure of the colony till his arrival. Champlain's dates do not agree with thoſe of Leſcarbot, and the latter is probably correct. According to Leſcarbot, Poutrincourt arrived on the 27th, and Pont Gravé with Champlain on the 31ſt of July. *Vide His. Nou. France*, Paris, 1612, pp. 544, 547.

at Rochelle, where he had taken his departure, and that he had been hindered by bad weather on his voyage.[194]

The next day, Sieur de Poutrincourt proceeded to ſet forth his views as to what ſhould be done; and, in accordance with the opinion of all, he reſolved to ſtay at Port Royal this year, inaſmuch as no diſcovery had been made ſince the departure of Sieur de Monts, and the period of four months before winter was not long enough to ſearch out a ſite and conſtruct another ſettlement, eſpecially in a large veſſel, unlike a barque which draws little water, ſearches everywhere, and finds places to one's mind for effecting ſettlements. But he decided that, during this period, nothing more ſhould be done than to try to find ſome place better adapted for our abode.[195]

Thus deciding, Sieur de Poutrincourt deſpatched at once ſome laborers to work on the land in a ſpot which he deemed ſuitable, up the river, a league and a half from the ſettlement of Port Royal, and where we had thought of making our abode. Here he ordered wheat, rye, hemp, and ſeveral other kinds of ſeeds, to be ſown, in order to aſcertain how they would flouriſh.[196]

On

[194] Leſcarbot gives a graphic account of the accident which happened to their veſſel in the harbor of Rochelle, delaying them more than a month; and the bad weather and the bad ſeamanſhip of Captain Foulques, who commanded the "Jonas," which kept them at ſea more than two months and a half. — *Vide His. Nou. France*, Paris, 1612, p. 523, *et ſeq.*

[195] Before leaving France, Poutrincourt had received inſtructions from the patentee, De Monts, to ſeek for a good harbor and more genial climate for the colony farther ſouth than Mallebarre, as he was not ſatisfied either with St. Croix or Port Royal for a permanent abode. — *Vide Leſcarbot's His. Nou. France*, Paris, 1612, p. 552.

[196] By reference to Champlain's drawing of Port Royal, it will be ſeen that the place of this agricultural experiment was on the ſouthern ſide of Annapolis River, near the mouth of Allen River, and on the identical ſoil where the village of Annapolis now ſtands.

On the 22d of Auguſt, a ſmall barque was ſeen approaching our ſettlement. It was that of Des Antons, of St. Malo, who had come from Canſeau, where his veſſel was engaged in fiſhing, to inform us that there were ſome veſſels about Cape Breton engaged in the fur-trade; and that, if we would ſend our ſhip, we might capture them on the point of returning to France. It was determined to do ſo as ſoon as ſome ſupplies, which were in the ſhip, could be unloaded.[197]

This being done, Pont Gravé embarked, together with his companions, who had wintered with him at Port Royal, excepting Champdoré and Foulgeré de Vitré. I alſo ſtayed with De Poutrincourt, in order, with God's help, to complete the map of the coaſts and countries which I had commenced. Every thing being put in order in the ſettlement, Sieur de Poutrincourt ordered proviſions to be taken on board for our voyage along the coaſt of Florida.

On the 29th of Auguſt, we ſet out from Port Royal, as did also Pont Gravé and Des Antons, who were bound for Cape Breton and Canſeau, to ſeize the veſſels which were engaging in the fur-trade, as I have before ſtated. After getting out to ſea, we were obliged to put back on account of bad weather. But the large veſſel kept on her courſe, and we ſoon loſt ſight of her.

CHAPTER XIII.

[197] It appears that this fur-trader was one Boyer, of Rouen, who had been delivered from priſon at Rochelle by Poutrincourt's lenity, where he had been incarcerated probably for the ſame offence. They did not ſucceed in capturing him at Canſeau. —*Vide His. Nou. France*, par Leſcarbot, Paris, 1612, p. 553.

CHAPTER XIII.

SIEUR DE POUTRINCOURT SETS OUT FROM PORT ROYAL TO MAKE DISCOVERIES. —ALL THAT WAS SEEN, AND WHAT TOOK PLACE AS FAR AS MALLEBARRE.

ON the 5th of September, we ſet out again from Port Royal.

On the 7th, we reached the mouth of the river St. Croix, where we found a large number of ſavages, among others Secondon and Meſſamouët. We came near being loſt there on a rocky iſlet, on account of Champdoré's uſual obſtinacy.

The next day we proceeded in a ſhallop to the Iſland of St. Croix, where Sieur de Monts had wintered, to ſee if we could find any ſpikes of wheat and other ſeeds which we had planted there. We found ſome wheat which had fallen on the ground, and come up as finely as one could wiſh; alſo a large number of garden vegetables, which alſo had come up fair and large. It gave us great ſatisfaction to ſee that the ſoil there was good and fertile.

After viſiting the iſland, we returned to our barque, which was one of eighteen tons, on the way catching a large number of mackerel, which are abundant there at this ſeaſon. It was decided to continue the voyage along the coaſt, which was not a very well-conſidered concluſion, ſince we loſt much time in paſſing over again the diſcoveries made by Sieur de Monts as far as the harbor of Mallebarre. It would have been

been much better, in my opinion, to croſs from where we were directly to Mallebarre, the route being already known, and then uſe our time in exploring as far as the fortieth degree, or ſtill farther ſouth, reviſiting, upon our homeward voyage, the entire coaſt at pleaſure.

After this deciſion, we took with us Secondon and Meſſamouët, who went as far as Choüacoet in a ſhallop, where they wiſhed to make an alliance with the people of the country, by offering them ſome preſents.

On the 12th of September, we ſet out from the river St. Croix.

On the 21ſt, we arrived at Choüacoet, where we ſaw Onemechin, chief of the river, and Marchin, who had harveſted their corn. We ſaw at the Iſland of Bacchus[198] ſome grapes which were ripe and very good, and ſome others not yet ripe, as fine as thoſe in France; and I am ſure that, if they were cultivated, they would produce good wine.

In this place, Sieur de Poutrincourt ſecured a priſoner that Onemechin had, to whom Meſſamouët[199] made preſents of kettles,

[198] Richmond Iſland. — *Vide antea*, note 123. The ripe grapes which he ſaw were the Fox Grape, *Vitis labruſca*, which ripens in September. The fruit is of a dark purple color, tough and muſky. The Iſabella, common in our markets, is derived from it. It is not quite clear whether thoſe ſeen in an unripe ſtate were another ſpecies or not. If they were, they were the Froſt Grape, *Vitis cordifolia*, which are found in the northern parts of New England. The berry is ſmall, black or blue, having a bloom, highly acid, and ripens after froſts. This iſland, ſo prolific in grapes, became afterward a centre of commercial importance. On Joſſelyn's voyage of 1638, he ſays: "The Six and twentieth day, Capt. *Thomas Cammock* went aboard of a Barke of 300 Tuns, laden with Iſland Wine, and but 7 men in her, and never a Gun, bound for *Richmonds* Iſland, Set out by Mr. *Trelaney*, of *Plimouth*." — *Voyages*, 1675, Boſton, Veazie's ed., 1865, p. 12.

[199] Meſſamouët was a chief from the Port de la Hève, and was accompanied by Secondon, alſo a chief from the river St. John. They had come to Saco to diſpoſe of a quantity of goods which they had obtained from the French fur-traders. Meſſamouët made an addreſs

kettles, hatchets, knives, and other things. Onemechin reciprocated the ſame with Indian corn, ſquaſhes, and Brazilian beans; which was not very ſatisfactory to Meſſamouët, who went away very ill-diſpoſed towards them for not properly recognizing his preſents, and with the intention of making war upon them in a ſhort time. For theſe nations give only in exchange for ſomething in return, except to thoſe who have done them a ſpecial ſervice, as by aſſiſting them in their wars.

Continuing our courſe, we proceeded to the Iſland Cape,[200] where we encountered rather bad weather and fogs, and ſaw little proſpect of being able to ſpend the night under ſhelter, ſince the locality was not favorable for this. While we were thus in perplexity, it occurred to me that, while coaſting along with Sieur de Monts, I had noted on my map, at a diſtance of a league from here, a place which ſeemed ſuitable for veſſels, but which we did not enter, becauſe, when we paſſed it, the wind was favorable for continuing on our courſe. This place we had already paſſed, which led me to ſuggeſt to Sieur de Poutrincourt that we ſhould ſtand in for a point in ſight, where the place in queſtion was, which ſeemed to me favorable for paſſing the night. We proceeded to anchor at the mouth, and went in the next day.[201]

Sieur de Poutrincourt landed with eight or ten of our company. We ſaw ſome very fine grapes just ripe, Brazilian peas,

dreſs on the occaſion, in which he ſtated that he had been in France, and had been entertained at the houſe of Mons. de Grandmont, governor of Bayonne. — *Vide His. Nou. France*, par Leſcarbot, Paris, 1612, p. 559, *et ſeq.*

[200] Cape Anne.

[201] Glouceſter Bay, formerly called Cape Anne Harbor, which, as we ſhall ſee farther on, they named *Beauport*, the beautiful harbor.

peas,[202] pumpkins, ſquaſhes, and very good roots, which the ſavages cultivate, having a taſte ſimilar to that of chards.[203] They made us preſents of ſome of theſe, in exchange for little trifles which we gave them. They had already finiſhed their harveſt. We ſaw two hundred ſavages in this very pleaſant place; and there are here a large number[204] of very fine walnut-trees,[205] cypreſſes, ſaſſafras, oaks, aſhes, and beeches. The chief

[202] Brazilian peas. This ſhould undoubtedly read Brazilian beans. *Pois du Bréſil* is here uſed apparently by miſtake for *febues du Bréſil*. — *Vide antea*, note 127.

[203] Chards, a vegetable diſh, compoſed of the footſtocks and midrib of artichokes, cardoons, or white beets. The "very good roots," *des racines qui ſont bonnes*, were Jeruſalem Artichokes, *Helianthus tuberoſus*, indigenous to the northern part of this continent. The Italians had obtained it before Champlain's time, and named it *Giraſole*, their word for ſunflower, of which the artichoke is a ſpecies. This word, *giraſole*, has been ſingularly corrupted in England into *Jeruſalem;* hence Jeruſalem artichoke, now the common name of this plant. We preſume that there is no inſtance on record of its earlier cultivation in New England than at Nauſet in 1605, *vide antea*, p. 82, and here at Glouceſter in 1606.

[204] Under the word *noyers*, walnut-trees, Champlain may have comprehended the hickories, *Carya alba* and *porcina*, and perhaps the butternut, *Juglans cinerea*, all of which might have been ſeen at Glouceſter. It is clear from his deſcription that he ſaw at Saco the hickory, *Carya porcina*, commonly known as the pig-nut or broom hickory. He probably ſaw likewiſe the ſhag-bark, *Carya alba*, as both are found growing wild there even at the preſent day. — *Vide antea*, p. 67. Both the butternut and the hickories are excluſively of American origin; and there was no French name by which they could be more accurately deſignated. *Noyer* is applied in France to the tree which produces the nut known in our markets as the Engliſh walnut. Joſſelyn figures the hickory under the name of walnut. — *Vide New Eng. Rarities*, Tuckerman's ed., p. 97. See alſo *Wood's New Eng. Proſpect*, 1634, Prince Soc. ed., p. 18.

[205] The trees here mentioned are ſuch probably as appeared to Champlain eſpecially valuable for timber or other practical uſes.

The cypreſs, *cyprès*, has been already referred to in note 168. It is diſtinguiſhed for its durability, its power of reſiſting the uſual agencies of decay, and is widely uſed for poſts, and ſleepers on the track of railways, and to a limited extent for cabinet work, but leſs now than in earlier times. William Wood ſays of it: "This wood is more deſired for ornament than ſubſtance, being of color red and white, like Eugh, ſmelling as ſweete as Iuniper; it is commonly uſed for ſeeling of houſes, and making of Cheſts, boxes and ſtaves." — *Wood's New Eng. Proſpect*, 1634, Prince Soc. ed., p. 19.

The ſaſſafras, *Saſſafras officinale*, is indigenous to this continent, and has a ſpicy, aromatic flavor, eſpecially the bark and root. It was in great repute as a medicine

chief of this place is named Quiouhamenec, who came to ſee us with a neighbor of his, named Cohoüepech, whom we entertained ſumptuouſly. Onemechin, chief of Choüacoet, came alſo to ſee us, to whom we gave a coat, which he, however, did not keep a long time, but made a preſent of it to another, ſince he was uneaſy in it, and could not adapt himſelf to it. We ſaw alſo a ſavage here, who had ſo wounded himſelf in the foot, and loſt ſo much blood, that he fell down in a ſwoon. Many others ſurrounded him, and ſang ſome time before touching him. Afterwards, they made ſome motions with their feet and hands, ſhook his head and breathed upon him, when he came to himſelf. Our ſurgeon dreſſed his wounds, when he went off in good ſpirits.

The next day, as we were calking our ſhallop, Sieur de Poutrincourt in the woods noticed a number of ſavages who were going, with the intention of doing us ſome miſchief, to a little ſtream, where a neck connects with the main land, at which our party were doing their waſhing. As I was walking along this neck, theſe ſavages noticed me; and, in order

medicine for a long time after the diſcovery of this country. Cargoes of it were often taken home by the early voyagers for the European markets; and it is ſaid to have ſold as high as fifty livres per pound. Dr. Jacob Bigelow ſays a work entitled "Saſſafraſologia" was written to celebrate its virtues; but its properties are only thoſe of warm aromatics. Joſſelyn deſcribes it, and adds that it does not "grow beyond Black Point eaſtward," which is a few miles north-eaſt of Old Orchard Beach, near Saco, in Maine. It is met with now infrequently in New England: ſeveral ſpecimens, however, may be ſeen in the Granary Burial Ground in Boſton.

Oaks, *cheſnes*, of which ſeveral of the larger ſpecies may have been ſeen: as, the white oak, *Quercus alba;* black oak, *Quercus tinctoria;* ſcarlet oak, *Quercus coccinea;* and red oak, *Quercus rubra.*

Aſh-trees, *freſnes*, probably the white aſh, *Fraxinus Americana*, and not unlikely the black aſh, *Fraxinus ſambucifolia*, both valuable as timber.

Beech-trees, *heſtres*, of which there is but a ſingle ſpecies, *Fagus ferruginea*, the American beech, a handſome tree, of ſymmetrical growth, and clean, ſmooth, aſh-gray bark: the nut, of triangular ſhape, is ſweet and palatable. The wood is brittle, and uſed only for a few purpoſes.

12
10
9

dance again. This they did in a circle, putting all their arms in the middle. But they had hardly commenced, when they obſerved Sieur de Poutrincourt in the wood with eight muſketeers, which frightened them. Yet they did not ſtop until they had finiſhed their dance, when they withdrew in all directions, fearing leſt ſome unpleaſant turn might be ſerved them. We ſaid nothing to them, however, and ſhowed them only demonſtrations of gladneſs. Then we returned to launch our ſhallop, and take our departure. They entreated us to wait a day, ſaying that more than two thouſand of them would come to ſee us. But, unable to loſe any time, we were unwilling to ſtay here longer. I am of opinion that their object was to ſurpriſe us. Some of the land was already cleared up, and they were conſtantly making clearings. Their mode of doing it is as follows: after cutting down the trees at the diſtance of three feet from the ground, they burn the branches upon the trunk, and then plant their corn between theſe ſtumps, in courſe of time tearing up alſo the roots. There are likewiſe fine meadows here, capable of ſupporting a large number of cattle. This harbor is very fine, containing water enough for veſſels, and affording a ſhelter from the weather behind the iſlands. It is in latitude 43°, and we gave it the name of Le Beauport.[206]

The laſt day of September we ſet out from Beauport, and, paſſing Cap St. Louis, ſtood on our courſe all night for Cap Blanc.[207] In the morning, an hour before daylight, we

[206] Le Beauport. The latitude of Ten-Pound Iſland, near where the French barque was anchored in the Harbor of Glouceſter, is 42° 36′ 5″.

[207] The reader may be reminded that Cap St. Louis is Brant Point; Cap Blanc is Cape Cod; and Baye Blanche is Cape Cod Bay.

we found ourſelves to the leeward of Cap Blanc, in Baye Blanche, with eight feet of water, and at a diſtance of a league from the ſhore. Here we anchored, in order not to approach too near before daylight, and to ſee how the tide was. Meanwhile, we ſent our ſhallop to make ſoundings. Only eight feet of water were found, ſo that it was neceſſary to determine before daylight what we would do. The water ſank as low as five feet, and our barque ſometimes touched on the ſand, yet without any injury, for the water was calm, and we had not leſs than three feet of water under us. Then the tide began to riſe, which gave us encouragement.

When it was day, we ſaw a very low, ſandy ſhore, off which we were, and more to the leeward. A ſhallop was ſent to make ſoundings in the direction of land ſomewhat high, where we thought there would be deep water; and, in fact, we found ſeven fathoms. Here we anchored, and at once got ready the ſhallop, with nine or ten men to land and examine a place where we thought there was a good harbor to ſhelter ourſelves in, if the wind ſhould increaſe. An examination having been made, we entered in two, three, and four fathoms of water. When we were inſide, we found five and ſix. There were many very good oyſters here, which we had not ſeen before, and we named the place Port aux Huiſtres.[208] It is in latitude

[208] *Le Port aux Huiſtres*, Oyſter Harbor. The reader will obſerve, by looking back a few ſentences in the narrative, that the French coaſters, after leaving Cap St. Louis, that is, Brant Point, had aimed to double Cape Cod, and had directed their courſe, as they ſuppoſed, to accompliſh this purpoſe. Owing, however, to the ſtrength of the wind, or the darkneſs of the night, or the inattention of their pilot, or all theſe together, they had paſſed to the leeward of the point aimed at, and before morning found themſelves near a harbor, which they ſubſequently entered, in Cape Cod Bay. It is plain that this port, which they named Oyſter Harbor, was either that of Wellfleet or Barnſtable. The former, it will be remembered, Champlain, with De Monts, entered

tude 42°. Three canoes of ſavages came out to us. On this day, the wind coming round in our favor, we weighed anchor to go to Cap Blanc, diſtant from here five leagues north a quarter north-eaſt, and we doubled the cape.

On the next day, the 2d of October, we arrived off Malle-barre,[209] where we ſtayed ſome time on account of the bad weather. During this time, Sieur de Poutrincourt, with the ſhallop, accompanied by twelve or fifteen men, viſited the harbor, where ſome hundred and fifty ſavages, ſinging and dancing

entered the preceding year, 1605, and named it, or the river that flows into it, St. Suzanne du Cap Blanc. — *Vide antea*, note 166. It is obvious that Champlain could not have entered this harbor the ſecond time without recognizing it; and, if he had done ſo, he would not have given to it a name entirely different from that which he had given it the year before. He was too careful an obſerver to fall into ſuch an extraordinary miſtake. We may conclude, therefore, that the port in queſtion was not Wellfleet, but Barnſtable. This concluſion is ſuſtained by the conditions mentioned in the text. They entered, on a flood-tide, in twelve, eighteen, and twenty-four feet of water, and found thirty or thirty-ſix when they had paſſed into the harbor. It could hardly be expected that any harbor among the ſhifting ſands of Cape Cod would remain preciſely the ſame, as to depth of water, after the lapſe of two hundred and fifty years. Nevertheleſs, the diſcrepancy is ſo ſlight in this caſe, that it would ſeem to be accidental, rather than to ariſe from the ſolidity or fixedneſs of the harbor-bed. The channel of Barnſtable Harbor, according to the Coaſt Survey Charts, varies in depth at low tide, for two miles outſide of Sandy Neck Point, from ſeven to ten feet for the firſt mile, and for the next mile from ten feet to thirty-two on reaching Beach Point, which may be conſidered the entrance of the bay. On paſſing the Point, we have thirty-ſix and a half feet, and for a mile inward the depth varies from twelve to twenty feet. Add a few feet for the riſe of the tide on which they entered, and the depth of the water in 1606 could not have been very different from that of to-day. The "low ſandy coaſt" which they ſaw is well repreſented by Spring Hill Beach and Sandy Neck; the "land ſomewhat high," by the range of hills in the rear of Barnſtable Harbor. The diſtance from the mouth of the harbor to Wood End light, the neareſt point on Cape Cod, does not vary more than a league, and its direction is about that mentioned by Champlain. The difference in latitude is not greater than uſual. It is never ſufficiently exact for the identification of any locality. The ſubſtantial agreement, in ſo many particulars with the narrative of the author, renders it quite clear that the *Port aux Huiſtres* was Barnſtable Harbor. They entered it on the morning of the 1ſt of October, and appear to have left on the ſame day. Sandy Neck light, at the entrance of the harbor, is in latitude 41° 43′ 19″.

[209] Nauſet Harbor.

dancing according to their cuſtom, appeared before him. After ſeeing this place, we returned to our veſſel, and, the wind coming favorable, ſailed along the coaſt towards the ſouth.

CHAPTER XIV.

CONTINUATION OF THE ABOVE DISCOVERIES, AND WHAT WAS OBSERVED OF PARTICULAR IMPORTANCE.

HEN we were ſome ſix leagues from Mallebarre, we anchored near the coaſt, the wind not being fair, along which we obſerved columns of ſmoke made by the ſavages, which led us to determine to go to them, for which purpoſe the ſhallop was made ready. But when near the coaſt, which is ſandy, we could not land, for the ſwell was too great. Seeing this, the ſavages launched a canoe, and came out to us, eight or nine of them, ſinging and making ſigns of their joy at ſeeing us, and they indicated to us that lower down there was a harbor where we could put our barque in a place of ſecurity. Unable to land, the ſhallop came back to the barque; and the ſavages, whom we had treated civilly, returned to the ſhore.

On the next day, the wind being favorable, we continued our courſe to the north [210] five leagues, and hardly had we gone this diſtance, when we found three and four fathoms of water at a diſtance of a league and a half from the ſhore. On going a little farther, the depth ſuddenly diminiſhed to a fathom and a half and two fathoms, which alarmed us, ſince we

[210] Clearly a miſtake. Champlain here ſays they "continued their courſe north," whereas, the whole context ſhows that they muſt have gone ſouth.

we ſaw the ſea breaking all around, but no paſſage by which we could retrace our courſe, for the wind was directly contrary.

Accordingly being ſhut in among the breakers and ſand-banks, we had to go at hap-hazard where there ſeemed to be the moſt water for our barque, which was at moſt only four feet: we continued among theſe breakers until we found as much as four feet and a half. Finally, we ſucceeded, by the grace of God, in going over a ſandy point running out nearly three leagues ſeaward to the ſouth-ſouth-eaſt, and a very dangerous place.[211] Doubling this cape, which we named Cap Batturier,[212] which is twelve or thirteen leagues from Malle-barre,[213] we anchored in two and a half fathoms of water, ſince we ſaw ourſelves ſurrounded on all ſides by breakers and ſhoals, except in ſome places where the ſea was breaking but

[211] "The ſandy point running out nearly three leagues" was evidently the iſland of Monomoy, or its repreſentative, which at that time may have been only a continuation of the main land. Champlain does not delineate on his map an iſland, but a ſand-bank nearly in the ſhape of an iſoſceles triangle, which extends far to the ſouth-eaſt. Very great changes have undoubtedly taken place on this part of the coaſt ſince the viſit of Champlain. The ſand-bar figured by him has apparently been ſwept from the ſouth-eaſt round to the ſouth-weſt, and is perhaps not very much changed in its general features except as to its poſition. "We know from our ſtudies of ſuch ſhoals," ſays Prof. Mitchell, Chief of Phyſical Hydrography, U. S. Coaſt Survey, "that the relative order of banks and beaches remains about the ſame, however the ſyſtem as a whole may change its location." — *Maſs. Harbor Commiſſioners' Report*, 1873, p. 99.

[212] *Batturier.* This word is an adjective, formed with the proper termination from the noun, *batture*, which means a bank upon which the ſea beats, reef or ſand-bank. *Cap Batturier* may therefore be rendered ſand-bank cape, or the cape of the ſand-banks. *Batturier* does not appear in the dictionaries, and was doubtleſs coined by Champlain himſelf, as he makes, farther on, the adjective *truitière*, in the expreſſion *la rivière truitière*, from the noun, *truite*.

[213] The diſtances here given appear to be greatly overſtated. From Nauſet to the ſouthern point of Monomoy, as it is to-day, the diſtance is not more than ſix leagues. But, as the ſea was rough, and they were apparently much delayed, the diſtance might naturally enough be overeſtimated.

but little. The ſhallop was ſent to find a channel, in order to go to a place, which we concluded to be that which the ſavages had indicated. We alſo thought there was a river there, where we could lie in ſecurity.

When our ſhallop arrived there, our party landed and examined the place, and, returning with a ſavage whom they brought off, they told us that we could enter at full tide, which was reſolved upon. We immediately weighed anchor, and, under the guidance of the ſavage who piloted us, proceeded to anchor at a roadſtead before the harbor, in ſix fathoms of water and a good bottom;[214] for we could not enter, as the night overtook us.

On the next day, men were ſent to ſet ſtakes at the end of a ſand-bank[215] at the mouth of the harbor, when, the tide riſing, we entered in two fathoms of water. When we had arrived, we praiſed God for being in a place of ſafety. Our rudder had broken, which we had mended with ropes; but we were afraid that, amid theſe ſhallows and ſtrong tides, it would break anew, and we ſhould be loſt. Within this harbor[216] there is only a fathom of water, and two at full tide. On the eaſt, there is a bay extending back on the north ſome three leagues,[217] in which there is an iſland and two other

[214] The anchorage was in Chatham Roads, or Old Stage Harbor.

[215] Harding's Beach Point.

[216] They were now in Stage Harbor, in Chatham, to which Champlain, farther on, gives the name of *Port Fortuné*.

[217] This is the narrow bay that ſtretches from Morris Iſland to the north, parallel with the ſea, ſeparated from it only by a ſand-bank, and now reaching beyond Chatham into the town of Orleans. By comparing Champlain's map of Port Fortuné with modern charts, it will be ſeen that the "bay extending back on the north ſome three leagues" terminated, in 1606, a little below Chatham Old Harbor. The iſland on Champlain's map marked G. was a little above the harbor, but has been entirely ſwept away, together with the neck north of it, repreſented on Champlain's map as covered with trees. The bay now extends,

other little bays which adorn the landſcape, where there is a conſiderable quantity of land cleared up, and many little hills, where they cultivate corn and the various grains on which they live. There are, alſo, very fine vines, many walnut-trees, oaks, cypreſſes, but only a few pines.[218] All the inhabitants of this place are very fond of agriculture, and provide themſelves with Indian corn for the winter, which they ſtore in the following manner: —

They make trenches in the ſand on the ſlope of the hills, ſome five to ſix feet deep, more or leſs. Putting their corn and other grains into large graſs ſacks, they throw them into theſe trenches, and cover them with ſand three or four feet above the ſurface of the earth, taking it out as their needs require. In this way, it is preſerved as well as it would be poſſible to do in our granaries.[219]

We

tends, as we have ſtated above, into the town of Orleans. The iſland G, known in modern times as Ram Iſland, diſappeared in 1851, although it ſtill continued to figure on Walling's map of 1858. The two other little bays mentioned in the text ſcarcely appear on Champlain's map; and he may have inadvertently included in this bay the two that are farther north, viz. Crow's Pond and Pleaſant Bay, although they do not fall within the limits of his map.

[218] *Vide antea*, notes 168, 204, 205.

[219] Indian corn, *Zea mays*, is a plant of American origin. Columbus ſaw it among the natives of the Weſt Indies, "a ſort of grain they call *Maiz*, which was well taſted, bak'd, or dry'd and made into flour." — *Vide Hiſtory of the Life and Actions of Chris. Columbus by his Son Ferdinand Columbus*, *Churchill's Voyages*, Vol. II. p. 510.

It is now cultivated more or leſs extenſively in nearly every part of the world where the climate is ſuitable. Champlain is the firſt who has left a record of the method of its cultivation in New England, *vide antea*, p. 64, and of its preſervation through the winter. The Pilgrims, in 1620, found it depoſited by the Indians in the ground after the manner deſcribed in the text. Bradford ſays they found "heaps of ſand newly padled with their hands, which they, digging up, found in them diverce faire Indean baſkets filled with corne, and ſome in eares, faire and good, of diverce collours, which ſeemed to them a very goodly ſight, haveing never ſeen any ſuch before." — *His. Plym. Plantation*, p. 82. Squanto taught the Engliſh how to "ſet it, and after how to dreſs and tend it." — *Idem*, p. 100.

"The women," ſays Roger Williams, "ſet or plant, weede, and hill, and gather and barne all the corne and Fruites of the

We ſaw in this place ſome five to ſix hundred ſavages, all naked

---

CHAMPLAIN'S EXPLANATION OF THE ACCOMPANYING MAP.

PORT FORTUNÉ.

The figures indicate fathoms of water.

A. Pond of ſalt water.[1] *B*. Cabins of the ſavages and the lands they cultivate. *C*. Meadows where there are two little brooks. *C*. Meadows on the iſland, that are covered at every tide.[2] *D*. Small mountain ranges on the iſland, that are covered with trees, vines, and plum-trees.[3] *E*. Pond of freſh water, where there is plenty of game.[4] *F*. A kind of meadow on the iſland.[5] *G*. An iſland covered with wood in a great arm of the ſea.[6] *H*. A ſort of pond of ſalt water, where there are many ſhell-fiſh, and, among others, quantities of oyſters.[7] *I*. Sandy downs on a narrow tongue of land. *L*. Arm of the ſea. *M*. Roadſtead before the harbor where we anchored.[8] *N*. Entrance to the harbor. *O*. The harbor and place where our barque was. *P*. The croſs we planted. *Q*. Little brook. *R*. Mountain which is ſeen at a great diſtance.[9] *S*. Sea-ſhore. *T*. Little river. *V*. Way we went in their country among their dwellings: it is indicated by ſmall dots.[10] *X*. Banks and ſhoals. *Y*. Small mountain ſeen in the interior.[11] *Z*. Small brooks. 9. Spot near the croſs where the ſavages killed our men.[12]

NOTES. [1] This is now called Oyſter Pond. [2] The letter *C* appears twice in the index, but both are wanting on the map. The former ſeems to point to the meadows on the upper left-hand corner: the other ſhould probably take the place of the *O* on the weſtern part of the iſland above *F*. [3] This range of hills is a marked feature of the iſland. [4] This pond is ſtill diſtinguiſhed for its game, and is leaſed by gentlemen in Boſton and held as a preſerve. [5] This is known as Morris Iſland; but the ſtrait on the north of it has been filled up, and the iſland is now a part of the main land. [6] This iſland has been entirely obliterated, and the neck on the north has likewiſe been ſwept away, and the bay now extends ſeveral leagues farther north. The deſtruction of the iſland was completed in 1851, in the gale that ſwept away Minot's Light. In 1847, it had an area of thirteen acres and an elevation of twenty feet.—*Vide Harbor Com. Report*, 1873. [7] This is now called the Mill Pond. [8] Chatham Roads, or Old Stage Harbor. [9] A moderate elevation, by no means a mountain in our ſenſe of the word. [10] The circuit here indicated is about four or five miles. Another path is indicated in the ſame manner on the extreme northern end of the map, which ſhows that their excurſions had been extenſive. [11] This is now called the Great Chatham Hill, and is a conſpicuous landmark. [12] This is a creek up which the tide ſets. The other brook figured on the map a little ſouth of the croſs has been artificially filled up, but the marſhes which it drained are ſtill to be ſeen. Theſe landmarks enable us to fix upon the locality of the croſs within a few feet.

---

the field," and of drying the corn, he adds, "which they doe carefully upon heapes and Mats many dayes, before they barne it up, covering it up with Mats

naked except their ſexual parts, which they cover with a ſmall piece of doe or ſeal-ſkin. The women are alſo naked, and, like the men, cover theirs with ſkins or leaves. They wear their hair carefully combed and twiſted in various ways, both men and women, after the manner of the ſavages of Choüacoet.[220] Their bodies are well-proportioned, and their ſkin olive-colored. They adorn themſelves with feathers, beads of ſhell, and other gewgaws, which they arrange very neatly

Mats at night, and opening when the Sun is hot."

The following are teſtimonies as to the uſe made by the natives of the Indian corn as food: —

"They brought with them in a thing like a Bow-caſe, which the principall of them had about his waſt, a little of their Corne powdered to Powder, which put to a little water they eate." — *Mourt's Relation*, London, 1622, Dexter's ed., p. 88.

"Giving vs a kinde of bread called by them *Maizium*." — *Idem*, p. 101.

"They ſeldome or never make bread of their *Indian* corne, but ſeeth it whole like beanes, eating three or four cornes with a mouthfull of fiſh or fleſh, ſometimes eating meate firſt and cornes after, filling chinckes with their broth." — *Wood's New Eng. Proſpect*, London, 1634, Prince Society's ed., pp. 75, 76.

"Nōkekich. *Parch'd meal*, which is a readie very wholeſome food, which they eate with a little water hot or cold: . . . With a *ſpoonfull* of this *meale* and a ſpoonfull of water from the *Brooke*, have I made many a good dinner and ſupper." — *Roger Williams's Key*, London, 1643, Trumbull's ed., pp. 39, 40.

"Their food is generally boiled maize, or Indian corn, mixed with kidney beans or ſometimes without. . . . Alſo they mix with the ſaid pottage ſeveral ſorts of roots, as Jeruſalem artichokes, and ground nuts, and other roots, and pompions, and ſquaſhes, and alſo ſeveral ſorts of nuts or maſts, as oak-acorns, cheſnuts, walnuts: Theſe huſked and dried, and powdered, they thicken their pottage therewith." — *Hiſtorical Collections of the Indians*, by Daniel Gookin, 1674, Boſton, 1792, p. 10.

[220] The character of the Indian dreſs, as here deſcribed, does not differ widely from that of a later period. — *Vide Mourt's Relation*, 1622, Dexter's ed., p. 135; *Roger Williams's Key*, 1643, Trumbull's ed., p. 143, *et ſeq.*; *Hiſtory of New England*, by Edward Johnſon, 1654, Poole's ed., pp. 224, 225.

Champlain's obſervations were made in the autumn before the approach of the winter froſts.

Thomas Morton, writing in 1632, ſays that the mantle which the women "uſe to cover their nakedneſſe with is much longer then that which the men uſe; for as the men haue one Deeres ſkinn, the women haue two ſoed together at the full length, and it is ſo lardge that it trailes after them, like a great Ladies trane, and in time," he ſportively adds, "I thinke they may haue their Pages to beare them up." — *New Eng. Canaan*, 1632, in Force's Tracts, Vol. II. p. 23.

neatly in embroidery work. As weapons, they have bows, arrows, and clubs. They are not ſo much great hunters as good fiſhermen and tillers of the land.

In regard to their police, government, and belief, we have been unable to form a judgment; but I ſuppoſe that they are not different in this reſpect from our ſavages, the Souriquois and Canadians, who worſhip neither the moon nor the ſun, nor any thing elſe, and pray no more than the beaſts.[221] There are, however, among them ſome perſons who, as they ſay, are in concert with the devil, in whom they have great faith. They tell them all that is to happen to them, but in ſo doing lie for the moſt part. Sometimes they ſucceed in hitting the mark very well, and tell them things ſimilar to thoſe which actually happen to them. For this reaſon, they have faith in them, as if they were prophets; while they are only impoſtors who delude them, as the Egyptians and Bohemians do the ſimple villagers. They have chiefs, whom they obey in matters of war, but not otherwiſe, and who engage in labor, and hold no higher rank than their companions. Each one has only ſo much land as he needs for his ſupport.

Their dwellings are ſeparate from each other, according to the land which each one occupies. They are large, of a circular ſhape, and covered with thatch made of graſſes or the huſks of Indian corn.[222] They are furniſhed only with a bed or

[221] This concluſion harmonizes with the opinion of Thomas Morton, who ſays that the natives of New England are "*ſine fide, ſine lege, et ſine rege*," and that they "have no worſhip nor religion at all." — *New Eng. Canaan*, 1632, in Force's Tracts, Vol. II. p. 21. Winſlow was at firſt of the ſame opinion, but afterward ſaw cauſe for changing his mind. — *Vide Winſlow's Relation*, 1624, in Young's Chronicles, p. 355. See alſo *Roger Williams's Key*, Trumbull's ed., p. 159.

[222] "Their houſes, or wigwams," ſays Gookin,

or two, raiſed a foot from the ground, made of a number of little pieces of wood preſſed againſt each other, on which they arrange a reed mat, after the Spaniſh ſtyle, which is a kind of matting two or three fingers thick: on theſe they ſleep.[223] They have a great many fleas in ſummer, even in the fields. One day as we went out walking, we were beſet by ſo many of them that we were obliged to change our clothes.

All the harbors, bays, and coaſts from Choüacoet are filled with every variety of fiſh, like thoſe which we have before our habitation, and in ſuch abundance that I can confidently aſſert that there was not a day or night when we did not ſee and hear paſs by our barque more than a thouſand porpoiſes, which were chaſing the ſmaller fry. There are alſo many ſhell-fiſh of various ſorts, principally oyſters. Game birds are very plenty.

It

Gookin, "are built with ſmall poles fixed in the ground, bent and faſtened together with barks of trees, oval or arborwiſe on the top. The beſt ſort of their houſes are covered very neatly, tight, and warm with the bark of trees, ſtripped from their bodies at ſuch ſeaſons when the ſap is up; and made into great flakes with preſſures of weighty timbers, when they are green; and ſo becoming dry, they will retain a form ſuitable for the uſe they prepare them for. The meaner ſort of wigwams are covered with mats they make of a kind of bulruſh, which are alſo indifferent tight and warm, but not ſo good as the former." — *Vide Hiſtorical Collections*, 1674, Boſton, 1792, p. 9.

[223] The conſtruction of the Indian couch, or bed, at a much later period may be ſeen by the following excerpts: "So we deſired to goe to reſt: he layd vs on the bed with himſelfe and his wife, they at one end and we at the other, it being only plancks layd a foot from the ground, and a thin mat upon them." — *Mourt's Relation*, London, 1622, Dexter's ed., pp. 107, 108. "In their wigwams, they make a kind of couch or mattreſſes, firm and ſtrong, raiſed about a foot high from the earth; firſt covered with boards that they ſplit out of trees; and upon the boards they ſpread mats generally, and ſometimes bear ſkins and deer ſkins. Theſe are large enough for three or four perſons to lodge upon: and one may either draw nearer or keep at a more diſtance from the heat of the fire, as they pleaſe; for their mattreſſes are ſix or eight feet broad." — *Gookin's Hiſtorical Collections*, 1674, Boſton, 1792, p. 10.

It would be an excellent place to erect buildings and lay the foundations of a State, if the harbor were ſomewhat deeper and the entrance ſafer. Before leaving the harbor, the rudder was repaired; and we had ſome bread made from flour, which we had brought for our ſubſiſtence, in caſe our biſcuit ſhould give out. Meanwhile, we ſent the ſhallop with five or ſix men and a ſavage to ſee whether a paſſage might be found more favorable for our departure than that by which we had entered.

After they had gone five or ſix leagues and were near the land, the ſavage made his eſcape,[224] ſince he was afraid of being taken to other ſavages farther ſouth, the enemies of his tribe, as he gave thoſe to underſtand who were in the ſhallop. The latter, upon their return, reported that, as far as they had advanced, there were at leaſt three fathoms of water, and that farther on there were neither ſhallows nor reefs.

We accordingly made haſte to repair our barque, and make a ſupply of bread for fifteen days. Meanwhile, Sieur de Poutrincourt, accompanied by ten or twelve arquebuſiers, viſited all the neighboring country, which is very fine, as I have ſaid before, and where we ſaw here and there a large number of little houſes.

Some eight or nine days after, while Sieur de Poutrincourt was walking out, as he had previouſly done,[225] we obſerved the ſavages taking down their cabins and ſending their women, children, proviſions, and other neceſſaries of life into the woods.

[224] This exploration appears to have extended about as far as Point Gammon, where, being "near the land," their Indian guide left them, as ſtated in the text.

[225] On the map of Port Fortuné, or Chatham, the courſe of one of theſe excurſions is marked by a dotted line, to which the reader is referred. — *Vide* notes on the map of Port Fortuné.

woods. This made us ſuſpect ſome evil intention, and that they purpoſed to attack thoſe of our company who were working on ſhore, where they ſtayed at night in order to guard that which could not be embarked at evening except with much trouble. This proved to be true; for they determined among themſelves, after all their effects had been put in a place of ſecurity, to come and ſurpriſe thoſe on land, taking advantage of them as much as poſſible, and to carry off all they had. But, if by chance they ſhould find them on their guard, they reſolved to come with ſigns of friendſhip, as they were wont to do, leaving behind their bows and arrows.

Now, in view of what Sieur de Poutrincourt had ſeen, and the order which it had been told him they obſerved when they wiſhed to play ſome bad trick, when we paſſed by ſome cabins, where there was a large number of women, we gave them ſome bracelets and rings to keep them quiet and free from fear, and to moſt of the old and diſtinguiſhed men hatchets, knives, and other things which they deſired. This pleaſed them greatly, and they repaid it all in dances, gambols, and harangues, which we did not underſtand at all. We went wherever we choſe without their having the aſſurance to ſay any thing to us. It pleaſed us greatly to ſee them ſhow themſelves ſo ſimple in appearance.

We returned very quietly to our barque, accompanied by ſome of the ſavages. On the way, we met ſeveral ſmall troops of them, who gradually gathered together with their arms, and were greatly aſtoniſhed to ſee us so far in the interior, and did not ſuppoſe that we had juſt made a circuit of nearly four or five leagues about their territory. Paſſing near us, they trembled with fear, leſt harm ſhould be done them,

men were, whom they found aſleep, except one, who was near the fire. When they ſaw them in this condition, they came, to the number of four hundred, ſoftly over a little hill, and ſent them ſuch a volley of arrows that to riſe up was death. Fleeing the beſt they could towards our barque, ſhouting, "Help! they are killing us!" a part fell dead in the water; the others were all pierced with arrows, and one died in conſequence a ſhort time after. The ſavages made a deſperate noiſe with roarings, which it was terrible to hear.

Upon the occurrence of this noiſe and that of our men, the ſentinel, on our veſſel, exclaimed, "To arms! They are killing our men!" Conſequently, each one immediately ſeized his arms; and we embarked in the ſhallop, ſome fifteen or ſixteen of us, in order to go aſhore. But, being unable to get there on account of a ſand-bank between us and the land, we threw ourſelves into the water, and waded from this bank to

---

CHAMPLAIN'S EXPLANATION OF THE ACCOMPANYING MAP.

THE ATTACK AT PORT FORTUNÉ.

The figures indicate fathoms of water.

A. Place where the French were making bread. *B.* The ſavages ſurpriſing the French, and ſhooting their arrows at them. *C.* French burned by the ſavages. *D.* The French fleeing to the barque, completely covered with arrows. *E.* Troops of ſavages burning the French whom they had killed. *F.* Mountain bordering on the harbor. *G.* Cabins of the ſavages. *H.* French on the ſhore charging upon the ſavages. *I.* Savages routed by the French. *L.* Shallop in which were the French. *M.* Savages around our ſhallop, who were ſurpriſed by our men. *N.* Barque of Sieur de Poutrincourt. *O.* The harbor. *P.* Small brook. *Q.* French who fell dead in the water as they were trying to flee to the barque. *R.* Brook coming from certain marſhes. *S.* Woods under cover of which the ſavages came.

to the ſhore, the diſtance of a muſket-ſhot. As ſoon as we were there, the ſavages, ſeeing us within arrow range, fled into the interior. To purſue them was fruitleſs, for they are marvellouſly ſwift. All that we could do was to carry away the dead bodies and bury them near a croſs, which had been ſet up the day before, and then to go here and there to ſee if we could get ſight of any of them. But it was time waſted, therefore we came back. Three hours afterwards, they returned to us on the ſea-ſhore. We diſcharged at them ſeveral ſhots from our little braſs cannon; and, when they heard the noiſe, they crouched down on the ground to avoid the fire. In mockery of us, they beat down the croſs and diſinterred the dead, which diſpleaſed us greatly, and cauſed us to go for them a ſecond time; but they fled, as they had done before. We ſet up again the croſs, and reinterred the dead, whom they had thrown here and there amid the heath, where they kindled a fire to burn them. We returned without any reſult, as we had done before, well aware that there was ſcarcely hope of avenging ourſelves this time, and that we ſhould have to renew the undertaking when it ſhould pleaſe God.

On the 16th of the month, we ſet out from Port Fortuné, to which we had given this name on account of the miſfortune which happened to us there. This place is in latitude 41° 20′, and ſome twelve or thirteen leagues from Mallebarre.[226]

CHAPTER XV.

[226] *Port Fortuné*, perhaps here uſed to ſignify the port of chance or hazard: referring particularly to the dangers they encountered in paſſing round Monomoy to reach it. The latitude of Stage Harbor in Chatham is 41° 40′. The diſtance from Mallebarre or Nauſet to Port Fortuné, or Stage Harbor, by water round the ſouthern point of Monomoy, is at the preſent time about nine leagues.

CHAPTER XV.

THE INCLEMENCY OF THE WEATHER NOT PERMITTING US AT THAT TIME TO CONTINUE OUR DISCOVERIES, WE RESOLVED TO RETURN TO OUR SETTLEMENT. WHAT HAPPENED TO US UNTIL WE REACHED IT.

AFTER having gone ſome ſix or ſeven leagues, we ſighted an iſland, which we named La Soupçonneuſe,[227] becauſe in the diſtance we had ſeveral times thought it was not an iſland. Then the wind became contrary, which cauſed us to put back to the place whence we had ſet out, where we ſtayed two or three days, no ſavage during this time preſenting himſelf to us.

On the 20th, we ſet out anew and coaſted along to the ſouth-weſt nearly twelve leagues,[228] where we paſſed near a river which is ſmall and difficult of acceſs in conſequence of the ſhoals and rocks at its mouth, and which I called after my own name.[229] This coaſt is, ſo far as we ſaw, low and ſandy.

leagues. The diſtance may poſſibly have been greater in 1606, or Champlain may have increaſed the diſtance by giving a wide berth to Monomoy in paſſing round it.

[227] *La Soupçonneuſe*, the doubtful. Martha's Vineyard. Champlain and Poutrincourt, in the little French barque, lying low on the water, creeping along the ſhore from Chatham to Point Gammon, could hardly fail to be doubtful whether Martha's Vineyard were an iſland or a part of the main land. Leſcarbot, ſpeaking of it, ſays, *et fut appelée l'Ile Douteuſe.*

[228] Nearly twelve leagues in a ſouth-weſterly direction from their anchorage at Stage Harbor in Chatham would bring them to Nobſka Point, at the entrance of the Vineyard Sound. This was the limit of Champlain's explorations towards the ſouth.

[229] "Called after my own name," viz. *Rivière de Champlain.*—*Vide* map, 1612. This river appears to be a tidal paſſage connecting the Vineyard Sound and Buzzard's Bay, having Nonameſſet and Uncatena Iſlands on the ſouth-weſt, and Nobſka Point, Wood's Holl, and Long Neck on the north-eaſt. On our Coaſt

ſandy. The wind again grew contrary and very ſtrong, which cauſed us to put out to ſea, as we were unable to advance on one tack or the other: it, however, finally abated a little and grew favorable. But all we could do was to return again to Port Fortuné, where the coaſt, though low, is fine and good, yet difficult of acceſs, there being no harbors, many reefs, and shallow water for the diſtance of nearly two leagues from land. The moſt that we found was ſeven or eight fathoms in ſome channels, which, however, continued only a cable's length, when there were ſuddenly only two or three fathoms; but one ſhould not truſt the water who has not well examined the depth with the lead in hand.

Some hours after we had returned to port, a ſon of Pont Gravé, named Robert, loſt a hand in firing a muſket, which burſt in ſeveral pieces, but without injuring any one near him.

Seeing now the wind continuing contrary, and being unable to put to ſea, we reſolved meanwhile to get poſſeſſion of ſome ſavages of this place, and, taking them to our ſettlement, put them to grinding corn at the hand-mill, as puniſhment for the deadly aſſault which they had committed on five or ſix of our company. But it was very difficult to do this when we were armed, ſince, if we went to them prepared to fight, they

Coaſt Survey Charts, it is called Hadley River. Its length is nearly two miles, in a winding courſe. The mouth of this paſſage is full of boulders, and in a receding tide the current is rough and boiſterous, and would anſwer well to the deſcription in the text, as no other river does on the coaſt from Chatham to Wood's Holl. On the ſmall French barque, elevated but a little above the ſurface of the water, its ſource in Buzzard's Bay could not be diſcovered, eſpecially if they paſſed round Nobſka Point, under the lee of which they probably obtained a view of the "ſhoals and rocks" which they ſaw at the mouth of the river.

they would turn and flee into the woods, where they were not to be caught. It was neceſſary, accordingly, to have recourſe to artifice, and this is what we planned: when they ſhould come to ſeek friendſhip with us, to coax them by ſhowing them beads and other gewgaws, and aſſure them repeatedly of our good faith; then to take the ſhallop well armed, and conduct on ſhore the moſt robuſt and ſtrong men we had, each one having a chain of beads and a fathom of match on his arm;[230] and there, while pretending to ſmoke with them (each one having an end of his match lighted ſo as not to excite ſuſpicion, it being cuſtomary to have fire at the end of a cord in order to light the tobacco), coax them with pleaſing words ſo as to draw them into the ſhallop; and, if they ſhould be unwilling to enter, each one approaching ſhould chooſe his man, and, putting the beads about his neck, ſhould at the ſame time put the rope on him to draw him by force. But, if they ſhould be too boiſterous, and it ſhould not be poſſible to ſucceed, they ſhould be ſtabbed, the rope being firmly held; and, if by chance any of them ſhould get away, there ſhould be men on land to charge upon them with ſwords. Meanwhile, the little cannon on our barque were to be kept ready to fire upon their companions in caſe they ſhould come to aſſiſt them, under cover of which fire-arms

[230] *A fathom of match on his arm.* This was a rope, made of the tow of hemp or flax, looſely twiſted, and prepared to retain the fire, ſo that, when once lighted, it would burn till the whole was conſumed. It was employed in connection with the match-lock, the arm then in common uſe. The wheel-lock followed in order of time, which was diſcharged by means of a notched wheel of ſteel, ſo arranged that its friction, when in motion, threw ſparks of fire into the pan that contained the powder. The ſnaphance was a ſlight improvement upon the wheel-lock. The flint-lock followed, now half a century ſince ſuperſeded by the percuſſion lock and cap.

arms the ſhallop could withdraw in ſecurity. The plan above-mentioned was well carried out as it had been arranged.

Some days after theſe events had tranſpired, there came ſavages by threes and fours to the ſhore, making ſigns to us to go to them. But we ſaw their main body in ambuſcade under a hillock behind ſome buſhes, and I ſuppoſe that they were only deſirous of beguiling us into the ſhallop in order to diſcharge a ſhower of arrows upon us, and then take to flight. Nevertheleſs, Sieur de Poutrincourt did not heſitate to go to them with ten of us, well equipped and determined to fight them, if occaſion offered. We landed at a place beyond their ambuſcade, as we thought, and where they could not ſurpriſe us. There three or four of us went aſhore together with Sieur de Poutrincourt: the others did not leave the ſhallop, in order to protect it and be ready for an emergency. We aſcended a knoll and went about the woods to ſee if we could not diſcover more plainly the ambuſcade. When they ſaw us going ſo unconcernedly to them, they left and went to other places, which we could not ſee, and of the four ſavages we ſaw only two, who went away very ſlowly. As they withdrew, they made ſigns to us to take our ſhallop to another place, thinking that it was not favorable for the carrying out of their plan. And, when we alſo ſaw that they had no deſire to come to us, we re-embarked and went to the place they indicated, which was the ſecond ambuſcade they had made, in their endeavor to draw us unarmed to themſelves by ſigns of friendſhip. But this we were not permitted to do at that time, yet we approached very near them without ſeeing this ambuſcade, which we ſuppoſed

poſed was not far off. As our ſhallop approached the ſhore, they took to flight, as alſo thoſe in ambuſh, after whom we fired ſome muſket-ſhots, ſince we ſaw that their intention was only to deceive us by flattery, in which they were diſappointed; for we recognized clearly what their purpoſe was, which had only miſchief in view. We retired to our barque after having done all we could.

On the ſame day, Sieur de Poutrincourt reſolved to return to our ſettlement on account of four or five ſick and wounded men, whoſe wounds were growing worſe through lack of ſalves, of which our ſurgeon, by a great miſtake on his part, had brought but a ſmall proviſion, to the detriment of the ſick and our own diſcomfort, as the ſtench from their wounds was ſo great, in a little veſſel like our own, that one could ſcarcely endure it. Moreover, we were afraid that they would generate diſeaſe. Alſo we had proviſions only for going eight or ten days farther, however much economy might be practiſed; and we knew not whether the return would laſt as long as the advance, which was nearly two months.

At any rate, our reſolution being formed, we withdrew, but with the ſatisfaction that God had not left unpuniſhed the miſdeeds of theſe barbarians.[231] We advanced no farther than

[231] They did not capture any of the Indians, to be reduced to a ſpecies of ſlavery, as they intended; but, as will appear further on, inhumanly butchered ſeveral of them, which would ſeem to have been an act of revenge rather than of puniſhment. The intercourſe of the French with the natives of Cape Cod was, on the whole, leſs ſatisfactory than that with the northern tribes along the ſhores of Maine, New Brunſwick, and Nova Scotia. With the latter they had no hoſtile conflicts whatever, although the Indians were ſufficiently implacable and revengeful towards their enemies. Thoſe inhabiting the peninſula of Cape Cod, and as far north as Cape Anne, were more ſuſpicious, and had apparently leſs clear conceptions of perſonal rights, eſpecially the rights of property. Might and right were to them identical. Whatever they deſired, they thought they had

than to latitude 41° 30′, which was only half a degree farther than Sieur de Monts had gone on his voyage of diſcovery.[232] We ſet out accordingly from this harbor.

On the next day, we anchored near Mallebarre, where we remained until the 28th of the month, when we ſet ſail. On that day the air was very cold, and there was a little ſnow. We took a direct courſe for Norumbegue or Iſle Haute.

Heading

a right to have, if they had the power or wit to obtain it. The French came in contact with only two of the many ſubordinate tribes that were in poſſeſſion of the peninſula; viz., the Monomoyicks at Chatham, and the Nauſets at Eaſtham. The conflict in both inſtances grew out of an attempt on the part of the natives to commit a petty theft. But it is quite poſſible that the invaſion of their territory by ſtrangers, an unpardonable offence among civilized people, may have created a feeling of hoſtility that found a partial gratification in ſtealing their property; and, had not this occaſion offered, the ſtifled feeling of hoſtility may have broken out in ſome other form. In general, they were not ſubſequently unfriendly in their intercourſe with the Engliſh. The Nauſets were, however, the ſame that ſent a ſhower of arrows upon the Pilgrims in 1620, at the place called by them the "Firſt Encounter," and not more than three miles from the ſpot where the ſame tribe, in 1605, had attacked the French, and ſlain one of De Monts's men. It muſt, however, be ſaid that, beſide the invaſion of their country, the Pilgrims had, ſome days before, rifled the granaries of the natives dwelling a few miles north of the Nauſets, and taken away without leave a generous quantity of their winter's ſupply of corn; and this may have inſpired them with a deſire to be rid of viſitors who helped themſelves to their proviſions, the fruit of their ſummer's toil, their dependence for the winter already upon them, with ſo little ceremony and ſuch unſcrupulous ſelfiſhneſs; for ſuch it muſt have appeared to the Nauſets in their ſavage and unenlightened ſtate. It is to be regretted that theſe excellent men, the Pilgrims, did not more fully comprehend the moral character of their conduct in this inſtance. They loſt at the outſet a golden opportunity for impreſſing upon the minds of the natives the great practical principle enunciated by our Lord, the foundation of all good neighborhood, Πάντα οὖν ὅσα ἂν θέλητε ἵνα ποιῶσιν ὑμῖν οἱ ἄνθρωποι, οὕτω καὶ ὑμεῖς ποιεῖτε αὐτοῖς. Ματθ. vii. 12. — *Vide Bradford's Hiſt. Plym. Plantation*, pp. 82, 83; *Mourt's Relation*, London, 1622, Dexter's ed., pp. 21, 22, 30, 31, 55.

[232] The latitude of Nobſka Point, the moſt ſouthern limit of their voyage, is 41° 31′, while the latitude of Nauſet Harbor, the ſouthern limit of that of De Monts on the previous year, 1605, is 41° 49′. They conſequently advanced but 18′, or eighteen nautical miles, further ſouth than they did the year before. Had they commenced this year's explorations where thoſe of the preceding terminated, as Champlain had adviſed, they might have explored the whole coaſt as far as Long Iſland Sound. *Vide antea*, pp. 109, 110.

Heading eaſt-north-eaſt, we were two days at ſea without ſeeing land, being kept back by bad weather. On the following night, we ſighted the iſlands, which are between Quinibequy and Norumbegue.[233] The wind was ſo ſtrong that we were obliged to put to ſea until daybreak; but we went ſo far from land, although we uſed very little ſail, that we could not ſee it again until the next day, when we ſaw Iſle Haute, of which we were abreaſt.

On the laſt day of October, between the Iſland of Monts Déſerts and Cap Corneille,[234] our rudder broke in ſeveral pieces, without our knowing the reaſon. Each one expreſſed his opinion about it. On the following night, with a freſh breeze, we came among a large number of iſlands and rocks, whither the wind drove us; and we reſolved to take refuge, if poſſible, on the firſt land we ſhould find.

We were for ſome time at the mercy of the wind and ſea, with only the foreſail ſet. But the worſt of it was that the night was dark, and we did not know where we were going; for our barque could not be ſteered at all, although we did all that was poſſible, holding in our hands the ſheets of the foreſail, which ſometimes enabled us to ſteer it a little. We kept continually ſounding, to ſee if it were poſſible to find a bottom for anchoring, and to prepare ourſelves for what might happen. But we found none. Finally, as we were going faſter than we wiſhed, it was recommended to put an oar aſtern together with ſome men, ſo as to ſteer to an iſland which we ſaw, in order to ſhelter ourſelves from the wind. Two other oars alſo were put over the ſides in the after part of

[233] Between the Kennebec and Penobſcot.
[234] *Vide antea*, note 177.

of the barque, to aſſiſt thoſe who were ſteering, in order to make the veſſel bear up on one tack and the other. This device ſerved us ſo well, that we headed where we wiſhed, and ran in behind the point of the iſland we had ſeen, anchoring in twenty-one fathoms of water until daybreak, when we propoſed to reconnoitre our poſition and ſeek for a place to make another rudder. The wind abated. At daybreak, we found ourſelves near the Iſles Rangées,[235] entirely ſurrounded by breakers, and we praiſed God for having preſerved us ſo wonderfully amid ſo many perils.

On the 1ſt of November, we went to a place which we deemed favorable for beaching our veſſel and repairing our helm. On this day, I landed, and ſaw ſome ice two inches thick, it having frozen perhaps eight or ten days before. I obſerved alſo that the temperature of the place differed very much from that of Mallebarre and Port Fortuné; for the leaves of the trees were not yet dead, and had not begun to fall when we ſet out, while here they had all fallen, and it was much colder than at Port Fortuné.

On the next day, as we were beaching our barque, a canoe came containing Etechemin ſavages, who told the ſavage Secondon in our barque that Iouaniſcou, with his companions, had killed ſome other ſavages, and carried off ſome women as priſoners, whom they had executed near the Iſland of Monts Déſerts.

On the 9th of the month, we ſet out from near Cap Corneille, and anchored the ſame day in the little paſſage[236] of Sainte Croix River.

On

[235] *Iſles Rangées*, the ſmall iſlands along the coaſt ſouth-weſt of Machias. *Vide* map of 1612.

[236] *Petit paſſage de la Riuière Saincte Croix*, the ſouthern ſtrait leading into Eaſtport

On the morning of the next day, we landed our ſavage with ſome ſupplies which we gave him. He was well pleaſed and ſatisfied at having made this voyage with us, and took away with him ſome heads of the ſavages that had been killed at Port Fortuné.[237] The ſame day we anchored in a very pretty cove[238] on the ſouth of the Iſland of Manan.

On the 12th of the month, we made ſail; and, when under way, the ſhallop, which we were towing aſtern, ſtruck againſt our barque ſo violently and roughly that it made an opening and ſtove in her upper works, and again in the recoil broke the iron faſtenings of our rudder. At firſt, we thought that the firſt blow had ſtove in ſome planks in the lower part, which would have ſunk us; for the wind was ſo high that all we could do was to carry our foreſail. But finding that the damage was ſlight, and that there was no danger, we managed with ropes to repair the rudder as well as we could, ſo as to ſerve us to the end of our voyage. This was not until the 14th of November, when, at the entrance to Port Royal, we came near being loſt on a point; but God delivered us from this danger as well as from many others to which we had been expoſed.[239]

CHAPTER XVI.

Eaſtport Harbor. This anchorage appears to have been in Quoddy Roads between Quoddy Head and Lubeck.

[237] In reporting the ſtratagem reſorted to for decoying the Indians into the hands of the French at Port Fortuné, Champlain paſſes over the details of the bloody encounter, doubtleſs to ſpare himſelf and the reader the painful record; but its reſults are here diſtinctly ſtated. Compare *antea*, pp. 132, 133.

[238] Sailing from Quoddy Head to Annapolis Bay, they would in their courſe paſs round the northern point of the Grand Manan; and they probably anchored in Whale Cove, or perhaps in Long Iſland Bay, a little further ſouth. Champlain's map is ſo oriented that both of theſe bays would appear to be on the ſouth of the Grand Manan. *Vide* map of 1612.

[239] Champlain had now completed his ſurvey ſouth of the Bay of Fundy. He had traced the ſhore-line with its ſinuoſities and its numberleſs iſlands far beyond the two diſtinguiſhed headlands, Cape

CHAPTER XVI.

RETURN FROM THE FOREGOING DISCOVERIES, AND WHAT TRANSPIRED DURING THE WINTER.

UPON our arrival, Leſcarbot, who had remained at the ſettlement, aſſiſted by the others who had ſtayed there, welcomed us with a humorous entertainment.[240]

Having landed and had time to take breath, each one began to make little gardens, I among the reſt attending to mine, in order in the ſpring to ſow ſeveral kinds of ſeeds which had been brought from France, and which grew very well in all the gardens.

Sieur de Poutrincourt, moreover, had a water-mill built nearly a league and a half from our ſettlement, near the point where grain had been planted. This mill[241] was built at

Cape Sable and Cape Cod, which reſpectively mark the entrance to the Gulf of Maine. The priority of theſe obſervations, particularly with reference to the habits, mode of life, and character of the aborigines, inveſts them with an unuſual intereſt and value. Anterior to the viſits of Champlain, the natives on this coaſt had come in contact with Europeans but rarely and incidentally, altogether too little certainly, if we except thoſe reſiding on the ſouthern coaſt of Nova Scotia, to have any modifying effect upon their manners, cuſtoms, or mode of life. What Champlain reports, therefore, of the Indians, is true of them in their purely ſavage ſtate, untouched by any influences of European civilization. This diſtinguiſhes the record, and gives to it a ſpecial importance.

[240] Leſcarbot, the author of a Hiſtory of New France often referred to in our notes, publiſhed a volume entitled "LES MUSES DE LA NOVVELLE FRANCE," in which may be found the play entitled LE THEATRE DE NEPTVNE, which he compoſed to celebrate the return of this expedition.

[241] The mill is repreſented on Champlain's map of Port Royal as ſituated on the ſtream which he calls *Rivière du Moulin*, the River of the Mill. This is Allen River; and the ſite of the mill was a ſhort diſtance ſouth-eaſt of the "point where corn had been planted," which was on the ſpot now occupied by the village of Annapolis.

at a fall, on a little river which is not navigable on account of the large number of rocks in it, and which falls into a ſmall lake. In this place, there is ſuch an abundance of herring in their ſeaſon that ſhallops could be loaded with them, if one were to take the trouble to bring the requiſite apparatus. The ſavages alſo of this region come here ſometimes to fiſh. A quantity of charcoal was made by us for our forge. During the winter, in order not to remain idle, I undertook the building of a road along the wood to a little river or brook, which we named La Truitière,[242] there being many trout there. I aſked Sieur de Poutrincourt for two or three men, which he gave me to aſſiſt in making this paſſage-way. I got along ſo well that in a little while I had the road through. It extends through to trout-brook, and meaſures nearly two thouſand paces. It ſerved us as a walk under the ſhelter of the trees, which I had left on both ſides. This led Sieur de Poutrincourt to determine to make another through the woods, in order that we might go ſtraight to the mouth of Port Royal, it being a diſtance of nearly three leagues and a half by land from our ſettlement. He had this commenced and continued for about half a league from La Truitière; but he did not finiſh it, as the undertaking was too laborious, and he was occupied by other things at the time more neceſſary. Some time after our arrival, we ſaw a ſhallop containing ſavages, who told us that a ſavage, who was one of our friends, had been killed by thoſe belonging to the place whence they came, which was Norumbegue, in revenge for the killing of the men of Norumbegue and Quinibequy by Iouaniſcou,

[242] *Vide antea*, note 212. See alſo the map of Port Royal, where the road is delineated, p. 24.

iſcou, alſo a ſavage, and his followers, as I have before related; and that ſome Etechemins had informed the ſavage Secondon, who was with us at that time.

The commander of the ſhallop was the ſavage named Ouagimou, who was on terms of friendſhip with Beſſabez, chief of the river Norumbegue, of whom he aſked the body of Panounias,[243] who had been killed. The latter granted it to him, begging him to tell his friends that he was very ſorry for his death, and aſſuring him that it was without his knowledge that he had been killed, and that, inaſmuch as it was not his fault, he begged him to tell them that he deſired they might continue to live as friends. This Ouagimou promiſed to do upon his return. He ſaid to us that he was very uneaſy until he got away from them, whatever friendſhip they might ſhow him, ſince they were liable to change; and he feared that they would treat him in the ſame manner as they had the one who had been killed. Accordingly, he did not tarry long after being diſmiſſed. He took the body in his ſhallop from Norumbegue to our ſettlement, a diſtance of fifty leagues.

As ſoon as the body was brought on ſhore, his relatives and friends began to ſhout by his ſide, having painted their entire face with black, which is their mode of mourning. After lamenting much, they took a quantity of tobacco and two or three dogs and other things belonging to the deceaſed, and burned them ſome thouſand paces from our ſettlement on the ſea-ſhore. Their cries continued until they returned to their cabin.

The

[243] This Indian Panounias and his wife had accompanied De Monts in 1605, on his expedition to Cape Cod. — *Vide antea*, p. 55.

The next day they took the body of the deceaſed and wrapped it in a red covering, which Mabretou, chief of this place, urgently implored me to give him, ſince it was handſome and large. He gave it to the relatives of the deceaſed, who thanked me very much for it. After thus wrapping up the body, they decorated it with ſeveral kinds of *matachiats;* that is, ſtrings of beads and bracelets of diverſe colors. They painted the face, and put on the head many feathers and other things, the fineſt they had. Then they placed the body on its knees between two ſticks, with another under the arms to ſuſtain it. Around the body were the mother, wife, and others of the relatives and friends of the deceaſed, both women and girls, howling like dogs.

While the women and girls were ſhrieking, the ſavage named Mabretou made an addreſs to his companions on the death of the deceaſed, urging all to take vengeance for the wickedneſs and treachery committed by the ſubjects of Beſſabez, and to make war upon them as ſpeedily as poſſible. All agreed to do ſo in the ſpring.

After the harangue was finiſhed and the cries had ceaſed, they carried the body of the deceaſed to another cabin. After ſmoking tobacco together, they wrapped it in an elk-ſkin likewiſe; and, binding it very ſecurely, they kept it until there ſhould be a larger number of ſavages preſent, from each one of whom the brother of the deceaſed expected to receive preſents, it being their cuſtom to give them to thoſe who have loſt fathers, mothers, wives, brothers, or ſiſters.

On the night of the 26th of December, there was a ſouth-eaſt wind, which blew down ſeveral trees. On the laſt day of December, it began to ſnow, which continued until the morning

morning of the next day. On the 16th of January following, 1607, Sieur de Poutrincourt, deſiring to aſcend the river Équille,[244] found it at a diſtance of ſome two leagues from our ſettlement ſealed with ice, which cauſed him to return, not being able to advance any farther. On the 8th of February, ſome pieces of ice began to flow down from the upper part of the river into the harbor, which only freezes along the ſhore. On the 10th of May following, it ſnowed all night; and, towards the end of the month, there were heavy hoar-froſts, which laſted until the 10th or 12th of June, when all the trees were covered with leaves, except the oaks, which do not leaf out until about the 15th. The winter was not ſo ſevere as on the preceding years, nor did the ſnow continue ſo long on the ground. It rained very often, ſo that the ſavages ſuffered a ſevere famine, owing to the ſmall quantity of ſnow. Sieur de Poutrincourt ſupported a part of them who were with us; namely, Mabretou, his wife and children, and ſome others.

We ſpent this winter very pleaſantly, and fared generouſly by means of the ORDRE DE BON TEMPS, which I introduced. This all found uſeful for their health, and more advantageous than all the medicines that could have been uſed. By the rules of the order, a chain was put, with ſome little ceremonies, on the neck of one of our company, commiſſioning him for the day to go a hunting. The next day it was conferred upon another, and thus in ſucceſſion. All exerted themſelves to the utmoſt to ſee who would do the beſt and bring home the fineſt game. We found this a very good arrangement, as did alſo the ſavages who were with us.[245]

There

[244] Now the Annapolis River.

[245] The conceit of this novel order was a happy one, as it ſerved to diſpel the

There were ſome caſes of ***mal de la terre*** among us, which was, however, not ſo violent as in the previous years. Nevertheleſs, ſeven died from it, and another from an arrow wound, which he had received from the ſavages at Port Fortuné.[246]

Our ſurgeon, named Maſter Eſtienne, opened ſome of the bodies, as we did the previous years, and found almoſt all the interior parts affected. Eight or ten of the ſick got well by ſpring.

At the beginning of March and of April, all began to prepare gardens, ſo as to plant ſeeds in May, which is the proper time for it. They grew as well as in France, but were ſomewhat later. I think France is at leaſt a month and a half more forward. As I have ſtated, the time to plant is in May, although one can ſometimes do ſo in April; yet the ſeeds planted then do not come forward any faſter than thoſe planted in May, when the cold can no longer damage the plants except thoſe which are very tender, ſince there are many which cannot endure the hoar-froſts, unleſs great care and attention be exerciſed.

On the 24th of May, we perceived a ſmall barque[247] of ſix or

the gloom of a long winter in the foreſts of La Cadie, as well as to improve the quality and variety of their diet. The *nobleſſe*, or gentlemen of the party, were fifteen, who ſerved in turn and for a ſingle day as caterer or ſteward, the turn of each recurring once in fifteen days. It was their duty to add to the ordinary fare ſuch delicate fiſh or game as could be captured or ſecured by each for his particular day. They always had ſome delicacy at breakfaſt; but the dinner was the great banquet, when the moſt impoſing ceremony was obſerved.

[246] Champlain does not inform us how many of Poutrincourt's party were killed in the affray at Chatham. He mentions one as killed on the ſpot. He ſpeaks of carrying away the "dead bodies" for burial. He alſo ſays they made a "deadly aſſault" upon "five or ſix of our company;" and another appears to have died of his wounds after their return to Port Royal, as ſtated in the text.

[247] *Vne petite barque.* The French barque was a ſmall veſſel or large boat, rigged with two maſts; and thoſe employed by De Monts along our coaſt varied from ſix to eighteen tons burden,

or ſeven tons' burthen, which we ſent men to reconnoitre; and it was found to be a young man from St. Malo, named Chevalier, who brought letters from Sieur de Monts to Sieur de Poutrincourt, by which he directed him to bring back his company to France.[248] He alſo announced to us the birth of Monſeigneur, the Duke of Orleans, to our delight, in honor of which event we made bonfires and chanted the *Te Deum*.[249]

Between the beginning and the 20th of June, ſome thirty or forty ſavages aſſembled in this place in order to make war upon the Almouchiquois, and revenge the death of Panounias, who was interred by the ſavages according to their cuſtom, who gave afterwards a quantity of peltry to a brother

and muſt not be confounded with our modern bark, which is generally much larger.

The *vaiſſeau*, often mentioned by Champlain, included all large veſſels, thoſe uſed for fiſhing, the fur-trade, and the tranſportation of men and ſupplies for the colony.

The *chaloupe* was a row-boat of convenient ſize for penetrating ſhallow places, was dragged behind the barque in the explorations of our coaſt, and uſed for minor inveſtigations of rivers and eſtuaries.

The *patache*, an advice-boat, is rarely uſed by Champlain, and then in the place of the ſhallop.

[248] It ſeems that young Chevalier had come out in the "Jonas," the ſame ſhip that had brought out Poutrincourt, Leſcarbot, and others, the year before. It had ſtopped at Canſeau to fiſh for cod. It brought the unwelcome news that the company of De Monts had been broken up; that the Hollanders, conducted by a "French traitor named La Jeuneſſe," had deſtroyed the fur-trading eſtabliſhments on the St. Lawrence, which rendered it impracticable to ſuſtain, as heretofore, the expenſes of the company. The monopoly of the fur-trade, granted to De Monts for ten years, had been reſcinded by the King's Council. "We were very ſad," ſays Leſcarbot, "to ſee ſo fine and holy an undertaking broken off, and that ſo many labors and perils endured had reſulted in nothing; and that the hope of eſtabliſhing there the name of God and the Catholic Faith had diſappeared. Notwithſtanding, after M. de Poutrincourt had a long while muſed hereupon, he ſaid that, although he ſhould have none to come with him, except his family, he would not forſake the enterpriſe." — *His. Nou. France*, par M. Leſcarbot, Paris, 1612, pp. 591–2.

[249] On the 16th of April, 1607, was born the ſecond ſon of Henry IV. by Marie de Medicis, who received the title, Le Duc d'Orléans. In France, public rejoicings were univerſal. On the 22d of the month, he was inveſted with the inſignia of the Order of St. Michael and the Holy Ghoſt with great pomp, on which occaſion a banquet was given

brother of his.[250] The preſents being made, all of them ſet out from this place on the 29th of June for Choüacoet, which is the country of the Almouchiquois, to engage in the war.

Some days after the arrival of the above Chevalier, Sieur de Poutrincourt ſent him to the rivers St. John[251] and St. Croix[252] to trade for furs. But he did not permit him to go without men to bring back the barque, ſince ſome had reported that he deſired to return to France with the veſſel in which he had come, and leave us in our ſettlement. Leſcarbot was one of thoſe who accompanied him, who up to this time had

given by the King in the great hall at Fontainebleau, and in the evening the park was illuminated by bonfires and a pyrotechnic diſplay, which was witneſſed by a vaſt concourſe of people. The young prince was baptized privately by the Cardinal de Gondy, but the ſtate ceremonies of his chriſtening were delayed, and appear never to have taken place: he died in the fifth year of his age, never having received any Chriſtian name. — *Vide the Life of Marie de Medicis*, by Miss Pardoe, London, 1852, Vol. I. p. 416; *Memoirs of the Duke of Sully*, Lennox, trans., Phila., 1817, Vol. IV. p. 140. In New France, the little colony at Port Royal atteſted their loyalty by ſuitable manifeſtations of joy. "As the day declined," ſays Leſcarbot, "we made bonfires to celebrate the birth of Monſeigneur le Duc d'Orléans, and cauſed our cannon and falconets to thunder forth again, accompanied with plenty of muſket-ſhots, having before for this purpoſe chanted a *Te Deum*." — *Vide His. Nou. France*, Paris, 1612, p. 594.

[250] Leſcarbot ſays that about four hundred ſet out for the war againſt the Almouchiquois, at Choüacoet, or Saco. The ſavages were nearly two months in aſſembling themſelves together. Mabretou had ſent out his two ſons, Actaudin and Actaudinech, to ſummon them to come to Port Royal as a rendezvous. They came from the river St. John, and from the region of Gaſpé. Their purpoſe was accompliſhed, as will appear in the ſequel.

[251] At St. John, they viſited the cabin of Secondon, the Sagamore, with whom they bartered for ſome furs. Leſcarbot, who was in the expedition, ſays, "The town of Ouïgoudy was a great encloſure upon a hill, compaſſed about with high and ſmall trees, tied one againſt another; and within it many cabins, great and ſmall, one of which was as large as a market-hall, wherein many houſeholds reſided." In the cabin of Secondon, they ſaw ſome eighty or a hundred ſavages, all nearly naked. They were celebrating a feaſt which they call *Tabagie*. Their chief made his warriors paſs in review before his gueſts. — *Vide His. Nou. France*, par M. Leſcarbot, Paris, 1612, p. 598.

[252] They found ſack at St. Croix that had been left there by De Monts's colony three years before, of which they drank. Caſks were still lying in the deſerted court-yard; and others had been uſed as fuel by mariners, who had chanced to come there.

had not left Port Royal. This is the fartheſt he went, only fourteen or fifteen leagues beyond Port Royal.

While awaiting the return of Chevalier, Sieur de Poutrincourt went to the head of Baye Françoiſe in a ſhallop with ſeven or eight men. Leaving the harbor and heading northeaſt a quarter eaſt for ſome twenty-five leagues along the coaſt, we arrived at a cape where Sieur de Poutrincourt deſired to aſcend a cliff more than thirty fathoms high, in doing which he came near loſing his life. For, having reached the top of the rock which is very narrow, and which he had aſcended with much difficulty, the ſummit trembled beneath him. The reaſon was that, in courſe of time, moſs had gathered there four or five feet in thickneſs, and, not being ſolid, trembled when one was on top of it, and very often when one ſtepped on a ſtone three or four others fell down. Accordingly, having gone up with difficulty, he experienced ſtill greater in coming down, although ſome ſailors, men very dexterous in climbing, carried him a hawſer, a rope of medium ſize, by means of which he deſcended. This place was named Cap de Poutrincourt,[253] and is in latitude 45° 40′.

We went as far as the head of this bay, but ſaw nothing but certain white ſtones ſuitable for making lime, yet they are found only in ſmall quantities. We ſaw alſo on ſome iſlands a great number of gulls. We captured as many of them as we wiſhed. We made the tour of the bay, in order to go to the Port aux Mines where I had previouſly been,[254] and whither

I

[253] De Laet's map has C. de Poutrincourt; the map of the Engliſh and French Commiſſaries, C. Fendu or Split Cape. Halliburton has Split Cape, ſo likewiſe has the Admiralty map of 1860. It is ſituated at the entrance of the Baſin of Mines, and about eight miles ſouthweſt of Parrſborough. The point of this cape is in latitude 45° 20′.

[254] *Vide antea*, p. 26.

I conducted Sieur de Poutrincourt, who collected ſome little pieces of copper with great difficulty. All this bay has a circuit of perhaps twenty leagues, with a little river at its head, which is very ſluggiſh and contains but little water. There are many other little brooks, and ſome places where there are good harbors at high tide, which riſes here five fathoms. In one of theſe harbors three or four leagues north of Cap de Poutrincourt, we found a very old croſs all covered with moſs and almoſt all rotten, a plain indication that before this there had been Chriſtians there. All of this country is covered with denſe foreſts, and with ſome exceptions is not very attractive.[255]

From the Port aux Mines[256] we returned to our ſettlement. In this bay there are ſtrong tidal currents running in a ſouth-weſterly direction.

On the 12th of July, Ralleau, ſecretary of Sieur de Monts, arrived with three others in a ſhallop from a place called Niganis,[257] diſtant from Port Royal ſome hundred and ſixty or hundred and ſeventy leagues, confirming the report which Chevalier had brought to Sieur de Poutrincourt.

On the 3d of July,[258] three barques were fitted out to ſend the

[255] The author is here ſpeaking of the country about the Baſin of Mines. The river at the head of the bay is the Shubenacadie. It is not eaſy to determine where the moſs-covered croſs was found. The diſtance from Cap de Poutrincourt is indefinite, and the direction could not have been exactly north. There is too much uncertainty to warrant even a conjecture as to its locality.

[256] The Port aux Mines is Advocate's Harbor.—*Vide antea*, p. 26, and note 67.

[257] Niganis is a ſmall bay in the Iſland of Cape Breton, ſouth of Cape North: by De Laet called *Ninganis;* Engliſh and French Commiſſaries, *Niganiſhe;* modern maps, *Niganiſh.*

[258] The *3d of July* was doubtleſs an error of the printer for the 30th, as appears from the later date in the preceding paragraph, and the ſtatement of Leſcarbot, that he left on the 30th of July. He ſays they had one large barque, two ſmall ones, and a ſhallop. One of the ſmall ones was ſent before, while the other two followed on the 30th; and he

the men and ſupplies, which were at our ſettlement, to Canſeau, diſtant one hundred and fifteen leagues from our ſettlement, and in latitude 45° 20′, where the veſſel [259] was engaged in fiſhing, which was to carry us back to France.

Sieur de Poutrincourt ſent back all his companions, but remained with eight others at the ſettlement, ſo as to carry to France ſome grain not yet quite ripe.[260]

On the 10th of Auguſt, Mabretou arrived from the war, who told us that he had been at Choüacoet, and had killed twenty ſavages and wounded ten or twelve; alſo that Onemechin, chief of that place, Marchin, and one other, had been killed by Saſinou, chief of the river of Quinibequy, who was afterwards killed by the companions of Onemechin and Marchin. All this war was ſimply on account of the ſavage Panounias, one of our friends who, as I have ſaid above, had been killed at Norumbegue by the followers of Onemechin and Marchin. At preſent, the chiefs in place of Onemechin, Marchin, and Saſinou are their ſons: namely, for Saſinou, Pememen; Abriou for his father, Marchin; and for Onemechin, Queconſicq. The two latter were wounded by the followers of Mabretou, who ſeized them under pretence of friendſhip, as is their faſhion, ſomething which both ſides have to guard againſt.[261]

CHAPTER XVII.

he adds that Poutrincourt remained eleven days longer to await the ripening of their grain, which agrees with Champlain's ſubſequent ſtatement, that he left with Poutrincourt on the 11th of Auguſt. — *Vide His. Nou. France*, 1612, p. 603.

[259] The "Jonas."—*Vide antea*, p. 146.

[260] *Vide antea*, note 258.

[261] The implacable character of the American Indian is well illuſtrated in this ſkirmiſh which took place at Saco. The old chief Mabretou, whoſe life had been prolonged through ſeveral generations, had inſpired his allies to revenge, and had been preſent at the conflict. The Indian Panounias had been killed in an affray, the particular cauſe of which is not ſtated. To avenge his death, many lives were loſt on both ſides. The

CHAPTER XVII.

THE SETTLEMENT ABANDONED. —RETURN TO FRANCE OF SIEUR DE POUTRINCOURT AND ALL HIS COMPANY.

ON the 11th of Auguſt, we ſet out from our ſettlement in a ſhallop, and coaſted along as far as Cape Fourchu, where I had previouſly been.

Continuing our courſe along the coaſt as far as Cap de la Hève, where we firſt landed with Sieur de Monts, on the 8th of May, 1604,[262] we examined the coaſt from this place as far as Canſeau, a diſtance of nearly ſixty leagues. This I had not yet done, and I obſerved it very carefully, making a map of it as of the other coaſts.

Departing from Cap de la Hève, we went as far as Seſambre, an iſland ſo called by ſome people from St. Malo,[263] and diſtant fifteen leagues from La Hève. Along the route are a large number of iſlands, which we named Les Martyres,[264] ſince ſome Frenchmen were once killed there by the ſavages. Theſe iſlands lie in ſeveral inlets and bays. In one of them is

The two chiefs of Saco were ſlain, and in turn the author of their death periſhed by the hand of their friends. Leſcarbot informs us that Champdoré, under Poutrincourt, ſubſequently viſited Saco, and concluded a formal peace between the belligerent parties, emphaſizing its importance by impreſſive forms and ceremonies.

[262] *Vide antea*, p. 9 and note 22.

[263] *Seſambre.* This name was probably ſuggeſted by the little iſlet, *Cézembre*, one of ſeveral on which are military works for the defence of St. Malo. On De Laet's map of 1633, it is written *Seſembre;* on that of Charlevoix, 1744, *Sincembre.* It now appears on the Admiralty maps corrupted into Sambro. There is a cape and a harbor near this iſland which bear the ſame name.

[264] The iſlands ſtretching along from Cap de la Hève to Sambro Iſland are called the *Martyres Iles* on De Laet's map, 1633.

is a river named St. Marguerite,[265] diſtant ſeven leagues from Seſambre, which is in latitude 44° 25′. The iſlands and coaſts are thickly covered with pines, firs, birches, and other trees of inferior quality. Fiſh and alſo fowl are abundant.

After leaving Seſambre, we paſſed a bay which is unobſtructed, of ſeven or eight leagues in extent, with no iſlands except at the extremity, where is the mouth of a ſmall river, containing but little water.[266] Then, heading north-eaſt a quarter eaſt, we arrived at a harbor diſtant eight leagues from Seſambre, which is very ſuitable for veſſels of a hundred or a hundred and twenty tons. At its entrance is an iſland, from which one can walk to the main land at low tide. We named this place Port Saincte Helaine,[267] which is in latitude 44° 40′ more or leſs.

From this place we proceeded to a bay called La Baye de Toutes Iſles,[268] of ſome fourteen or fifteen leagues in extent, a dangerous place on account of the preſence of banks, ſhoals, and reefs. The country preſents a very unfavorable appearance, being filled with the ſame kind of trees which

[265] The bay into which this river empties ſtill retains the name of St. Margaret.

[266] Haliſax Harbor. Its Indian name was Chebucto, written on the map of the Engliſh and French Commiſſaries *Shebûctû*. On Champlain's map, 1612, as likewiſe on that of De Laet, 1633, it is called "*Baye Senne*," perhaps from *ſaine*, ſignifying the unobſtructed bay.

[267] Eight leagues from the Iſland Seſambre or Sambro Iſland would take them to Perpiſawick Inlet, which is doubtleſs *Le Port Saincte Helaine* of Champlain. The latitude of this harbor is 44° 41′, differing but a ſingle minute from that of the text, which is extraordinary, the uſual variation being from ten to thirty minutes.

[268] Nicomtau Bay is fifteen leagues from Perpiſawick Inlet; but *La Baye de Toutes Iſles* is, more ſtrictly ſpeaking, an archipelago, extending along the coaſt, ſay from Clam Bay to Liſcomb Point, as may be ſeen by reference to Champlain's map, 1612, and that of De Laet, 1633, Cruxius, 1660, and of Charlevoix, 1744. The north-eaſtern portion of this archipelago is now called, according to Laverdière, Iſland Bay.

which I have mentioned before. Here we encountered bad weather.

Hence we paſſed on near a river, ſix leagues diſtant, called Rivière de l'Iſle Verte,[269] there being a green iſland at its entrance. This ſhort diſtance which we traverſed is filled with numerous rocks extending nearly a league out to ſea, where the breakers are high, the latitude being 45° 15′.

Thence we went to a place where there is an inlet, with two or three iſlands, and a very good harbor,[270] diſtant three leagues from l'Iſle Verte. We paſſed alſo by ſeveral iſlands near and in a line with each other, which we named Iſles Rangées,[271] and which are diſtant ſix or ſeven leagues from l'Iſle Verte. Afterwards we paſſed by another bay[272] containing ſeveral iſlands, and proceeded to a place where we found a veſſel engaged in fiſhing between ſome iſlands, which are a ſhort diſtance from the main land, and diſtant four leagues from the Rangées. This place we named Port de Savalette,[273] the name of the maſter of the veſſel engaged in fiſhing,

[269] *Rivière de l'Iſle Verte*, or Green Iſland River, is the River St. Mary; and Green Iſland is Wedge Iſland near its mouth. The latitude at the mouth of the river is 45° 3′. This little iſland is called *I. Verte* on De Laet's map, and likewiſe on that of Charlevoix; on the map of the Engliſh and French Commiſſaries, Liſcomb or Green Iſland.

[270] This inlet has now the incongruous name of Country Harbor: the three iſlands at its mouth are Harbor, Gooſe, and Green Iſlands. The inlet is called Mocodome on Charlevoix's map.

[271] There are ſeveral iſlets on the eaſt of St. Catharine's River, near the ſhore, which Laverdière ſuggeſts are the *Iſles Rangées*. They are exceedingly ſmall, and no name is given them on the Admiralty charts.

[272] Tor Bay.

[273] *Le Port de Savalette.* Obviouſly White Haven, which is four leagues from the Rangées and ſix from Canſeau, as ſtated in the text. Leſcarbot gives a very intereſting account of Captain Savalette, the old Baſque fiſherman, who had made forty-two voyages into theſe waters. He had been eminently ſucceſsful in fiſhing, having taken daily, according to his own account, fifty crowns' worth of codfiſh, and expected his voyage would yield ten thouſand francs. His veſſel was of eighty tons burden, and could take in a hundred thouſand dry codfiſh. He was well known,

fiſhing, a Baſque, who entertained us bountifully, and was very glad to ſee us, ſince there were ſavages there who purpoſed ſome harm to him, which we prevented.[274]

Leaving this place, we arrived on the 27th of the month at Canſeau, diſtant ſix leagues from Port de Savalette, having paſſed on our way a large number of iſlands. At Canſeau, we found that the three barques had arrived at port in ſafety. Champdoré and Leſcarbot came out to receive us. We alſo found the veſſel ready to ſail, having finiſhed its fiſhing and awaiting only fair weather to return. Meanwhile, we had much enjoyment among theſe iſlands, where we found the greateſt poſſible quantity of raſpberries.

All the coaſt which we paſſed along from Cape Sable to this place is moderately high and rocky, in moſt places bordered by numerous iſlands and breakers, which extend out to ſea nearly two leagues in places, and are very unfavorable for the approach of veſſels. Yet there cannot but be good harbors and roadſteads along the coaſts and iſlands, if they were explored. As to the country, it is worſe and leſs promiſing than in other places which we had ſeen, except on ſome rivers or brooks, where it is very pleaſant; but there is no doubt that the winter in theſe regions is cold, laſting from ſix to ſeven months.

The harbor of Canſeau[275] is a place ſurrounded by iſlands, to

known, and a great favorite with the voyagers to this coaſt. He was from St. Jean de Luz, a ſmall ſeaport town in the department of the Lower Pyrenees in France, near the borders of Spain, diſtinguiſhed even at this day for its fiſhing intereſt.

[274] The Indians were in the habit of ſelecting from day to day the beſt of Savalette's fiſh when they came in, and appropriating them to their own uſe, *nolens volens*.

[275] *Canſeau.* Currency has been given to an idle fancy that this name was derived from that of a French navigator, but it has been abundantly diſproved by the Abbé Laverdière. It is undoubtedly a word of Indian origin.

to which the approach is very difficult, except in fair weather, on account of the rocks and breakers about it. Fiſhing, both green and dry, is carried on here.

From this place to the Iſland of Cape Breton, which is in latitude 45° 45′ and 14° 50′ of the deflection of the magnetic needle,[276] it is eight leagues, and to Cape Breton twenty-five. Between the two there is a large bay,[277] extending ſome nine or ten leagues into the interior and making a paſſage between the Iſland of Cape Breton and the main land through to the great Bay of St. Lawrence, by which they go to Gaſpé and Iſle Percée, where fiſhing is carried on. This paſſage along the Iſland of Cape Breton is very narrow. Although there is water enough, large veſſels do not paſs there at all on account of the ſtrong currents and the impetuoſity of the tides which prevail. This we named Le Paſſage Courant,[278] and it is in latitude 45° 45′.

The Iſland of Cape Breton is of a triangular ſhape, with a circuit of about eighty leagues. Moſt of the country is mountainous, yet in ſome parts very pleaſant. In the centre of it there

[276] The variation of the magnetic needle in 1871, fifteen miles ſouth of the Harbor of Canſeau, was, according to the Admiralty charts, 23° weſt. The magnetic needle was employed in navigation as early as the year 1200, and its variation had been diſcovered before the time of Columbus. But for a long period its variation was ſuppoſed to be fixed; that is to ſay, was ſuppoſed to be always the ſame in the ſame locality. A few years before Champlain made his voyages to America, it was diſcovered that its variation in Paris was not fixed, but that it changed from year to year. If Champlain was aware of this, his deſign in noting its exact variation, as he did at numerous points on our coaſt, may have been to furniſh data for determining at ſome future day whether the variation were changeable here as well as in France. But, whether he was aware of the diſcovery then recently made in Paris or not, he probably intended, by noting the declination of the needle, to indicate his longitude, at leaſt approximately.

[277] Chedabucto Bay.

[278] The Strait of Canſeau. Champlain gives it on his map, 1612, *Paſage du glas;* De Laet, 1633, *Paſſage du glas;* Creuxius, 1660, *Fretum Campſeium;*

there is a kind of lake,[279] where the ſea enters by the north a quarter north-weſt, and alſo by the ſouth a quarter ſouth-eaſt.[280] Here are many iſlands filled with plenty of game, and ſhell-fiſh of various kinds, including oyſters, which, however, are not of very good flavor. In this place there are two harbors, where fiſhing is carried on; namely, Le Port aux Anglois,[281] diſtant from Cape Breton ſome two or three leagues, and Niganis, eighteen or twenty leagues north a quarter north-weſt. The Portugueſe once made an attempt to ſettle this iſland, and ſpent a winter here; but the inclemency of the ſeaſon and the cold cauſed them to abandon their ſettlement.

On the 3d of September, we ſet out from Canſeau. On the 4th, we were off Sable Iſland. On the 6th, we reached the Grand Bank, where the catching of green fiſh is carried on, in latitude 45° 30′. On the 26th, we entered the ſound near the ſhores of Brittany and England, in ſixty-five fathoms of water and in latitude 49° 30′. On the 28th, we put in at Roſcou,[282] in lower Brittany, where we were detained by bad weather until the laſt day of September, when, the wind coming round favorable, we put to ſea in order to purſue

ſeium; Charlevoix, 1744, *Paſſage de Canceau*. It appears from the above that the early name was ſoon ſuperſeded by that which it now bears.

[279] Now called *La Bras d'Or*, The Golden Arm.

[280] There is, in fact, no paſſage of La Bras d'Or on the ſouth-weſt; and Champlain corrects his error, as may be ſeen by reference to his map of 1612. It may alſo be ſtated that the ſea enters from the north-eaſt. *Nordoueſt* in the original is here probably a typographical error for *nordeſt*. There are, indeed, two paſſages, both on the north-eaſt, diſtinguiſhed as the Great and the Little Bras d'Or.

[281] *Le Port aux Anglois*, the Harbor of the Engliſh. On De Laet's map, Port aux Angloix. This is the Harbor of Louiſburgh, famous in the hiſtory of the Iſland of Cape Breton.

[282] Roſcoff, a ſmall ſeaport town. On Mercator's Atlas of 1623, it is written Roſcou, as in the text.

ſue our route to St. Malo,[383] which formed the termination of theſe voyages, in which God had guided us without ſhipwreck or danger.

END OF THE VOYAGES FROM THE YEAR 1604 TO 1608.

[383] According to Leſcarbot, they remained at St. Malo eight days, when they went in a barque to Honfleur, narrowly eſcaping ſhipwreck. Poutrincourt proceeded to Paris, where he exhibited to Henry IV. corn, wheat, rye, barley, and oats, products of the colony which he had ſo often promiſed to cheriſh, but whoſe means of ſubſiſtence he had now nevertheleſs ungraciouſly taken away. Poutrincourt alſo preſented to him five *ouſtards*, or wild geeſe, which he had bred from the ſhell. The king was greatly delighted with them, and had them preſerved at Fontainebleau. Theſe exhibitions of the products of New France had the deſired effect upon the generous heart of Henry IV.; and De Monts's monopoly of the fur-trade was renewed for one year, to furniſh ſome ſlight aid in eſtabliſhing his colonies in New France.

THE VOYAGES

TO THE

GREAT RIVER ST. LAWRENCE,

MADE BY

SIEUR DE CHAMPLAIN,

CAPTAIN IN ORDINARY TO THE KING IN THE MARINE,

FROM THE YEAR 1608 TO THAT OF 1612.

CHAPTER I.

DETERMINATION OF SIEUR DE MONTS TO MAKE EXPLORATIONS IN THE INTERIOR; HIS COMMISSION, AND ITS INFRINGEMENT BY THE BASQUES, WHO DISARMED THE VESSEL OF PONT GRAVÉ; AND THE AGREEMENT BETWEEN THEM WHICH THEY SUBSEQUENTLY MADE.

HAVING returned to France after a ſtay of three years in New France,[283] I proceeded to Sieur de Monts, and related to him the principal events of which I had been a witneſs ſince his departure, and gave him the map and plan of the moſt remarkable coaſts and harbors there.

Some time afterward, Sieur de Monts determined to continue his undertaking, and complete the exploration of the interior

[283] Champlain arrived on the ſhores of America on the 8th of May, 1604, and left on the 3d of September, 1607. He had conſequently been on our coaſt three years, three months, and twenty-five days.

interior along the great river St. Lawrence, where I had been by order of the late King Henry the Great[284] in the year 1603, for a diſtance of ſome hundred and eighty leagues, commencing in latitude 48° 40′, that is, at Gaſpé, at the entrance of the river, as far as the great fall, which is in latitude 45° and ſome minutes, where our exploration ended, and where boats could not paſs as we then thought, ſince we had not made a careful examination of it as we have ſince done.[285]

Now after Sieur de Monts had conferred with me ſeveral times in regard to his purpoſes concerning the exploration, he reſolved to continue ſo noble and meritorious an undertaking, notwithſtanding the hardſhips and labors of the paſt. He honored me with his lieutenancy for the voyage; and, in order to carry out his purpoſe, he had two veſſels equipped, one commanded by Pont Gravé, who was commiſſioned to trade with the ſavages of the country and bring back the veſſels, while I was to winter in the country.

Sieur de Monts, for the purpoſe of defraying the expenſes of the expedition, obtained letters from his Majeſty for one year, by which all perſons were forbidden to traffic in peltry with the ſavages, on penalties ſtated in the following commiſſion: —

HENRY BY THE GRACE OF GOD KING OF FRANCE AND NAVARRE, to our beloved and faithful Councillors, the officers of

[284] *The late King Henry the Great.* Henry IV. died in 1610, and this introductory paſſage was obviouſly written after that event, probably near the time of the publication of his voyages in 1613.

[285] In the preliminary voyage of 1603, Champlain aſcended the St. Lawrence as far as the falls of St. Louis, above Montreal.

of our Admiralty in Normandy, Brittany, and Guienne, bailiffs, marſhals, prevoſts, judges, or their lieutenants, and to each one of them, according to his authority, throughout the extent of their powers, juriſdictions, and precincts, greeting:

Acting upon the information which has been given us by thoſe who have returned from New France, reſpecting the good quality and fertility of the lands of that country, and the diſpoſition of the people to accept the knowledge of God, We have reſolved to continue the ſettlement previouſly undertaken there, in order that our ſubjects may go there to trade without hinderance. And in view of the propoſition to us of Sieur de Monts, Gentleman in Ordinary of our chamber, and our Lieutenant-General in that country, to make a ſettlement, on condition of our giving him means and ſupplies for ſuſtaining the expenſe of it,[286] it has pleaſed us to promiſe and aſſure him that none of our ſubjects but himſelf ſhall be permitted to trade in peltry and other merchandiſe, for the period of one year only, in the lands, regions, harbors, rivers, and highways throughout the extent of his juriſdiction: this We deſire to have fulfilled. For theſe cauſes and other conſiderations impelling us thereto, We command and decree that each one of you, throughout the extent of your powers, juriſdictions, and precincts, ſhall act in our ſtead and carry out our will in diſtinctly prohibiting and forbidding all merchants, maſters, and captains of veſſels, alſo ſailors and others of our ſubjects, of whatever rank and profeſſion, to fit out any veſſels, in which to go themſelves or ſend others in order

[286] The contribution by Henry IV. did not probably extend beyond the monopoly of the fur-trade granted by him in this commiſſion.

order to engage in trade or barter in peltry and other things with the ſavages of New France, to viſit, trade, or communicate with them during the ſpace of one year, within the juriſdiction of Sieur de Monts, on penalty of diſobedience, and the entire confiſcation of their veſſels, ſupplies, arms, and merchandiſe for the benefit of Sieur de Monts; and, in order that the puniſhment of their diſobedience may be aſſured, you will allow, as We have and do allow, the aforeſaid Sieur de Monts or his lieutenants to ſeize, apprehend, and arreſt all violators of our preſent prohibition and order, alſo their veſſels, merchandiſe, arms, ſupplies, and victuals, in order to take and deliver them up to the hands of juſtice, ſo that action may be taken not only againſt the perſons, but alſo the property of the offenders, as the caſe ſhall require. This is our will, and We bid you to have it at once read and publiſhed in all localities and public places within your authority and juriſdiction, as you may deem neceſſary, by the firſt one of our officers or ſergeants in accordance with this requiſition, by virtue of theſe preſents, or a copy of the ſame, properly atteſted once only by one of our well-beloved and faithful councillors, notaries, and ſecretaries, to which it is Our will that credence ſhould be given as to the preſent original, in order that none of our ſubjects may claim ground for ignorance, but that all may obey and act in accordance with Our will in this matter. We order, moreover, all captains of veſſels, mates, and ſecond mates, and ſailors of the ſame, and others on board of veſſels or ſhips in the ports and harbors of the aforeſaid country, to permit, as We have done, Sieur de Monts, and others poſſeſſing power and authority from him, to ſearch the aforeſaid veſſels which ſhall have engaged in the fur-trade after

after the preſent prohibition ſhall have been made known to them. It is Our will that, upon the requiſition of the aforeſaid Sieur de Monts, his lieutenants, and others having authority, you ſhould proceed againſt the diſobedient and offenders, as the caſe may require: to this end, We give you power, authority, commiſſion, and ſpecial mandate, notwithſtanding the act of our Council of the 17th day of July laſt,[287] any hue and cry, Norman charter, accuſation, objection, or appeals of whatſoever kind; on account of which, and for fear of diſregarding which, it is Our will that there ſhould be no delay, and, if any of theſe occur, We have withheld and reſerved cognizance of the ſame to Ourſelves and our Council, apart from all other judges, and have forbidden and prohibited the ſame to all our courts and judges: for this is Our pleaſure.

Given at Paris the ſeventh day of January, in the year of grace, ſixteen hundred and eight, and the nineteenth of Our reign. Signed, HENRY.

And lower down, By the King, Delomenie. And ſealed with the ſingle label of the great ſeal of yellow wax.

Collated with the original by me, Councillor, Notary, and Secretary of the King.

I proceeded to Honfleur for embarkation, where I found the veſſel of Pont Gravé in readineſs. He left port on the 5th of April. I did ſo on the 13th, arriving at the Grand Bank on the 15th of May, in latitude 45° 15′. On the 26th, we

[287] This, we preſume, was the act abrogating the charter of De Monts granted in 1603.

we ſighted Cape St. Mary,[288] in latitude 46° 45′, on the Iſland of Newfoundland. On the 27th of the month, we ſighted Cape St. Lawrence, on Cape Breton, and alſo the Iſland of St. Paul, diſtant eighty-three leagues from Cape St. Mary.[289] On the 30th, we ſighted Iſle Percée and Gaſpé,[290] in latitude 48° 40′, diſtant from Cape St. Lawrence from ſeventy to ſeventy-five leagues.

On the 3d of June, we arrived before Tadouſſac, diſtant from Gaſpé from eighty to ninety leagues; and we anchored in the roadſtead of Tadouſſac,[291] a league diſtant from the harbor, which latter is a kind of cove at the mouth of the river Saguenay, where the tide is very remarkable on account of its rapidity, and where there are ſometimes violent winds, bringing ſevere cold. It is maintained that from the harbor of Tadouſſac it is ſome forty-five or fifty leagues to the firſt fall on this river, which comes from the north-north-weſt.

[288] This cape ſtill retains its ancient name, and is ſituated between St. Mary's Bay and Placentia Bay.

[289] Cape St. Lawrence is the northernmoſt extremity of the Iſland of Cape Breton, and the Iſland of St. Paul is twenty miles north-eaſt of it.

[290] The Iſle Percée, or pierced iſland, is a ſhort diſtance north of the Iſland of Bonaventure, at the entrance of Mal Bay, near the village of Percée, where there is a government light. Gaſpé Bay is ſome miles farther north. "Below the bay," ſays Charlevoix, "we perceive a kind of iſland, which is only a ſteep rock about thirty fathoms long, ten high, and four in breadth: it looks like part of an old wall, and they ſay it joined formerly to *Mount Ioli*, which is over againſt it on the continent. This rock has in the midſt of it an opening like an arch, under which a boat of Biſcay may paſs with its ſail up, and this has given it the name of the *pierced* iſland." — *Letters to the Ducheſs of Leſdiguières*, by Francis Xavier de Charlevoix, London, 1763, p. 12.

[291] The poſition in the roadſtead was ſouth-eaſt of the harbor, ſo that the harbor was ſeen on the north-weſt. Charlevoix calls it Moulin Baude. The reader will find the poſition indicated by the letter M on Champlain's map of the Port of Tadouſſac. Baude Moulin (Baude Mill), directly north of it, was probably a mill *privilege*. Charlevoix, in 1720, anchored there, and aſked them to ſhow him the mill; and they ſhowed him ſome rocks, from which iſſued a ſtream of clear water. He adds, they might build a water-mill here, but probably it will never be done.

weſt. The harbor is ſmall, and can accommodate only about twenty veſſels. It has water enough, and is under ſhelter of the river Saguenay and a little rocky iſland; which is almoſt cut by the river; elſewhere there are very high mountains with little ſoil and only rocks and ſand, thickly covered with ſuch wood as fir and birch. There is a ſmall pond near the harbor, ſhut in by mountains covered with wood. There are two points at the mouth: one on the ſouth-weſt ſide, extending out nearly a league into the ſea, called Point St. Matthew, or otherwiſe Point aux Allouettes; and another on the north-weſt ſide, extending out one-eighth of a league, and called Point of all Devils,[292] from the dangerous nature of the place. The winds from the ſouth-ſouth-eaſt ſtrike the harbor, which are not to be feared; but thoſe, however, from the Saguenay are. The two points above mentioned are dry at low tide: our veſſel was unable to enter the harbor, as the wind and tide were unfavorable. I at once had the boat lowered, in order to go to the port and aſcertain whether Pont Gravé had arrived. While on the way, I met a ſhallop with the pilot of Pont Gravé and a Baſque, who came to inform me of what had happened to them becauſe they attempted to hinder the Baſque veſſels from trading, according to the commiſſion obtained by Sieur de Monts from his Majeſty, that no veſſels ſhould trade without permiſſion of Sieur de Monts, as was expreſſed in it; and that, notwithſtanding the notifications which Pont Gravé made in behalf of his Majeſty, they did not deſiſt from forcibly carrying on their

[292] *Pointe de tous les Diables.* Now is ſtill called Pointe aux Alouettes, or known as Pointe aux Vaches, *cows*. Lark Point. The point on the other ſide of the river

their traffic; and that they had uſed their arms and maintained themſelves ſo well in their veſſel that, diſcharging all their cannon upon that of Pont Gravé, and letting off many muſket-ſhots, he was ſeverely wounded, together with three of his men, one of whom died, Pont Gravé meanwhile making no reſiſtance; for at the firſt ſhower of muſketry he was ſtruck down. The Baſques came on board of the veſſel and took away all the cannon and arms, declaring that they would trade, notwithſtanding the prohibition of the King, and that when they were ready to ſet out for France they would reſtore to him his cannon and ammunition, and that they were keeping them in order to be in a ſtate of ſecurity. Upon hearing all theſe particulars, I was greatly annoyed at ſuch a beginning, which we might have eaſily avoided.

Now, after hearing from the pilot all theſe things, I aſked him why the Baſque had come on board of our veſſel. He told me that he came in behalf of their maſter, named Darache, and his companions, to obtain aſſurance from me that I would do them no harm, when our veſſel entered the harbor.

I replied that I could not give any until I had ſeen Pont Gravé. The Baſque ſaid that, if I had need of any thing in their power, they would aſſiſt me accordingly. What led them to uſe this language was ſimply their recognition of having done wrong, as they confeſſed, and the fear that they would not be permitted to engage in the whale-fiſhery. After talking at length, I went aſhore to ſee Pont Gravé, in order to deliberate as to what was to be done. I found him very ill. He related to me in detail all that had happened. We concluded

cluded that we could only enter the harbor by force, and that the ſettlement muſt not be given up for this year, ſo that we conſidered it beſt, in order not to make a bad cauſe out of a juſt one, and thus work our ruin, to give them aſſurances on my part ſo long as I ſhould remain there, and that Pont Gravé ſhould undertake nothing againſt them, but that juſtice ſhould be done in France, and their differences ſhould be ſettled there.

Darache, maſter of the veſſel, begged me to go on board, where he gave me a cordial reception. After a long conference, I ſecured an agreement between Pont Gravé and him, and required him to promiſe that he would undertake nothing againſt Pont Gravé, or what would be prejudicial to the King and Sieur de Monts; that, if he did the contrary, I ſhould regard my promiſe as null and void. This was agreed to, and ſigned by each.

In this place were a number of ſavages who had come for traffic in furs, ſeveral of whom came to our veſſel with their canoes, which are from eight to nine paces long, and about a pace or pace and a half broad in the middle, growing narrower towards the two ends. They are very apt to turn over, in caſe one does not underſtand managing them, and are made of birch bark, ſtrengthened on the inſide by little ribs of white cedar, very neatly arranged; they are ſo light that a man can eaſily carry one. Each can carry a weight equal to that of a pipe. When they want to go overland to a river where they have buſineſs, they carry them with them. From Choüacoet along the coaſt as far as the harbor of Tadouſſac, they are all alike.

CHAPTER II.

CHAPTER II.

OF THE RIVER SAGUENAY, AND THE SAVAGES WHO VISITED US THERE. — OF THE ISLAND OF ORLEANS, AND ALL THAT WE OBSERVED THERE WORTHY OF NOTE.

AFTER this agreement, I had ſome carpenters ſet to work to fit up a little barque of twelve or fourteen tons, for carrying all that was needed for our ſettlement, which, however, could not be got ready before the laſt of June.

Meanwhile, I managed to viſit ſome parts of the river Saguenay, a fine river, which has the incredible depth of ſome one hundred and fifty to two hundred fathoms.[293] About fifty leagues from the mouth of the harbor, there is, as is ſaid, a great waterfall, deſcending from a very high elevation with great impetuoſity. There are ſome iſlands in this river, very barren, being only rocks covered with ſmall firs and heathers. It is half a league broad in places, and a quarter of a league at its mouth, where the current is ſo ſtrong that at three-quarters flood-tide in the river it is ſtill running out. All the land that I have ſeen conſiſts only of mountains and rocky

[293] The deepeſt ſounding as laid down on Laurie's Chart is one hundred and forty-ſix fathoms. The ſame authority ſays the banks of the river throughout its courſe are very rocky, and vary in height from one hundred and ſeventy to three hundred and forty yards above the ſtream. Its current is broad, deep, and uncommonly vehement: in ſome places, where precipices intervene, are falls from fifty to ſixty feet in height, down which the whole volume of water ruſhes with tremendous fury and noiſe. The general breadth of the river is about two and a half miles, but at its mouth its width is contracted to three-quarters of a mile. The tide runs upward about ſixty-five miles from its mouth.

rocky promontories, for the moſt part covered with fir and birch, a very unattractive country on both ſides of the river. In a word, it is mere waſtes, uninhabited by either animals or birds; for, going out hunting in places which ſeemed to me the moſt pleaſant, I found only ſome very ſmall birds, ſuch as ſwallows and river birds, which go there in ſummer. At other times, there are none whatever, in conſequence of the exceſſive cold. This river flows from the north-weſt.

The ſavages told me that, after paſſing the firſt fall, they meet with eight others, when they go a day's journey without finding any. Then they paſs ten others, and enter a lake,[294] which they are three days in croſſing, and they are eaſily able to make ten leagues a day up ſtream. At the end of the lake there dwells a migratory people. Of the three rivers which flow into this lake, one comes from the north, very near the ſea, where they conſider it much colder than in their own country; and the other two from other directions in the interior,[295] where are migratory ſavages, living only from hunting, and where our ſavages carry the merchandiſe we give them for their furs, ſuch as beaver, marten, lynx, and otter, which are found there in large numbers, and which they

[294] If the Indians were three days in croſſing Lake St. John here referred to, whoſe length is variouſly ſtated to be from twenty-five to forty miles, it could hardly have been the ſhorteſt time in which it were poſſible to paſs it. It may have been the uſual time, ſome of which they gave to fiſhing or hunting. "In 1647, Father Jean Duquen, miſſionary at Tadouſſac, aſcending the Saguenay, diſcovered the Lake St. John, and noted its Indian name, Picouagami, or Flat Lake. He was the firſt European who beheld that magnificent expanſe of inland water." —*Vide Tranſactions, Lit. and His. Soc. of Quebec*, 1867–68, p. 5.

[295] The firſt of theſe three rivers, which the traveller will meet as he paſſes up the northern ſhore of the lake, is the Peribonca flowing from the north-eaſt. The ſecond is the Miſtaſſina, repreſented by the Indians as coming from the ſalt ſea. The third is the Chomouchonan, flowing from the north-weſt.

they then carry to our veſſels. Theſe people of the north report to our ſavages that they ſee the ſalt ſea; and, if that is true, as I think it certainly is, it can be nothing but a gulf entering the interior on the north.[296] The ſavages ſay that the diſtance from the north ſea to the port of Tadouſſac is perhaps forty-five or fifty days' journey, in conſequence of the difficulties preſented by the roads, rivers, and country, which is very mountainous, and where there is ſnow for the moſt part of the year. This is what I have definitely aſcertained in regard to this river. I have often wiſhed to explore it, but could not do ſo without the ſavages, who were unwilling that I or any of our party ſhould accompany them. Nevertheleſs, they have promiſed that I ſhall do ſo. This exploration would be deſirable, in order to remove the doubts of many perſons in regard to the exiſtence of this ſea on the north,

---

CHAMPLAIN'S EXPLANATION OF THE ACCOMPANYING MAP.

PORT DE TADOUCAC.

The figures indicate the fathoms of water.

A. A round mountain on the bank of the river Saguenay. *B.* The harbor of Tadouſſac. *C.* A ſmall freſh-water brook. *D.* The encampment of the ſavages when they come to traffic. *E.* A peninſula partly encloſing the port of the river Saguenay. *F.* Point of All Devils. *G.* The river Saguenay. *H.* Point aux Alouettes. *I.* Very rough mountains covered with firs and beeches. *L.* The mill Bode. *M.* The roadſtead where veſſels anchor while waiting for wind and tide. *N.* A little pond near the harbor. *O.* A ſmall brook coming from the pond and flowing into the Saguenay. *P.* Place without trees near the point where there is a quantity of graſs.

---

[296] There was doubtleſs an Indian trail from the head-waters of the Miſtaſſina to Miſtaſſin Lake, and from thence to Rupert River, which flows into the lower part of Hudſon's Bay.

north, where it is maintained that the Engliſh have gone in theſe latter years to find a way to China.[297]

I ſet out from Tadouſſac the laſt day of the month to go to Quebec.[298] We paſſed near an iſland called Hare Iſland,[299] diſtant ſix leagues from the above-named port: it is two leagues from the northern, and nearly four leagues from the ſouthern ſhore. From Hare Iſland we proceeded to a little river, dry at low tide, up which ſome ſeven hundred or eight hundred paces there are two falls. We named it Salmon River,[300] ſince we caught ſome of theſe fiſh in it. Coaſting along the north ſhore, we came to a point extending into the river, which we called Cap Dauphin,[301] diſtant three leagues from Salmon River. Thence we proceeded to another, which we

[297] The ſalt ſea referred to by the Indians was undoubtedly Hudſon's Bay. The diſcoverer of this bay, Henry Hudſon, in the years 1607, 1608, and 1609, was in the northern ocean ſearching for a paſſage to Cathay. In 1610, he diſcovered the ſtrait and bay which now bear his name. He paſſed the winter in the ſouthern part of the bay; and the next year, 1611, his ſailors in a mutiny forced him and his officers into a ſhallop and abandoned them to periſh. Nothing was heard of them afterward. The fame of Hudſon's diſcovery had reached Champlain before the publication of this volume in 1613. This will be apparent by comparing Champlain's ſmall map with the TABULA NAUTICA of Hudſon, publiſhed in 1612. It will be ſeen that the whole of the Carte Géographique de la Nouvelle France of Champlain, on the weſt of Lumley's Inlet, including Hudſon's Strait and Bay, is a copy from the Tabula Nautica. Even the names are in Engliſh, a few characteriſtic ones being omitted, ſuch as Prince Henry, the King's Forlant, and Cape Charles. — *Vide Henry Hudſon the Navigator*, by G. M. Aſher, LL.D., Hakluyt Society, 1860, p. xliv.

[298] This was June 30, 1608.

[299] *Iſle aux Lièvres*, or hares. This name was given by Jacques Cartier, and it is ſtill called Hare Iſland. It is about ten geographical miles long, and generally about half or three-quarters of a mile wide.

[300] *Rivière aux Saulmons.* "From all appearances," ſays Laverdière, "this Salmon River is that which empties into the 'Port à l'Équilles,' eel harbor, alſo called 'Port aux Quilles,' Skittles Port. Its mouth is two leagues from Cape Salmon, with which it must not be confounded." It is now known as Black River.

[301] *Cap Dauphin*, now called Cape Salmon, which is about three leagues from Black River.

we named Eagle Cape,[302] diſtant eight leagues from Cap Dauphin. Between the two there is a large bay,[303] at the extremity of which is a little river dry at low tide. From Eagle Cape we proceeded to Iſle aux Coudres,[304] a good league diſtant, which is about a league and a half long. It is nearly level, and grows narrower towards the two ends. On the weſtern end there are meadows, and rocky points extending ſome diſtance out into the river. On the ſouth-weſt ſide it is very reefy, yet very pleaſant in conſequence of the woods ſurrounding it. It is diſtant about half a league from the northern ſhore, where is a little river extending ſome diſtance into the interior. We named it Rivière du Gouffre,[305] ſince abreaſt of it the tide runs with extraordinary rapidity; and, although it has a calm appearance, it is always much agitated, the depth there being great: but the river itſelf is ſhallow, and there are many rocks at and about its mouth. Coaſting along from Iſle aux Coudres, we reached a cape which we named Cap de Tourmente,[306] five leagues diſtant; and

[302] *Cap à l'Aigle*, now known as Cap aux Oies, or Gooſe Cape. The Eagle Cape of to-day is little more than two leagues from Cape Salmon, while Gooſe Cape is about eight leagues, as ſtated in the text.

[303] The bay ſtretching between Cape Salmon and Gooſe Cape is called Mal Bay, within which are Cape Eagle, Murray Bay, Point au Pies, White Cape, Red Cape, Black Cape, Point Père, Point Corneille, and Little Mal Bay. In the rear of Gooſe Cape are Les Éboulemens Mountains, 2,547 feet in height. On the oppoſite ſide of the river is Point Ouelle, and the river of the ſame name.

[304] *Iſle aux Coudres*, Hazel Iſland, ſo named by Jacques Cartier, ſtill retains its ancient appellation. Its diſtance from Gooſe Cape is about two leagues. The deſcription of it in the text is very accurate.

[305] *Rivière du Gouffre.* This river ſtill retains this name, ſignifying whirlpool, and is the ſame that empties into St. Paul's Bay, oppoſite Iſle aux Coudres.

[306] *Cap de Tourmente*, cape of the tempeſt, is eight leagues from Iſle aux Coudres, but about two from the Iſle of Orleans, as ſtated in the text, which ſufficiently identifies it.

and we gave it this name becauſe, however little wind there may be, the water riſes there as if it were full tide. At this point, the water begins to be freſh. Thence we proceeded to the Iſland of Orleans,[307] a diſtance of two leagues, on the ſouth ſide of which are numerous iſlands, low, covered with trees and very pleaſant, with large meadows, having plenty of game, ſome being, ſo far as I could judge, two leagues in length, others a trifle more or leſs. About theſe iſlands are many rocks, alſo very dangerous ſhallows, ſome two leagues diſtant from the main land on the ſouth. All this ſhore, both north and ſouth, from Tadouſſac to the Iſland of Orleans, is mountainous, and the ſoil very poor. The wood is pine, fir, and birch only, with very ugly rocks, ſo that in moſt places one could not make his way.

Now we paſſed along ſouth of the Iſland of Orleans, which is a league and a half diſtant from the main land and half a league on the north ſide, being ſix leagues in length, and one in breadth, or in ſome places a league and a half. On the north ſide, it is very pleaſant, on account of the great extent of woods and meadows there; but it is very dangerous ſailing, in conſequence of the numerous points and rocks between the main land and iſland, on which are numerous fine oaks and

[307] *Iſle d'Orléans.* Cartier diſcovered this iſland in 1635, and named it the Iſland of Bacchus, becauſe he ſaw vines growing there, which he had not before ſeen in that region. He ſays, "Et pareillement y trouuaſmes force vignes, ce que n'auyons veu par cy deuant à toute la terre, & par ce la nommaſmes l'yſle de Bacchus." — *Brief Récit de la Navigation Faite en* MDXXXV., par Jacques Cartier, D'Avezac ed., Paris, 1863, pp. 14, 15. The grape found here was probably the Froſt Grape, *Vitis cordifolia.* The "Iſland of Orleans" ſoon became the fixed name of this iſland, which it ſtill retains. Its Indian name is ſaid to have been *Minigo.* — *Vide* Laverdière's intereſting note, *Œuvres de Champlain*, Tome II. p. 24. Champlain's eſtimate of the ſize of the iſland is nearly accurate. It is, according to the Admiralty charts, ſeventeen marine miles in length, and four in its greateſt width.

and in ſome places nut-trees, and on the borders of the woods vines and other trees ſuch as we have in France. This place is the commencement of the fine and fertile country of the great river, and is diſtant one hundred and twenty leagues from its mouth. Off the end of the iſland is a torrent of water on the north ſhore, proceeding from a lake ten leagues in the interior:[308] it comes down from a height of nearly twenty-five fathoms, above which the land is level and pleaſant, although farther inland are ſeen high mountains appearing to be from fifteen to twenty leagues diſtant.

CHAPTER III.

ARRIVAL AT QUEBEC, WHERE WE CONSTRUCTED OUR PLACE OF ABODE; ITS SITUATION. — CONSPIRACY AGAINST THE SERVICE OF THE KING AND MY LIFE BY SOME OF OUR MEN. — PUNISHMENT OF THEM, AND ALL THAT TRANSPIRED IN THE AFFAIR.

FROM the Iſland of Orleans to Quebec the diſtance is a league. I arrived there on the 3d of July, when I ſearched for a place ſuitable for our ſettlement, but I could find none more convenient or better ſituated than the point of Quebec,

[308] This was the river Montmorency, which riſes in Snow Lake, ſome fifty miles in the interior. — *Vide* Champlain's reference on his map of Quebec and its environs. He gave this name to the river, which it ſtill retains, in honor of the Admiral Montmorency, to whom he dedicated his notes on the voyage of 1603. — *Vide Laverdière, in loco;* alſo *Champlain*, ed. 1632; *Charlevoix's Letters*, London, 1763, p. 19. The following is Jean Alfonſe's deſcription of the fall of Montmorency: "When thou art come to the end of the Iſle, thou ſhalt ſee a great River, which falleth fifteene or twenty fathoms downe from a rocke, and maketh a terrible noyſe."—*Hakluyt*, Vol. III. p. 293. The perpendicular deſcent of the Montmorency at the falls is 240 feet.

Quebec, ſo called by the ſavages,[309] which was covered with nut-trees. I at once employed a portion of our workmen in cutting

---

Champlain's Explanation of the accompanying Map.

Quebec.

The figures indicate the fathoms of water.

A. The ſite where our habitation is built.[1] *B*. Cleared land where we ſow wheat and other grain.[2] *C*. The gardens.[3] *D*. Small brook coming from marſhes.[4] *E*. River where Jacques Cartier paſſed the winter, which in his time he called St. Croix, and which name has been transferred to a place fifteen leagues above Quebec.[5] *F*. River of the marſhes.[6] *G*. Place where was collected the graſs for the animals brought here.[7] *H*. The grand fall of Montmorency, which deſcends from a height of more than twenty-five fathoms into the river.[8] *I*. The end of the Iſland of Orleans. *L*. A very narrow point on the ſhore eaſt of Quebec.[9] *M*. Roaring river which extends to the Etechemins. *N*. The great river of St. Lawrence. *O*. Lake in the roaring river. *P*. Mountains in the interior; bay which I named New Biſcay. *q*. Lake of the great fall of Montmorency.[10] *R*. Bear Brook.[11] *S*. Brook du Gendre.[12] *T*. Meadows overflowed at every tide. *V*. Mont du Gas, very high, ſituated on the bank of the river.[13] *X*. Swift brook, adapted to all kinds of mills. *Y*. Gravelly ſhore where a quantity of diamonds are found ſomewhat better than thoſe of Alanſon. *Z*. The Point of Diamonds. 9. Places where the ſavages often build their cabins.[14]

Notes. The following notes on Champlain's explanation of his map of Quebec are by the Abbé Laverdière, whoſe accurate knowledge of that city and its

---

[309] Champlain here plainly means to ſay that the Indians call the narrow place in the river *Quebec*. For this meaning of the word, viz. narrowing of waters, in the Algonquin language, the authority is abundant. Laverdière quotes, as agreeing with him in this view, Bellenger, Ferland, and Leſcarbot. "The narrowing of the river," ſays Charlevoix, "gave it the name of *Quebeio* or *Quebec*, which in the *Algonquin* language ſignifies *contraction*. The Abenaquis, whoſe language is a dialect of the Algonquin, call it Quelibec, which ſignifies ſomething ſhut up."—*Charlevoix's Letters*, pp. 18, 19. Alfred Hawkins, in his "Hiſtorical Recollections of Quebec," regards the word of Norman origin, which he finds on a ſeal of the Duke of Suffolk, as early as 1420. The theory is ingenious; but it requires ſome other characteriſtic hiſtorical facts to challenge our belief. When Cartier viſited Quebec, it was called by the natives Stadacone.—*Vide Cartier's Brief Récit*, 1545, D'Avezac ed., Paris, 1863, p. 14.

cutting them down, that we might conſtruct our habitation there: one I ſet to ſawing boards, another to making a cellar and digging ditches, another I ſent to Tadouſſac with the barque to get ſupplies. The firſt thing we made was the ſtorehouſe for keeping under cover our ſupplies, which was promptly accompliſhed through the zeal of all, and my attention to the work.

Some days after my arrival at Quebec, a lockſmith conſpired againſt the ſervice of the king. His plan was to put me

its environs renders them eſpecially valuable. They are given entire, with only ſlight modifications. [1] That is properly the point of Quebec, including what is at preſent encloſed by La Place, the ſtreet Notre Dame, and the river. [2] This firſt clearing muſt have been what was called later the Eſplanade du Fort, or Grande Place, or perhaps both. The Grande Place became, in 1658, the fort of the Hurons: it was the ſpace included between the Côte of the lower town and the Rue du Fort. [3] A little above the gardens, on the ſlope of the Côte du Saut au Matelot, a croſs is ſeen, which ſeems to indicate that at that time the cemetery was where it is ſaid to be when it is mentioned ſome years later for the firſt time. [4] According to the old plans of Quebec, theſe marſhes were repreſented to be weſt of Mont Carmel, and at the foot of the glacis of the Citadel. The brook paſſed eaſtward of the grounds of the Urſulines and Jéſuites, followed for ſome diſtance the Rue de la Fabrique as far as the encloſure of the Hôtel Dieu, to the eaſt of which it ran down the hill towards the foot of the Côte de la Canoterie. [5] The river St. Charles. The letter E does not indicate preciſely the place where Jacques Quartier wintered, but only the mouth of the river. [6] Judging from the outlines of the ſhore, this brook, which came from the ſouth-weſt, flowed into the harbor of the Palais, towards the weſtern extremity of the Parc. [7] This is probably what was called later the barn of the Meſſieurs de la Compagnie, or ſimply La Grange, and appears to have been ſomewhere on the avenue of Mont Carmel. [8] The fall of Montmorency is forty fathoms or two hundred and forty French feet, or even more. [9] Hence it is ſeen that in 1613 this point had as yet no name. In 1629, Champlain calls it Cap de Lévis: it can accordingly be concluded that this point derives its name from that of the Duc de Ventadour, Henri de Lévis, and that it must have been ſo named between the years 1625 and 1627, the time when he was regent. [10] The Lake of the Snows is the ſource of the weſtern branch of the Rivière du Saut. [11] La Rivière de Beauport, which is called likewiſe La Diſtillerie. [12] Called later Ruiſſeau de la Cabane aux Taupiers, Rivière Chaliſour, and finally Rivière des Fous, from the new inſane aſylum, by the ſite of which it now paſſes. [13] Height where is now ſituated the baſtion of the Roi à la Citadelle. This name was given it, doubtleſs, in memory of M. de Monts, Pierre du Guaſt. [14] This figure appears not only at the Point du Cap Diamant, but alſo along the ſhore of Beauport, and at the end of the Iſland of Orleans.

me to death, and, getting poſſeſſion of our fort, to put it into the hands of the Baſques or Spaniards, then at Tadouſſac, beyond which veſſels cannot go, from not having a knowledge of the route, nor of the banks and rocks on the way.

In order to execute his wretched plan, by which he hoped to make his fortune, he ſuborned four of the worſt characters, as he ſuppoſed, telling them a thouſand falſehoods, and preſenting to them proſpects of acquiring riches.

Theſe four men, having been won over, all promiſed to act in ſuch a manner as to gain the reſt over to their ſide; ſo that, for the time being, I had no one with me in whom I could put confidence, which gave them ſtill more hope of making their plan ſucceed: for four or five of my companions, in whom they knew that I put confidence, were on board of the barques, for the purpoſe of protecting the proviſions and ſupplies neceſſary for our ſettlement.

In a word, they were ſo ſkilful in carrying out their intrigues with thoſe who remained, that they were on the point of gaining all over to their cauſe, even my lackey, promiſing them many things which they could not have fulfilled.

Being now all agreed, they made daily different plans as to how they ſhould put me to death, ſo as not to be accuſed of it, which they found to be a difficult thing. But the devil, blindfolding them all and taking away their reaſon and every poſſible difficulty, they determined to take me while unarmed, and ſtrangle me; or to give a falſe alarm at night, and ſhoot me as I went out, in which manner they judged that they would accompliſh their work ſooner than otherwiſe. They made a mutual promiſe not to betray each other, on penalty that the firſt one who opened his mouth ſhould be poniarded.

They were to execute their plan in four days, before the arrival of our barques, otherwiſe they would have been unable to carry out their ſcheme.

On this very day, one of our barques arrived, with our pilot, Captain Teſtu, a very diſcreet man. After the barque was unloaded, and ready to return to Tadouſſac, there came to him a lockſmith, named Natel, an aſſociate of Jean du Val, the head of the conſpiracy, who told him that he had promiſed the reſt to do juſt as they did; but that he did not in fact deſire the execution of the plot, yet did not dare to make a diſcloſure in regard to it, from fear of being poniarded.

Antoine Natel made the pilot promiſe that he would make no diſcloſure in regard to what he ſhould ſay, ſince, if his companions ſhould diſcover it, they would put him to death. The pilot gave him his aſſurance in all particulars, and aſked him to ſtate the character of the plot which they wiſhed to carry out. This Natel did at length, when the pilot ſaid to him: "My friend, you have done well to diſcloſe ſuch a malicious deſign, and you ſhow that you are an upright man, and under the guidance of the Holy Spirit. But theſe things cannot be paſſed by without bringing them to the knowledge of Sieur de Champlain, that he may make proviſion againſt them; and I promiſe you that I will prevail upon him to pardon you and the reſt. And I will at once," ſaid the pilot, "go to him without exciting any ſuſpicion; and do you go about your buſineſs, liſtening to all they may ſay, and not troubling yourſelf about the reſt."

The pilot came at once to me, in a garden which I was having prepared, and ſaid that he wiſhed to ſpeak to me in a private place, where we could be alone. I readily aſſented, and

and we went into the wood, where he related to me the whole affair. I asked who had told it to him. He begged me to pardon him who had made the diſcloſure, which I conſented to do, although he ought to have addreſſed himſelf to me. He was afraid, he replied, that you would become angry, and harm him. I told him that I was able to govern myſelf better than that, in ſuch a matter; and deſired him to have the man come to me, that I might hear his ſtatement. He went, and brought him all trembling with fear leſt I ſhould do him ſome harm. I reaſſured him, telling him not to be afraid; that he was in a place of ſafety, and that I ſhould pardon him for all that he had done, together with the others, provided he would tell me in full the truth in regard to the whole matter, and the motive which had impelled them to it. "Nothing," he ſaid, "had impelled them, except that they had imagined that, by giving up the place into the hands of the Baſques or Spaniards, they might all become rich, and that they did not want to go back to France." He alſo related to me the remaining particulars in regard to their conſpiracy.

After having heard and queſtioned him, I directed him to go about his work. Meanwhile, I ordered the pilot to bring up his ſhallop, which he did. Then I gave two bottles of wine to a young man, directing him to ſay to theſe four worthies, the leaders of the conſpiracy, that it was a preſent of wine, which his friends at Tadouſſac had given him, and that he wiſhed to ſhare it with them. This they did not decline, and at evening were on board the barque where he was to give them the entertainment. I loſt no time in going there ſhortly after; and cauſed them to be ſeized, and held until the next day. Then

Then were my worthies aſtoniſhed indeed. I at once had all get up, for it was about ten o'clock in the evening, and pardoned them all, on condition that they would diſclofe to me the truth in regard to all that had occurred; which they did, when I had them retire.

The next day I took the depoſitions of all, one after the other, in the preſence of the pilot and ſailors of the veſſel, which I had put down in writing; and they were well pleaſed, as they ſaid, ſince they had lived only in fear of each other, eſpecially of the four knaves who had enſnared them. But now they lived in peace, ſatisfied, as they declared, with the treatment which they had received.

The ſame day I had ſix pairs of handcuffs made for the authors of the conſpiracy: one for our ſurgeon, named Bonnerme, one for another, named La Taille, whom the four conſpirators had accuſed, which, however, proved falſe, and conſequently they were given their liberty.

This being done, I took my worthies to Tadouſſac, begging Pont Gravé to do me the favor of guarding them, ſince I had as yet no ſecure place for keeping them, and as we were occupied in conſtructing our places of abode. Another object was to conſult with him, and others on the ſhip, as to what ſhould be done in the premiſes. We ſuggeſted that, after he had finiſhed his work at Tadouſſac, he ſhould come to Quebec with the priſoners, where we ſhould have them confronted with their witneſſes, and, after giving them a hearing, order juſtice to be done according to the offence which they had committed.

I went back the next day to Quebec, to haſten the completion of our ſtorehouſe, ſo as to ſecure our proviſions, which

which had been miſuſed by all thoſe ſcoundrels, who ſpared nothing, without reflecting how they could find more when theſe failed; for I could not obviate the difficulty until the ſtorehouſe ſhould be completed and ſhut up.

Pont Gravé arrived ſome time after me, with the priſoners, which cauſed uneaſiness to the workmen who remained, ſince they feared that I ſhould pardon them, and that they would avenge themſelves upon them for revealing their wicked deſign.

We had them brought face to face, and they affirmed before them all which they had ſtated in their depoſitions, the priſoners not denying it, but admitting that they had acted in a wicked manner, and ſhould be puniſhed, unleſs mercy might be exerciſed towards them; accurſing, above all, Jean du Val, who had been trying to lead them into ſuch a conſpiracy from the time of their departure from France. Du Val knew not what to ſay, except that he deſerved death, that all ſtated in the depoſitions was true, and that he begged for mercy upon himſelf and the others, who had given in their adherence to his pernicious purpoſes.

After Pont Gravé and I, the captain of the veſſel, ſurgeon, mate, ſecond mate, and other ſailors, had heard their depoſitions and face to face ſtatements, we adjudged that it would be enough to put to death Du Val, as the inſtigator of the conſpiracy; and that he might ſerve as an example to thoſe who remained, leading them to deport themſelves correctly in future, in the diſcharge of their duty; and that the Spaniards and Baſques, of whom there were large numbers in the country, might not glory in the event. We adjudged that the three others be condemned to be hung, but that they ſhould

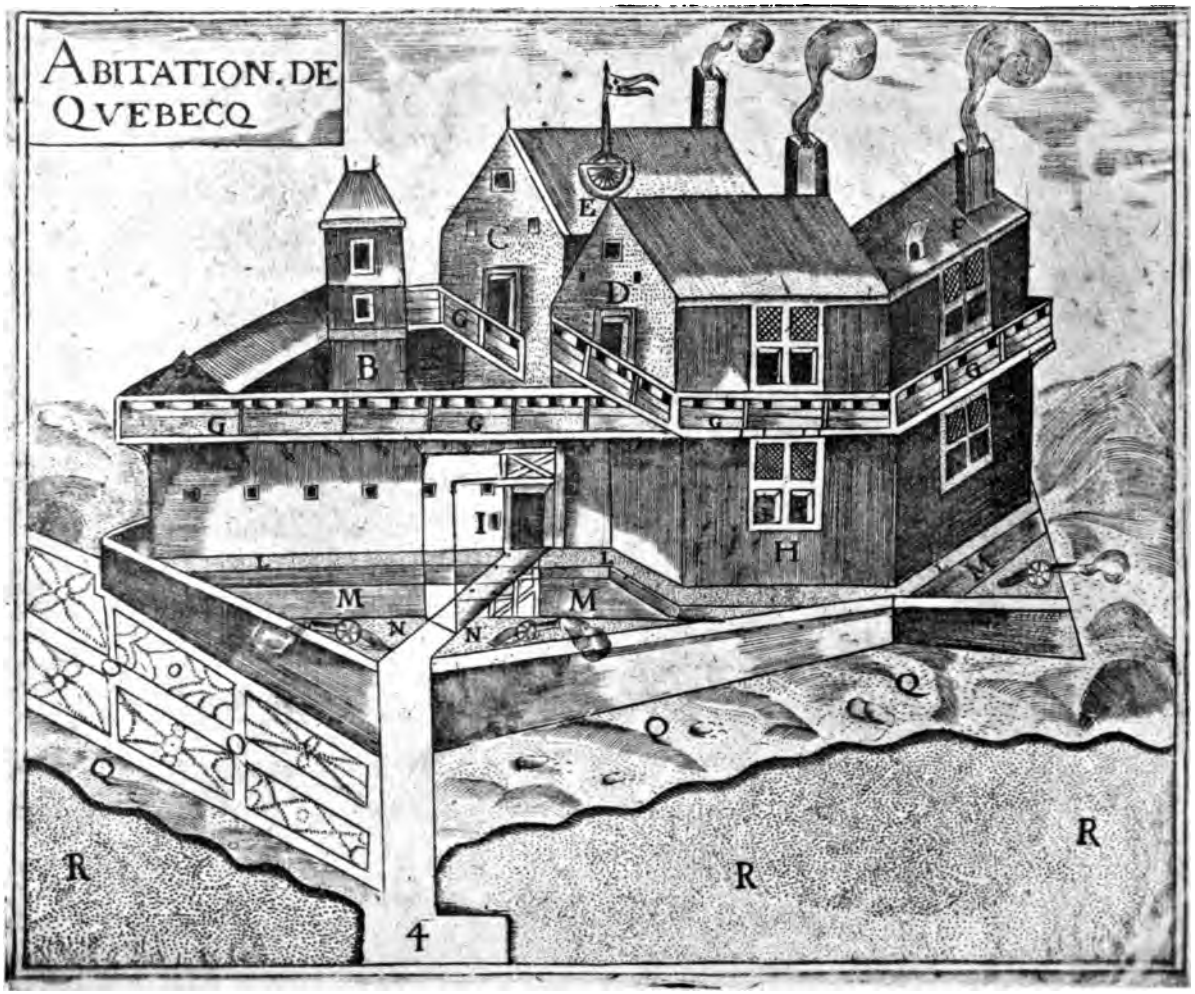
ſhould be taken to France and put into the hands of Sieur de Monts, that ſuch ample juſtice might be done them as he ſhould recommend; that they ſhould be ſent with all the evidence and their ſentence, as well as that of Jean du Val, who was ſtrangled and hung at Quebec, and his head was put on the end of a pike, to be ſet up in the moſt conſpicuous place on our fort.

CHAPTER IV.

RETURN OF PONT GRAVÉ TO FRANCE. — DESCRIPTION OF OUR QUARTERS AND THE PLACE WHERE JACQUES CARTIER STAYED IN 1535.

AFTER all theſe occurrences, Pont Gravé ſet out from Quebec, on the 18th of September, to return to France with the three priſoners. After he had gone, all who remained conducted themſelves correctly in the diſcharge of their duty.

I had the work on our quarters continued, which was compoſed of three buildings of two ſtories. Each one was three fathoms long, and two and a half wide. The ſtore-houſe was ſix fathoms long and three wide, with a fine cellar ſix feet deep. I had a gallery made all around our buildings, on the outſide, at the ſecond ſtory, which proved very convenient. There were alſo ditches, fifteen feet wide and ſix deep. On the outer ſide of the ditches, I conſtructed ſeveral ſpurs, which encloſed a part of the dwelling, at the points where we placed our cannon. Before the habitation there is a place four fathoms wide and ſix or ſeven long, looking out upon the river-bank. Surrounding the habitation are very good gardens, and a place on the north ſide ſome hundred or hundred


ABITATION. DE
QVEBECQ
A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
4

hundred and twenty paces long and fifty or ſixty wide. Moreover, near Quebec, there is a little river, coming from a lake in the interior,[310] diſtant ſix or ſeven leagues from our ſettlement. I am of opinion that this river, which is north a quarter north-weſt from our ſettlement, is the place where Jacques Cartier

---

CHAMPLAIN'S EXPLANATION OF THE ACCOMPANYING MAP.

HABITATION DE QUEBECQ.

A. The ſtorehouſe. *B*. Dove-cote. *C*. A building where our arms are kept, and for lodging our workmen. *D*. Another building for our workmen. *E*. Dial. *F*. Another building, compriſing the blackſmith's ſhop and the lodgings of the mechanics. *G*. Galleries extending entirely round the dwellings. *H*. The dwelling of Sieur de Champlain. *I*. Gate to the habitation where there is a drawbridge. *L*. Promenade about the habitation ten feet wide, extending to the border of the moat. *M*. Moat extending all round our habitation. *N*. Platforms, of a tenaille form, for our cannon. *O*. Garden of Sieur de Champlain. *P*. The kitchen. *Q*. Open ſpace before the habitation on the bank of the river. *R*. The great river St. Lawrence.

---

[310] The river St. Charles flows from a lake in the interior of the ſame name. It was called by the Montagnais, according to Sagard as cited by Laverdière, *in loco*, "Cabirecoubat, becauſe it turns and forms ſeveral points." Cartier named it the Holy Croſs, or St. Croix, becauſe he ſays he arrived there "that day;" that is, the day on which the exaltation of the Croſs is celebrated, the 14th of September, 1535. — *Vide Cartier*, Hakluyt, Vol. III. p. 266. The Récollects gave it the name of St. Charles, after the grand vicar of Pontoiſe, Charles des Boues. — *Laverdière, in loco.* Jacques Cartier wintered on the north ſhore of the St. Charles, which he called the St. Croix, or the Holy Croſs, about a league from Quebec. "Hard by, there is, in that riuer, one place very narrow, deep, and ſwift running, but it is not paſſing the third part of a league, ouer againſt the which there is a goodly high piece of land, with a towne therein: and the country about it is very well tilled and wrought, and as good as poſſibly can be ſeene. This is the place and abode of Donnacona, and of our two men we took in our firſt voyage, it is called Stadacona, . . . vnder which towne toward the North the riuer and port of the holy croſſe is, where we ſtaied from the 15 of September vntil the 16 of May, 1536, and there our ſhips remained dry as we ſaid before." — *Vide Jacques Cartier, Second Voyage*, Hakluyt, Vol. III. p. 277.

Cartier wintered,[811] ſince there are ſtill, a league up the river, remains of what ſeems to have been a chimney, the foundation of which has been found, and indications of there having been ditches ſurrounding their dwelling, which was ſmall. We found, alſo, large pieces of hewn, worm-eaten timber, and ſome three or four cannon-balls. All theſe things ſhow clearly that there was a ſettlement there founded by Chriſtians; and what leads me to ſay and believe that it was that of Jacques Cartier is the fact that there is no evidence whatever that any one wintered and built a houſe in theſe places except Jacques Cartier, at the time of his diſcoveries. This place, as I think, muſt have been called St. Croix, as he named it; which name has ſince been tranſferred to another place fifteen leagues weſt of our ſettlement. But there is no evidence of his having wintered in the place now called St. Croix, nor in any other there, ſince in this direction there is no river or other place large enough for veſſels except the main river or that of which I ſpoke above; here there is half a fathom of water at low tide, many rocks, and a bank at the mouth; for veſſels, if kept in the main river, where there are ſtrong currents and tides, and ice in the winter, drifting along, would run the riſk of being loſt; eſpecially as there is a ſandy point extending out into the river, and filled with rocks, between which we have found, within the last three years, a paſſage not before diſcovered; but one muſt go through cautiouſly, in conſequence of the dangerous points there. This place is expoſed to the north-weſt winds; and

[811] The ſpot where Jacques Cartier wintered was at the junction of the river Lairet and the St. Charles.

and the river runs as if it were a fall, the tide ebbing two and a half fathoms. There are no ſigns of buildings here, nor any indications that a man of judgment would ſettle in this place, there being many other better ones, in caſe one were obliged to make a permanent ſtay. I have been deſirous of ſpeaking at length on this point, ſince many believe that the abode of Jacques Cartier was here, which I do not believe, for the reaſons here given; for Cartier would have left to poſterity a narrative of the matter, as he did in the caſe of all he ſaw and diſcovered; and I maintain that my opinion is the true one, as can be ſhown by the hiſtory which he has left in writing.

As ſtill farther proof that this place now called St. Croix is not the place where Jacques Cartier wintered, as moſt perſons think, this is what he ſays about it in his diſcoveries, taken from his hiſtory; namely, that he arrived at the Iſle aux Coudres on the 5th of December,[312] 1535, which he called by this name, as hazel-nuts were found there. There is a ſtrong tidal current in this place; and he ſays that it is three leagues long, but it is quite enough to reckon a league and a half. On the 7th of the month, Notre Dame Day,[313] he ſet out from this iſland to go up the river, in which he ſaw fourteen iſlands, diſtant ſeven or eight leagues from Iſle aux Coudres on

[312] Cartier diſcovered the Iſle of Coudres, that is, the iſle of filberts or hazel-nuts, on the 6th of September, 1535. — *Vide Cartier*, 1545, D'Avezac ed., Paris, 1863, p. 12. This iſland is five nautical miles long, which agrees with the ſtatement of Champlain, and its greateſt width is two miles and a quarter.

[313] Notre Dame Day, *iour de noſtre dame*, ſhould read "Notre Dame Eve." Cartier ſays, "*Le ſeptieſme iour dudict moys iour noſtre-dame*," etc. — *Idem*, p. 12. Hakluyt renders it, "The ſeuenth of the moneth being our Ladees euen." — Vol. III. p. 265.

on the ſouth. He errs ſomewhat in this eſtimation, for it is not more than three leagues.[314] He alſo ſays that the place where the iſlands are is the commencement of the land or province of Canada, and that he reached an iſland ten leagues long and five wide, where extenſive fiſheries are carried on, fiſh being here, in fact, very abundant, eſpecially the ſturgeon. But its length is not more than ſix leagues, and its breadth two; a fact well recognized now. He ſays alſo that he anchored between this iſland and the main land on the north, the ſmalleſt paſſage, and a dangerous one, where he landed two ſavages whom he had taken to France, and that, after ſtopping in this place ſome time with the people of the country, he ſent for his barques and went farther up the river, with the tide, ſeeking a harbor and place of ſecurity for his ſhips. He ſays, farther, that they went on up the river, coaſting along this iſland, the length of which he eſtimates at ten leagues; and after it was paſſed they found a very fine and pleaſant bay, containing a little river and bar harbor, which they found very favorable for ſheltering their veſſels. This they named St. Croix, ſince he arrived there on this day; and at the time of the voyage of Cartier the place was called Stadaca,[315] but we now call it Quebec. He ſays, alſo, that after he had examined this place he returned to get his veſſels for paſſing the winter there.

Now we may conclude, accordingly, that the diſtance is only

[314] As Champlain ſuggeſts, theſe iſlands are only three leagues higher up the river; but, as they are on the oppoſite ſide, they could not be compaſſed in much leſs than ſeven or eight leagues, as Cartier eſtimates.

[315] This was an error in tranſcribing. Cartier has Stadacone. — *Vide Brief Récit*, 1545, D'Avezac ed., p. 14.

only five leagues from the Iſle aux Coudres to the Iſle of Orleans,[316] at the weſtern extremity of which the river is very broad; and at which bay, as Cartier calls it, there is no other river than that which he called St. Croix, a good league diſtant from the Iſle of Orleans, in which, at low tide, there is only half a fathom of water. It is very dangerous for veſſels at its mouth, there being a large number of ſpurs; that is, rocks ſcattered here and there. It is accordingly neceſſary to place buoys in order to enter, there being, as I have ſtated, three fathoms of water at ordinary tides, and four fathoms, or four and a half generally, at the great tides at full flood. It is only fifteen hundred paces from our habitation, which is higher up the river; and, as I have ſtated, there is no other river up to the place now called St. Croix, where veſſels can lie, there being only little brooks. The ſhores are flat and dangerous, which Cartier does not mention until the time that he ſets out from St. Croix, now called Quebec, where he left his veſſels, and built his place of abode, as is ſeen from what follows.

On the 19th of September, he ſet out from St. Croix, where his veſſels were, ſetting ſail with the tide up the river, which they found very pleaſant, as well on account of the woods, vines, and dwellings, which were there in his time, as for other reaſons. They caſt anchor twenty-five leagues from the entrance to the land of Canada;[317] that is, at the weſtern

[316] The diſtance, according to Laurie's Chart, is at leaſt twenty-ſix nautical miles.

[317] Canada at this time was regarded by the Indians as a limited territory, ſituated at or about Quebec. This ſtatement is confirmed by the teſtimony of Cartier: "Ledict Donnacona pria noſtre cappitaine de aller le lendemain veoir Canada, Ce que luy promiſt le dict cappitaine.

weſtern extremity of the Iſle of Orleans, ſo called by Cartier. What is now called St. Croix was then called Achelacy, at a narrow paſs where the river is very ſwift and dangerous on account of the rocks and other things, and which can only be paſſed at flood-tide. Its diſtance from Quebec and the river where Cartier wintered is fifteen leagues.

Now, throughout the entire extent of this river, from Quebec to the great fall, there are no narrows except at the place now called St. Croix, the name of which has been transferred from one place to another one, which is very dangerous, as my deſcription ſhows. And it is very apparent, from his narrative, that this was not the ſite of his habitation, as is claimed; but that the latter was near Quebec, and that no one had entered into a ſpecial inveſtigation of this matter before my doing ſo in my voyages. For the firſt time I was told that he dwelt in this place, I was greatly aſtoniſhed, finding no trace of a river for veſſels, as he ſtates there was. This

cappitaine. Et le lẽdemain, 13. iour du dict moys, ledict cappitaine auecques ſes gentilz hommes accompaigne de cinquante compaignons bien en ordre, allerẽt veoir ledict Donnacona & ſon peuple, qui eſt diſtãt dou eſtoient leſdictes nauires d'une lieue." —*Vide Brief Récit*, 1545, D'Avezac ed., p. 29. Of the above the following is Hakluyt's tranſlation: "Donnacona their Lord deſired our Captaine the next day to come and ſee Canada, which he promiſed to doe: for the next day being the 13 of the moneth, he with all his Gentlemen and fiftie Mariners very well appointed, went to viſite Donnacona and his people, about a league from our ſhips."

Their ſhips were at this time at St. Croix, a ſhort diſtance up the St. Charles, which flows into the St. Lawrence at Quebec; and the little Indian village, or camp, which Donnacona called Canada, was at Quebec. Other paſſages from Cartier, as well as from Jean Alfonſe, harmonize with this which we have cited. Canada was therefore in Cartier's time only the name of a very ſmall territory covered by an Indian village. When it became the centre of French intereſts, it aſſumed a wider meaning. The St. Lawrence was often called the River of Canada, then the territory on its ſhores, and finally Canada has come to comprehend the vaſt Britiſh poſſeſſions in America known as the "Dominion of Canada."

This led me to make a careful examination, in order to remove the ſuſpicion and doubt of many perſons in regard to the matter.[318]

While the carpenters, ſawers of boards, and other workmen, were employed on our quarters, I ſet all the others to work clearing up around our place of abode, in preparation for gardens in which to plant grain and ſeeds, that we might ſee how they would flouriſh, as the ſoil ſeemed to be very good.

Meanwhile, a large number of ſavages were encamped in cabins near us, engaged in fiſhing for eels, which begin to come about the 15th of September, and go away on the 15th of October. During this time, all the ſavages ſubſiſt on this food, and dry enough of it for the winter to laſt until the month of February, when there are about two and a half, or at moſt three, feet of ſnow; and, when their eels and other things which they dry have been prepared, they go to hunt the beaver until the beginning of January. At their departure for this purpoſe, they intruſted to us all their eels and other things, until their return, which was on the 15th of December. But they did not have great ſucceſs in the beaver-hunt, as the amount of water was too great, the rivers having overrun their banks, as they told us. I returned to them all their ſupplies, which laſted them only until the 20th of January. When their ſupply of eels gave out, they hunted the elk and ſuch

[318] The locality of Cartier's winter-quarters is eſtabliſhed by Champlain with the certainty of an hiſtorical demonſtration, and yet there are to be found thoſe whoſe judgment is ſo warped by preconceived opinion that they reſiſt the overwhelming teſtimony which he brings to bear upon the ſubject. Charlevoix makes the St. Croix of Cartier the Rivière de Jacques Cartier. — *Vide Shea's Charlevoix*, Vol. I. p. 116.

ſuch other wild beaſts as they could find until ſpring, when I was able to ſupply them with various things. I paid eſpecial attention to their cuſtoms.

Theſe people ſuffer ſo much from lack of food that they are ſometimes obliged to live on certain ſhell-fiſh, and eat their dogs and the ſkins with which they clothe themſelves againſt the cold. I am of opinion that, if one were to ſhow them how to live, and teach them the cultivation of the ſoil and other things, they would learn very aptly. For many of them poſſeſs good ſenſe, and anſwer properly queſtions put to them. They have a bad habit of taking vengeance, and are great liars, and you muſt not put much reliance on them, except judiciouſly, and with force at hand. They make promiſes readily, but keep their word poorly. The moſt of them obſerve no law at all, ſo far as I have been able to ſee, and are, beſides, full of ſuperſtitions. I aſked them with what ceremonies they were accuſtomed to pray to their God, when they replied that they had none, but that each prayed to him in his heart, as he wiſhed. That is why there is no law among them, and they do not know what it is to worſhip and pray to God, living as they do like brute beaſts. But I think that they would ſoon become good Chriſtians, if people would come and inhabit their country, which they are for the moſt part deſirous of. There are ſome ſavages among them, called by them Pilotois, whom they believe have intercourſe with the devil face to face, who tells them what they muſt do in regard to war and other things; and, if he ſhould order them to execute any undertaking, they would obey at once. So, alſo, they believe that all their dreams are true; and, in fact, there are many who ſay that they have had viſions and dreams about matters

matters which actually come to paſs or will do ſo. But, to tell the truth, theſe are diabolical viſions, through which they are deceived and miſled. This is all I have been able to learn about their brutiſh faith. All theſe people are well proportioned in body, without deformity, and are agile. The women, alſo, are well-formed, plump, and of a ſwarthy color, in conſequence of certain pigments with which they rub themſelves, and which give them a permanent olive color. They are dreſſed in ſkins: a part only of the body is covered. But in winter they are covered throughout, in good furs of elk, otter, beaver, bear, ſeals, deer, and roe, of which they have large quantities. In winter, when the ſnow is deep, they make a ſort of ſnow-ſhoe of large ſize, two or three times as large as that uſed in France, which they attach to their feet, thus going over the ſnow without ſinking in; otherwiſe, they could not hunt or walk in many places. They have a ſort of marriage, which is as follows: When a girl is fourteen or fifteen years old, and has ſeveral ſuitors, ſhe may keep company with all ſhe likes. At the end of five or ſix years, ſhe takes the one that pleaſes her for her huſband, and they live together to the end of their lives. But if, after living ſome time together, they have no children, the man can diſunite himſelf and take another woman, alleging that his own is good for nothing. Hence, the girls have greater freedom than the married women.

After marriage, the women are chaſte, and their huſbands generally jealous. They give preſents to the fathers or relatives of the girls they have wedded. Theſe are the ceremonies and forms obſerved in their marriages. In regard to their burials: When a man or a woman dies, they dig a pit, in

in which they put all their property, as kettles, furs, axes, bows, arrows, robes, and other things. Then they place the body in the pit and cover it with earth, putting on top many large pieces of wood, and another piece upright, painted red on the upper part. They believe in the immortality of the ſoul, and ſay that they ſhall be happy in other lands with their relatives and friends who are dead. In the caſe of captains or others of ſome diſtinction, they celebrate a banquet three times a year after their death, ſinging and dancing about the grave.

All the time they were with us, which was the moſt ſecure place for them, they did not ceaſe to fear their enemies to ſuch an extent that they often at night became alarmed while dreaming, and ſent their wives and children to our fort, the gates of which I had opened to them, allowing the men to remain about the fort, but not permitting them to enter, for their perſons were thus as much in ſecurity as if they had been inſide. I alſo had five or ſix of our men go out to reaſſure them, and to go and aſcertain whether they could ſee any thing in the woods, in order to quiet them. They are very timid and in great dread of their enemies, ſcarcely ever ſleeping in repoſe in whatever place they may be, although I conſtantly reaſſured them, ſo far as I could, urging them to do as we did; namely, that they ſhould have a portion watch while the others ſlept, that each one ſhould have his arms in readineſs like him who was keeping watch, and that they ſhould not regard dreams as the actual truth to be relied upon, ſince they are moſtly only falſe, to which I alſo added other words on the ſame ſubject. But theſe remonſtrances were of little avail with them, and they ſaid that we knew better

better than they how to keep guard againſt all things; and that they, in courſe of time, if we continued to ſtay with them, would be able to learn it.

CHAPTER V.

SEEDS AND VINES PLANTED AT QUEBEC. — COMMENCEMENT OF THE WINTER AND ICE. — EXTREME DESTITUTION OF CERTAIN INDIANS.

ON the 1ſt of October, I had ſome wheat ſown, and on the 15th ſome rye. On the 3d, there was a white froſt in ſome places, and the leaves of the trees began to fall on the 15th. On the 24th, I had ſome native vines ſet out, which flouriſhed very well. But, after leaving the ſettlement to go to France, they were all ſpoiled from lack of attention, at which I was much troubled on my return. On the 18th of November, there was a great fall of ſnow, which remained only two days on the ground, during which time there was a violent gale of wind. There died during this month a ſailor and our lockſmith [319] of dyſentery, ſo alſo many Indians from eating eels badly cooked, as I think. On the 5th of February, it ſnowed violently, and the wind was high for two days. On the 20th, ſome Indians appeared on the other ſide of the river, calling to us to go to their aſſiſtance, which was beyond our power, on account of the large amount of ice drifting in the river. Hunger preſſed upon theſe poor wretches ſo ſeverely that, not knowing what to do, they reſolved, men, women, and

[319] Unleſs they had more than one lockſmith, this muſt have been Antoine Natel. — *Vide antea*, p. 178.

and children, to croſs the river or die, hoping that I ſhould aſſiſt them in their extreme want. Having accordingly made this reſolve, the men and women took the children and embarked in their canoes, thinking that they could reach our ſhore by an opening in the ice made by the wind; but they were ſcarcely in the middle of the ſtream when their canoes were caught by the ice and broken into a thouſand pieces. But they were ſkilful enough to throw themſelves with the children, which the women carried on their backs, on a large piece of ice. As they were on it, we heard them crying out ſo that it excited intenſe pity, as before them there ſeemed nothing but death. But fortune was ſo favorable to theſe poor wretches that a large piece of ice ſtruck againſt the ſide of that on which they were, ſo violently as to drive them aſhore. On ſeeing this favorable turn, they reached the ſhore with as much delight as they ever experienced, notwithſtanding the great hunger from which they were ſuffering. They proceeded to our abode, ſo thin and haggard that they ſeemed like mere ſkeletons, moſt of them not being able to hold themſelves up. I was aſtoniſhed to ſee them, and obſerve the manner in which they had croſſed, in view of their being ſo feeble and weak. I ordered ſome bread and beans to be given them. So great was their impatience to eat them, that they could not wait to have them cooked. I lent them alſo ſome bark, which other ſavages had given me, to cover their cabins. As they were making their cabin, they diſcovered a piece of carrion, which I had had thrown out nearly two months before to attract the foxes, of which we caught black and red ones, like thoſe in France, but with heavier fur. This carrion conſiſted of a ſow and a dog, which had ſuſtained

tained all the rigors of the weather, hot and cold. When the weather was mild, it ſtank ſo badly that one could not go near it. Yet they ſeized it and carried it off to their cabin, where they forthwith devoured it half cooked. No meat ever ſeemed to them to taſte better. I ſent two or three men to warn them not to eat it, unleſs they wanted to die: as they approached their cabin, they ſmelt ſuch a ſtench from this carrion half warmed up, each one of the Indians holding a piece in his hand, that they thought they ſhould diſgorge, and accordingly ſcarcely ſtopped at all. Theſe poor wretches finiſhed their repaſt. I did not fail, however, to ſupply them according to my reſources; but this was little, in view of the large number of them. In the ſpace of a month, they would have eaten up all our proviſions, if they had had them in their power, they are ſo gluttonous: for, when they have edibles, they lay nothing aſide, but keep conſuming them day and night without reſpite, afterwards dying of hunger. They did alſo another thing as diſguſting as that juſt mentioned. I had cauſed a bitch to be placed on the top of a tree, which allured the martens[320] and birds of prey, from which I derived pleaſure, ſince generally this carrion was attacked by them. Theſe ſavages went to the tree, and, being too weak to climb it, cut it down and forthwith took away the dog, which was only ſkin and bones, the tainted head emitting a ſtench, but which was at once devoured.

This is the kind of enjoyment they experience for the moſt part in winter; for in ſummer they are able to ſupport themſelves, and to obtain proviſions ſo as not to be aſſailed by

[320] *Martres.* The common weaſel, *Muſtela vulgaris.*

by ſuch extreme hunger, the rivers abounding in fiſh, while birds and wild animals fill the country about. The ſoil is very good and well adapted for tillage, if they would but take pains to plant Indian corn, as all their neighbors do, the Algonquins, Ochaſtaiguins,[321] and Iroquois, who are not attacked by ſuch extremes of hunger, which they provide againſt by their carefulneſs and foreſight, ſo that they live happily in compariſon with the Montagnais, Canadians, and Souriquois along the ſeacoaſt. This is in the main their wretched manner of life. The ſnow and ice laſt three months there, from January to the 8th of April, when it is nearly all melted: at the lateſt, it is only ſeldom that any is ſeen at the end of the latter month at our ſettlement. It is remarkable that ſo much ſnow and ice as there is on the river, and which is from two to three fathoms thick, is all melted in leſs than twelve days. From Tadouſſac to Gaſpé, Cape Breton, Newfoundland, and the Great Bay, the ſnow and ice continue in moſt places until the end of May, at which time the

[321] *Ochaſtaiguins.* This, ſays Laverdière, is what Champlain firſt called the Hurons, from the name of Ochateguin, one of their chiefs. Huron was a nickname: the proper name of this tribe was Wendot or Wyandot. They occupied the eaſtern bank of Lake Huron and the ſouthern ſhores of the Georgian Bay. The knowledge of the ſeveral tribes here referred to had been obtained by Champlain, partly from his own obſervation and partly from the Indians. The Algommequins or Algonquins, known at this time to Champlain, were from the region of the Ottawa. The Yroquois or Iroquois dwelt ſouth of the St. Lawrence in the State of New York, and compriſed what are generally known as the Five Nations. The Montagnais or Montaignets had their great trading-poſt at Tadouſſac, and roamed over a vaſt territory north and eaſt of that point, and weſt of it as far as the mountains that ſeparate the waters of the Saguenay and thoſe of the Ottawa. The name was given to them by the French from this mountain range. The Canadians were thoſe about the neighborhood of Quebec. The Souriquois were of Nova Scotia, and ſubſequently known as Micmacs. Of moſt of theſe different tribes, Champlain could ſpeak from perſonal knowledge.

the entire entrance of the great river is ſealed with ice; although at Quebec there is none at all, ſhowing a ſtrange difference for one hundred and twenty leagues in longitude, for the entrance to the river is in latitude 49° 50′ to 51°, and our ſettlement[322] in 46° 40′.

CHAPTER VI.

THE SCURVY AT QUEBEC. — HOW THE WINTER PASSED. — DESCRIPTION OF THE PLACE. — ARRIVAL AT QUEBEC OF SIEUR DES MARAIS, SON-IN-LAW OF PONT GRAVÉ.

THE ſcurvy began very late; namely, in February, and continued until the middle of April. Eighteen were attacked, and ten died; five others dying of the dyſentery. I had ſome opened, to ſee whether they were tainted, like thoſe I had ſeen in our other ſettlements. They were found the ſame. Some time after, our ſurgeon died.[323] All this troubled us very much, on account of the difficulty we had in attending to the ſick. The nature of this diſeaſe I have deſcribed before.

It is my opinion that this diſeaſe proceeds only from eating exceſſively of ſalt food and vegetables, which heat the blood and corrupt the internal parts. The winter is alſo, in part, its cauſe; ſince it checks the natural warmth, cauſing a ſtill greater corruption of the blood. There riſe alſo from the

[322] Laverdière gives the exact latitude of Quebec at the Obſervatory, on the authority of Captain Bayfield, as 46° 49′ 8″.

[323] His name was Bonnerme. — *Vide antea*, p. 180.

the earth, when firſt cleared up, certain vapors which infect the air: this has been obſerved in the caſe of thoſe who have lived at other ſettlements; after the firſt year when the ſun had been let in upon what was not before cleared up, as well in our abode as in other places, the air was much better, and the diſeaſes not ſo violent as before. But the country is fine and pleaſant, and brings to maturity all kinds of grains and ſeeds, there being found all the various kinds of trees, which we have here in our foreſts, and many fruits, although they are naturally wild; as, nut-trees, cherry-trees, plum-trees, vines, raſpberries, ſtrawberries, currants, both green and red, and ſeveral other ſmall fruits, which are very good. There are alſo ſeveral kinds of excellent plants and roots. Fiſhing is abundant in the rivers; and game without limit on the numerous meadows bordering them. From the month of April to the 15th of December, the air is ſo pure and healthy that one does not experience the ſlighteſt indiſpoſition. But January, February, and March are dangerous, on account of the ſickneſſes prevailing at this time, rather than in ſummer, for the reaſons before given; for, as to treatment, all of my company were well clothed, provided with good beds, and well warmed and fed, that is, with the ſalt meats we had, which, in my opinion, injured them greatly, as I have already ſtated. As far as I have been able to ſee, the ſickneſs attacks one who is delicate in his living and takes particular care of himſelf as readily as one whoſe condition is as wretched as poſſible. We ſuppoſed at firſt that the workmen only would be attacked with this diſeaſe; but this we found was not the caſe. Thoſe ſailing to the Eaſt Indies and various other regions, as Germany and England, are attacked with it as well as in New France.

France. Some time ago, the Flemiſh, being attacked with this malady in their voyages to the Indies, found a very ſtrange remedy, which might be of ſervice to us; but we have never aſcertained the character of it. Yet I am confident that, with good bread and freſh meat, a perſon would not be liable to it.

On the 8th of April, the ſnow had all melted; and yet the air was ſtill very cold until April,[324] when the trees begin to leaf out.

Some of thoſe ſick with the ſcurvy were cured when ſpring came, which is the ſeaſon for recovery. I had a ſavage of the country wintering with me, who was attacked with this diſeaſe from having changed his diet to ſalt meat; and he died from its effects, which clearly ſhows that ſalt food is not nouriſhing, but quite the contrary in this diſeaſe.

On the 5th of June, a ſhallop arrived at our ſettlement with Sieur des Marais, a ſon-in-law of Pont Gravé, bringing us the tidings that his father-in-law had arrived at Tadouſſac on the 28th of May. This intelligence gave me much ſatiſfaction, as we entertained hopes of aſſiſtance from him. Only eight out of the twenty-eight at firſt forming our company were remaining, and half of theſe were ailing.

On the 7th of June, I ſet out from Quebec for Tadouſſac on ſome matters of buſineſs, and aſked Sieur des Marais to ſtay in my place until my return, which he did.

Immediately upon my arrival, Pont Gravé and I had a conference in regard to ſome explorations which I was to make in the interior, where the ſavages had promiſed to guide

[324] Read May inſtead of April.

guide us. We determined that I ſhould go in a ſhallop with twenty men, and that Pont Gravé ſhould ſtay at Tadouſſac to arrange the affairs of our ſettlement; and this determination was carried out, he ſpending the winter there. This arrangement was eſpecially deſirable, ſince I was to return to France, according to the orders ſent out by Sieur de Monts, in order to inform him of what I had done and the explorations I had made in the country.

After this deciſion, I ſet out at once from Tadouſſac, and returned to Quebec, where I had a ſhallop fitted out with all that was neceſſary for making explorations in the country of the Iroquois, where I was to go with our allies, the Montagnais.

CHAPTER VII.

DEPARTURE FROM QUEBEC AND VOYAGE TO THE ÎLE ST. ÉLOI. — MEETING THERE WITH THE ALGONQUINS AND OCHATAIGUINS.

WITH this purpoſe, I ſet out on the 18th of the month. Here the river begins to widen, in ſome places to the breadth of a league or a league and a half. The country becomes more and more beautiful. There are hills along the river in part, and in part it is a level country, with but few rocks. The river itſelf is dangerous in many places, in conſequence of its banks and rocks; and it is not ſafe ſailing without keeping the lead in hand. The river is very abundant in many kinds of fiſh, not only ſuch as we have here, but others which we have not. The country is thickly covered with maſſive and lofty foreſts, of the ſame kind of trees

trees as we have about our habitation. There are alſo many vines and nut-trees on the bank of the river, and many ſmall brooks and ſtreams which are only navigable with canoes. We paſſed near Point St. Croix, which many maintain, as I have ſaid elſewhere, is the place where Jacques Cartier ſpent the winter. This point is ſandy, extending ſome diſtance out into the river, and expoſed to the north-weſt wind, which beats upon it. There are ſome meadows, covered however every full tide, which falls nearly two fathoms and a half. This paſſage is very dangerous on account of the large number of rocks ſtretching acroſs the river, although there is a good but very winding channel, where the river runs like a race, rendering it neceſſary to take the proper time for paſſing. This place has deceived many, who thought they could only paſs at high tide from there being no channel: but we have now found the contrary to be true, for one can go down at low tide; but it would be difficult to aſcend, in conſequence of the ſtrong current, unleſs there were a good wind. It is conſequently neceſſary to wait until the tide is a third flood, in order to paſs, when the current in the channel is ſix, eight, ten, twelve, and fifteen fathoms deep.

Continuing our courſe, we reached a very pleaſant river, nine leagues diſtant from St. Croix and twenty-four from Quebec. This we named St. Mary's River.[325] The river all the way from St. Croix is very pleaſant.

Purſuing our route, I met ſome two or three hundred ſavages, who were encamped in huts near a little iſland called St. Éloi,[326] a league and a half diſtant from St. Mary. We made

[325] This river is now called the Sainte Anne.

[326] A ſmall iſland near Batiſcan, not on the charts.

made a reconnoiſſance, and found that they were tribes of ſavages, called Ochateguins and Algonquins,[397] on their way to Quebec, to aſſiſt us in exploring the territory of the Iroquois, with whom they are in deadly hoſtility, ſparing nothing belonging to their enemies.

After reconnoitring, I went on ſhore to ſee them, and inquired who their chief was. They told me there were two, one named Yroquet, and the other Ochaſteguin, whom they pointed out to me. I went to their cabin, where they gave me a cordial reception, as is their cuſtom.

I proceeded to inform them of the object of my voyage, with which they were greatly pleaſed. After ſome talk, I withdrew. Some time after, they came to my ſhallop, and preſented me with ſome peltry, exhibiting many tokens of pleaſure. Then they returned to the ſhore.

The next day, the two chiefs came to ſee me, when they remained ſome time without ſaying a word, meditating and ſmoking all the while. After due reflection, they began to harangue in a loud voice all their companions who were on the bank of the river, with their arms in their hands, and liſtening very attentively to what their chiefs ſaid to them, which was as follows: that nearly ten moons ago, according to their mode of reckoning, the ſon of Yroquet had ſeen me, and that I had given him a good reception, and declared that Pont Gravé and I deſired to aſſiſt them againſt their enemies, with whom they had for a long time been at warfare, on account of many cruel acts committed by them againſt their tribe, under color of friendſhip; that, having ever ſince longed for vengeance, they had ſolicited all the ſavages, whom I ſaw on the

[397] Hurons and Algonquins.

the bank of the river, to come and make an alliance with us, and that their never having ſeen Chriſtians alſo impelled them to come and viſit us; that I ſhould do with them and their companions as I wiſhed; that they had no children with them, but men verſed in war and full of courage, acquainted with the country and rivers in the land of the Iroquois; that now they entreated me to return to our ſettlement, that they might ſee our houſes, and that, after three days, we ſhould all together come back to engage in the war; that, as a token of firm friendſhip and joy, I ſhould have muſkets and arquebuſes fired, at which they would be greatly pleaſed. This I did, when they uttered great cries of aſtoniſhment, eſpecially thoſe who had never heard nor ſeen the like.

After hearing them, I replied that, if they deſired, I ſhould be very glad to return to our ſettlement, to gratify them ſtill more; and that they might conclude that I had no other purpoſe than to engage in the war, ſince we carried with us nothing but arms, and not merchandiſe for barter, as they had been given to underſtand; and that my only deſire was to fulfill what I had promiſed them; and that, if I had known of any who had made evil reports to them, I ſhould regard them as enemies more than they did themſelves. They told me that they believed nothing of them, and that they never had heard any one ſpeak thus. But the contrary was the caſe; for there were ſome ſavages who told it to ours. I contented myſelf with waiting for an opportunity to ſhow them in fact ſomething more than they could have expected from me.

CHAPTER VIII.

CHAPTER VIII.

RETURN TO QUEBEC. — CONTINUATION AFTERWARDS WITH THE SAVAGES TO THE FALL OF THE RIVER OF THE IROQUOIS.

THE next day, we ſet out all together for our ſettlement, where they enjoyed themſelves ſome five or ſix days, which were ſpent in dances and feſtivities, on account of their eagerneſs for us to engage in the war.

Pont Gravé came forthwith from Tadouſſac with two little barques full of men, in compliance with a letter, in which I begged him to come as ſpeedily as poſſible.

The ſavages ſeeing him arrive rejoiced more than ever, inaſmuch as I told them that he had given ſome of his men to aſſiſt them, and that perhaps we ſhould go together.

On the 28th of the month,[328] we equipped ſome barques for aſſiſting theſe ſavages. Pont Gravé embarked on one and I on the other, when we all ſet out together. The firſt of June,[329] we arrived at St. Croix, diſtant fifteen leagues from Quebec, where Pont Gravé and I concluded that, for certain reaſons, I ſhould go with the ſavages, and he to our ſettlement and to Tadouſſac. This reſolution being taken, I embarked in my ſhallop all that was neceſſary, together with Des Marais and La Routte, our pilot, and nine men.

I ſet out from St. Croix on the 3d of June[330] with all the ſavages. We paſſed the Trois Rivières, a very beautiful country,

[328] The reader will obſerve that this muſt have been the 28th of June, 1609.

[329] Read 1ſt of July.

[330] Read 3d of July.

country, covered with a growth of fine trees. From this place to St. Croix is a diſtance of fifteen leagues. At the mouth of the above-named river[331] there are ſix iſlands, three of which are very ſmall, the others ſome fifteen to ſixteen hundred paces long, very pleaſant in appearance. Near Lake St. Peter,[332] ſome two leagues up the river, there is a little fall not very difficult to paſs. This place is in latitude 46°, lacking ſome minutes. The ſavages of the country gave us to underſtand that ſome days' journey up this river there is a lake, through which the river flows. The length of the lake is ten days' journey, when ſome falls are paſſed, and afterwards three or four other lakes of five or ſix days' journey in length. Having reached the end of theſe, they go four or five leagues by land, and enter ſtill another lake, where the Sacqué has its principal ſource. From this lake, the ſavages go to Tadouſſac.[333] The Trois Rivières extends forty days' journey of the ſavages. They ſay that at the end of this river there is a people, who are great hunters, without a fixed abode, and who are leſs than ſix days' journey from the North Sea. What little of the country I have ſeen is ſandy, very high, with hills, covered with large quantities of pine and fir on the river border; but ſome quarter of a league inland the woods are very fine and open, and the country level.

Thence we continued our courſe to the entrance of Lake St. Peter,

[331] The river is now called St. Maurice; and the town at its mouth, Three Rivers. Two iſlands at the mouth of the river divide it into three; hence, it was originally called Trois Rivières, or Three Rivers.

[332] Laverdière ſuggeſts that Champlain entered this lake, now for the firſt time called St. Peter, in 1603, on St. Peter's day, the 29th June, and probably ſo named it from that circumſtance.

[333] From the carrying-place they enter the Lake St. John, and from it deſcend by the Saguenay to Tadouſſac. In the preceding paſſage, Sacqué was plainly intended for Saguenay.

St. Peter, where the country is exceedingly pleaſant and level, and croſſed the lake, in two, three, and four fathoms of water, which is ſome eight leagues long and four wide. On the north ſide, we ſaw a very pleaſant river, extending ſome twenty leagues into the interior, which I named St. Suzanne; on the ſouth ſide, there are two, one called Rivière du Pont, the other, Rivière de Gennes,[334] which are very pretty, and in a fine and fertile country. The water is almoſt ſtill in the lake, which is full of fiſh. On the north bank, there are ſeen ſome ſlight elevations at a diſtance of ſome twelve or fifteen leagues from the lake. After croſſing the lake, we paſſed a large number of iſlands of various ſizes, containing many nut-trees and vines, and fine meadows, with quantities of game and wild animals, which go over from the main land to theſe iſlands. Fiſh are here more abundant than in any other part of the river that we had ſeen. From theſe iſlands, we went to the mouth of the River of the Iroquois, where we ſtayed two days, refreſhing ourſelves with good veniſon, birds, and fiſh, which the ſavages gave us. Here there ſprang up among them ſome difference of opinion on the ſubject of the war, ſo that a portion only determined to go with me, while the others returned to their country with their wives and the merchandiſe which they had obtained by barter.

Setting out from the mouth of this river, which is ſome four hundred to five hundred paces broad, and very beautiful, running

[334] Of the three rivers flowing into Lake St. Peter, none retains the name given to them by Champlain. His *St. Suzanne* is the river du Loup; his *Rivière du Pont* is the river St. François; and his *De Gennes* is now repreſented by the Yamaſka. Compare Champlain's map of 1612 with Laurie's Chart of the river St. Lawrence.

running ſouthward,[335] we arrived at a place in latitude 45°, and twenty-two or twenty-three leagues from the Trois Rivières. All this river from its mouth to the firſt fall, a diſtance of fifteen leagues, is very ſmooth, and bordered with woods, like all the other places before named, and of the ſame ſorts. There are nine or ten fine iſlands before reaching the fall of the Iroquois, which are a league or a league and a half long, and covered with numerous oaks and nut-trees. The river is nearly half a league wide in places, and very abundant in fiſh. We found in no place leſs than four feet of water. The approach to the fall is a kind of lake,[336] where the water deſcends, and which is ſome three leagues in circuit. There are here ſome meadows, but not inhabited by ſavages on account of the wars. There is very little water at the fall, which runs with great rapidity. There are alſo many rocks and ſtones, ſo that the ſavages cannot go up by water, although they go down very eaſily. All this region is very level, covered with foreſts, vines, and nut-trees. No Chriſtians had been in this place before us; and we had conſiderable difficulty in aſcending the river with oars.

As ſoon as we had reached the fall, Des Marais, La Routte, and I, with five men, went on ſhore to ſee whether we could paſs this place; but we went ſome league and a half without ſeeing any proſpect of being able to do ſo, finding only water running with great ſwiftneſs, and in all directions many ſtones, very dangerous, and with but little water about them. The fall is perhaps ſix hundred paces broad. Finding that it was impoſſible

[335] This is an error: the River of the Iroquois, now commonly known as the Richelieu, runs towards the north.

[336] The Chambly Baſin. On Charlevoix's Carte de la Rivière Richelieu, it is called Baſſin de St. Louis.

impoſſible to cut a way through the woods with the ſmall number of men that I had, I determined, after conſultation with the reſt, to change my original reſolution, formed on the aſſurance of the ſavages that the roads were eaſy, but which we did not find to be the caſe, as I have ſtated. We accordingly returned to our ſhallop, where I had left ſome men as guards, and to indicate to the ſavages upon their arrival that we had gone to make explorations along the fall.

After making what obſervations I wiſhed in this place, we met, on returning, ſome ſavages, who had come to reconnoitre, as we had done. They told us that all their companions had arrived at our ſhallop, where we found them greatly pleaſed, and delighted that we had gone in this manner without a guide, aided only by the reports they had ſeveral times made to us.

Having returned, and ſeeing the ſlight proſpect there was of paſſing the fall with our ſhallop, I was much troubled. And it gave me eſpecial diſſatisfaction to go back without ſeeing a very large lake, filled with handſome iſlands, and with large tracts of fine land bordering on the lake, where their enemies live according to their repreſentations. After duly thinking over the matter, I determined to go and fulfil my promiſe, and carry out my deſire. Accordingly, I embarked with the ſavages in their canoes, taking with me two men, who went cheerfully. After making known my plan to Des Marais and others in the ſhallop, I requeſted the former to return to our ſettlement with the reſt of our company, giving them the aſſurance that, in a ſhort time, by God's grace, I would return to them.

I proceeded forthwith to have a conference with the captains

tains of the ſavages, and gave them to underſtand that they had told me the oppoſite of what my obſervations found to be the caſe at the fall; namely, that it was impoſſible to paſs it with the ſhallop, but that this would not prevent me from aſſiſting them as I had promiſed. This communication troubled them greatly; and they deſired to change their determination, but I urged them not to do ſo, telling them that they ought to carry out their firſt plan, and that I, with two others, would go to the war with them in their canoes, in order to ſhow them that, as for me, I would not break my word given to them, although alone; but that I was unwilling then to oblige any one of my companions to embark, and would only take with me thoſe who had the inclination to go, of whom I had found two.

They were greatly pleaſed at what I ſaid to them, and at the determination which I had taken, promiſing, as before, to ſhow me fine things.

CHAPTER IX.

CHAPTER IX.

DEPARTURE FROM THE FALL OF THE IROQUOIS RIVER. — DESCRIPTION OF A LARGE LAKE. — ENCOUNTER WITH THE ENEMY AT THIS LAKE; THEIR MANNER OF ATTACKING THE IROQUOIS, AND THEIR BEHAVIOR IN BATTLE.

I SET out accordingly from the fall of the Iroquois River[337] on the 2d of July.[338] All the ſavages ſet to carrying their canoes, arms, and baggage overland, ſome half a league, in order to paſs by the violence and ſtrength of the fall, which was ſpeedily accompliſhed. Then they put them all in the water again, two men in each with the baggage; and they cauſed one of the men of each canoe to go by land ſome three leagues,[339] the extent of the fall, which is not, however, ſo violent here as at the mouth, except in ſome places, where rocks obſtruct the river, which is not broader than three hundred or four hundred paces. After we had paſſed the fall, which was attended with difficulty, all the ſavages, who had gone by

[337] The River of the Iroquois, ſo called by Champlain, was long known by that name, ſays Charlevoix, becauſe theſe Indians generally deſcended it, in order to make their inroads into the colony. Fort Richelieu, at the mouth of the river, erected in 1641, was named after the celebrated Cardinal, the river having already taken his name. This fort having been demoliſhed, another was built by M. de Sorel, a French officer in command, which took his name, as likewiſe did the river. A fort was built on the ſame river at the preſent village of Chambly in 1664, and called Fort St. Louis. This wooden ſtructure was replaced by another of ſtone, erected prior to 1721, to which the name of Chambly was given, as likewiſe by ſome writers to the river. The river has likewiſe ſometimes been called the St. Johns, but the prevailing name is the Richelieu.

[338] Read the 12th of July.

[339] This fall is now avoided, and the navigation of the Richelieu ſecured by a canal connecting Chambly Baſin and St. Johns, a diſtance of about ten miles.

by land over a good path and level country, although there are a great many trees, re-embarked in their canoes. My men went alſo by land; but I went in a canoe. The ſavages made a review of all their followers, finding that there were twenty-four canoes, with ſixty men. After the review was completed, we continued our courſe to an iſland,[340] three leagues long, filled with the fineſt pines I had ever ſeen. Here they went hunting, and captured ſome wild animals. Proceeding about three leagues farther on, we made a halt, in order to reſt the coming night.

They all at once ſet to work, ſome to cut wood, and others to obtain the bark of trees for covering their cabins, for the ſake of ſheltering themſelves, others to fell large trees for conſtructing a barricade on the river-bank around their cabins, which they do ſo quickly that in leſs than two hours ſo much is accompliſhed that five hundred of their enemies would find it very difficult to diſlodge them without killing large numbers. They make no barricade on the river-bank, where their canoes are drawn up, in order that they may be able to embark, if occaſion requires. After they were eſtabliſhed in their cabins, they deſpatched three canoes, with nine good men, according to their cuſtom in all their encampments, to reconnoitre for a diſtance of two or three leagues, to ſee if they can perceive any thing, after which they return. They reſt the entire night, depending upon the obſervation of theſe ſcouts, which is a very bad cuſtom among them; for they are ſometimes while ſleeping ſurpriſed by their enemies, who ſlaughter

[340] It is not entirely certain what iſland is here referred to. It has been ſuppoſed to be the Iſland of St. Thérèſe. But, taking all of Champlain's ſtatements into conſideration, the logical inference would be that it is the Iſle aux Noix.

ſlaughter them before they have time to get up and prepare for defence. Noticing this, I remonſtrated with them on the miſtake they made, and told them that they ought to keep watch, as they had ſeen us do every night, and have men on the lookout, in order to liſten and ſee whether they perceived any thing, and that they ſhould not live in ſuch a manner like beaſts. They replied that they could not keep watch, and that they worked enough in the day-time in the chaſe, ſince, when engaged in war, they divide their troops into three parts: namely, a part for hunting ſcattered in ſeveral places; another to conſtitute the main body of their army, which is always under arms; and the third to act as *avant-coureurs*, to look out along the rivers, and obſerve whether they can ſee any mark or ſignal ſhowing where their enemies or friends have paſſed. This they aſcertain by certain marks which the chiefs of different tribes make known to each other; but, theſe not continuing always the ſame, they inform themſelves from time to time of changes, by which means they aſcertain whether they are enemies or friends who have paſſed. The hunters never hunt in advance of the main body, or *avant-coureurs*, ſo as not to excite alarm or produce diſorder, but in the rear and in the direction from which they do not anticipate their enemy. Thus they advance until they are within two or three days' march of their enemies, when they proceed by night ſtealthily and all in a body, except the *van-couriers*. By day, they withdraw into the interior of the woods, where they reſt, without ſtraying off, neither making any noiſe nor any fire, even for the ſake of cooking, ſo as not to be noticed in caſe their enemies ſhould by accident paſs by. They make no fire, except in ſmoking, which amounts to almoſt nothing.

They

They eat baked Indian meal, which they ſoak in water, when it becomes a kind of porridge. They provide themſelves with ſuch meal to meet their wants, when they are near their enemies, or when retreating after a charge, in which caſe they are not inclined to hunt, retreating immediately.

In all their encampments, they have their Pilotois, or Oſtemoy,[341] a claſs of perſons who play the part of ſoothſayers, in whom theſe people have faith. One of theſe builds a cabin, ſurrounds it with ſmall pieces of wood, and covers it with his robe: after it is built, he places himſelf inſide, ſo as not to be ſeen at all, when he ſeizes and ſhakes one of the poſts of his cabin, muttering ſome words between his teeth, by which he ſays he invokes the devil, who appears to him in the form of a ſtone, and tells him whether they will meet their enemies and kill many of them. This Pilotois lies proſtrate on the ground, motionleſs, only ſpeaking with the devil: on a ſudden, he riſes to his feet, talking, and tormenting himſelf in ſuch a manner that, although naked, he is all of a perſpiration. All the people ſurround the cabin, ſeated on their buttocks, like apes. They frequently told me that the ſhaking of the cabin, which I ſaw, proceeded from the devil, who made it move, and not the man inſide, although I could ſee the contrary; for, as I have ſtated above, it was the Pilotois who took one of the ſupports of the cabin, and made it move in this manner.

They

[341] "Theſe two words were uſed in Acadie to indicate the *jongleur*, or ſorcerer. The word *pilotois*, according to P. Biard, Rel. 1611, p. 17, came from the Baſques, the Souriquois uſing the word *autmoin*, which Leſcarbot writes *aoutmoin*, and Champlain *oſtemoy*. P. Lejeune, in the Relation of 1636, p. 13, informs us that the Montagnais called their ſorcerers *manitouſiouekbi*; and according to P. Brébeuf, Rel. 1635, p. 35, the Hurons deſignated theirs by the name *arendiouane*." — *Laverdière, in loco.*

They told me alſo that I ſhould ſee fire come out from the top, which I did not ſee at all. Theſe rogues counterfeit alſo their voice, ſo that it is heavy and clear, and ſpeak in a language unknown to the other ſavages. And, when they repreſent it as broken, the ſavages think that the devil is ſpeaking, and telling them what is to happen in their war, and what they muſt do.

But all theſe ſcapegraces, who play the ſoothſayer, out of a hundred words, do not ſpeak two that are true, and impoſe upon theſe poor people. There are enough like them in the world, who take food from the mouths of the people by their impoſtures, as theſe worthies do. I often remonſtrated with the people, telling them that all they did was ſheer nonſenſe, and that they ought not to put confidence in them.

Now, after aſcertaining from their ſoothſayers what is to be their fortune, the chiefs take ſticks a foot long, and as many as there are ſoldiers. They take others, ſomewhat larger, to indicate the chiefs. Then they go into the wood, and ſeek out a level place, five or ſix feet ſquare, where the chief, as ſergeant-major, puts all the ſticks in ſuch order as ſeems to him beſt. Then he calls all his companions, who come all armed; and he indicates to them the rank and order they are to obſerve in battle with their enemies. All the ſavages watch carefully this proceeding, obſerving attentively the outline which their chief has made with the ſticks. Then they go away, and ſet to placing themſelves in ſuch order as the ſticks were in, when they mingle with each other, and return again to their proper order, which manœuvre they repeat two or three times, and at all their encampments, without needing a ſergeant to keep them in the proper order, which they are able to keep

keep accurately without any confuſion. This is their rule in war.

We ſet out on the next day, continuing our courſe in the river as far as the entrance of the lake. There are many pretty iſlands here, low, and containing very fine woods and meadows, with abundance of fowl and ſuch animals of the chaſe as ſtags, fallow-deer, fawns, roe-bucks, bears, and others, which go from the main land to theſe iſlands. We captured a large number of theſe animals. There are alſo many beavers, not only in this river, but alſo in numerous other little ones that flow into it. Theſe regions, although they are pleaſant, are not inhabited by any ſavages, on account of their wars; but they withdraw as far as poſſible from the rivers into the interior, in order not to be ſuddenly ſurpriſed.

The next day we entered the lake,[342] which is of great extent, ſay eighty or a hundred leagues long, where I ſaw four fine iſlands, ten, twelve, and fifteen leagues long, which were formerly inhabited by the ſavages, like the River of the Iroquois; but they have been abandoned ſince the wars of the ſavages with one another prevail. There are alſo many rivers falling into the lake, bordered by many fine trees of the ſame kinds as thoſe we have in France, with many vines finer than any I have ſeen in any other place; alſo many cheſtnut-trees on the border of this lake, which I had not ſeen before. There is alſo a great abundance of fiſh, of many varieties: among

[342] The diſtances are here overſtated by more than threefold, both in reference to the lake and the iſlands. This aroſe, perhaps, from the ſlow progreſs made in the birch canoes with a party of ſixty undiſciplined ſavages, a method of travelling to which Champlain was unaccuſtomed; and he may likewiſe have been miſled by the exaggerations of the Indians, or he may have failed to comprehend their repreſentation of diſtances.

among others, one called by the ſavages of the country *Chaouſarou*,[343] which varies in length, the largeſt being, as the people told me, eight or ten feet long. I ſaw ſome five feet long, which were as large as my thigh; the head being as big as my two fiſts, with a ſnout two feet and a half long, and a double row of very ſharp and dangerous teeth. Its body is, in ſhape, much like that of a pike; but it is armed with ſcales ſo ſtrong that a poniard could not pierce them. Its color is ſilver-gray.

[343] Of the meaning of *chaouſarou*, the name given by the Indians to this fiſh, we have no knowledge. It is now known as the bony-ſcaled pike, or gar pike, *Lepidoſteus oſſeus*. It is referred to by ſeveral early writers after Champlain.

"I ſaw," ſays Sagard, "in the cabin of a Montagnais Indian a certain fiſh, which ſome call Chaouſarou, as big as a large pike. It was only an ordinary ſized one, for many larger ones are ſeen, eight, nine, and ten feet long, as is ſaid. It had a ſnout about a foot and a half long, of about the ſame ſhape as that of the ſnipe, except that the extremity is blunt and not ſo pointed, and of a large ſize in proportion to the body. It has a double row of teeth, which are very ſharp and dangerous; . . . and the form of the body is like that of a pike, but it is armed with very ſtout and hard ſcales, of ſilver gray color, and difficult to be pierced."—*Sagard's Hiſtory of Canada*, Bk. iii. p. 765; *Laverdière*. Sagard's work was publiſhed in 1636. He had undoubtedly ſeen this ſingular fiſh; but his deſcription is ſo nearly in the words of Champlain as to ſuggeſt that he had taken it from our author.

Creuxius, in his Hiſtory of Canada, publiſhed at Paris in 1664, deſcribes this fiſh nearly in the words of Champlain, with an engraving ſufficiently accurate for identification, but greatly wanting in ſcientific exactneſs. He adds, "It is not deſcribed by ancient authors, probably becauſe it is only found in the Lake of the Iroquois;" that is, in Lake Champlain. From which it may be inferred that at that time it had not been diſcovered in other waters. By the French, he ſays, it is called *piſcis armatus*. This is in evident alluſion to its bony ſcales, in which it is protected as in a coat of mail.

It is deſcribed by Dr. Kay in the Natural Hiſtory of New York, Zoölogy, Part I. p. 271. On Plate XLIII. Fig. 139, of the ſame work, the reader will obſerve that the head of the fiſh there repreſented ſtrikingly reſembles that of the *chaouſarou* of Champlain as depicted on his map of 1612. The drawing by Champlain is very accurate, and clearly identifies the Gar Pike. This ſingular fiſh has been found in Lake Champlain, the river St. Lawrence, and in the northern lakes, likewiſe in the Miſſiſſippi River, where is to be found alſo a cloſely related ſpecies commonly called the alligator gar. In the Muſeum of the Boſton Society of Natural Hiſtory are ſeveral ſpecimens, one of them from St. John's River, Florida, four feet and nine inches in length, of which the head is ſeventeen and a half inches. If the body of thoſe ſeen by Champlain was five feet, the head two and a half feet would be in about the uſual proportion.

ſilver-gray. The extremity of its ſnout is like that of a ſwine. This fiſh makes war upon all others in the lakes and rivers. It alſo poſſeſſes remarkable dexterity, as theſe people informed me, which is exhibited in the following manner. When it wants to capture birds, it ſwims in among the ruſhes, or reeds, which are found on the banks of the lake in ſeveral places, where it puts its ſnout out of water and keeps perfectly ſtill: ſo that, when the birds come and light on its ſnout, ſuppoſing it to be only the ſtump of a tree, it adroitly cloſes it, which it had kept ajar, and pulls the birds by the feet down under water. The ſavages gave me the head of one of them, of which they make great account, ſaying that, when they have the headache, they bleed themſelves with the teeth of this fiſh on the ſpot where they ſuffer pain, when it ſuddenly paſſes away.

Continuing our courſe over this lake on the weſtern ſide, I noticed, while obſerving the country, ſome very high mountains on the eaſtern ſide, on the top of which there was ſnow.[344] I made inquiry of the ſavages whether theſe localities were inhabited, when they told me that the Iroquois dwelt there, and that there were beautiful valleys in theſe places, with plains productive in grain, ſuch as I had eaten in this country, together with many kinds of fruit without limit.[345] They ſaid

[344] The Green Mountain range in Vermont, generally not more than twenty or twenty-five miles diſtant. Champlain was probably deceived as to the ſnow on their ſummits in July. What he ſaw was doubtleſs white limeſtone, which might naturally enough be taken for ſnow in the abſence of any poſitive knowledge. The names of the ſummits viſible from the lake are the following, with their reſpective heights. The Chin, 4,348 feet; The Noſe, 4,044; Camel's Hump, 4,083; Jay's Peak, 4,018; Killington Peak, 3,924. This region was at an early period called *Irocoſia*.

[345] This is not an inaccurate deſcription of the beautiful as well as rich and fertile valleys to be found among the hills of Vermont.

ſaid alſo that the lake extended near mountains, ſome twenty-five leagues diſtant from us, as I judge. I ſaw, on the ſouth, other mountains, no leſs high than the firſt, but without any ſnow.[346] The ſavages told me that theſe mountains were thickly ſettled, and that it was there we were to find their enemies; but that it was neceſſary to paſs a fall in order to go there (which I afterwards ſaw), when we ſhould enter another lake, nine or ten leagues long. After reaching the end of the lake, we ſhould have to go, they ſaid, two leagues by land, and paſs through a river flowing into the ſea on the Norumbegue coaſt, near that of Florida,[347] whither it took them only two days to go by canoe, as I have ſince aſcertained from ſome priſoners we captured, who gave me minute information in regard to all they had perſonal knowledge of, through ſome Algonquin interpreters, who underſtood the Iroquois language.

Now, as we began to approach within two or three days' journey of the abode of their enemies, we advanced only at night, reſting during the day. But they did not fail to practise conſtantly their accuſtomed ſuperſtitions, in order to aſcertain

[346] On entering the lake, they ſaw the Adirondack Mountains, which would appear very nearly in the ſouth. The points viſible from the lake were Mt. Marcy, 5,467 feet high above tide-water; Dix's Peak, 5,200; Nipple Top, 4,900; Whiteface, 4,900; Raven Hill, 2,100; Bald Peak, 2,065. — *Vide Palmer's Lake Champlain*, p. 12.

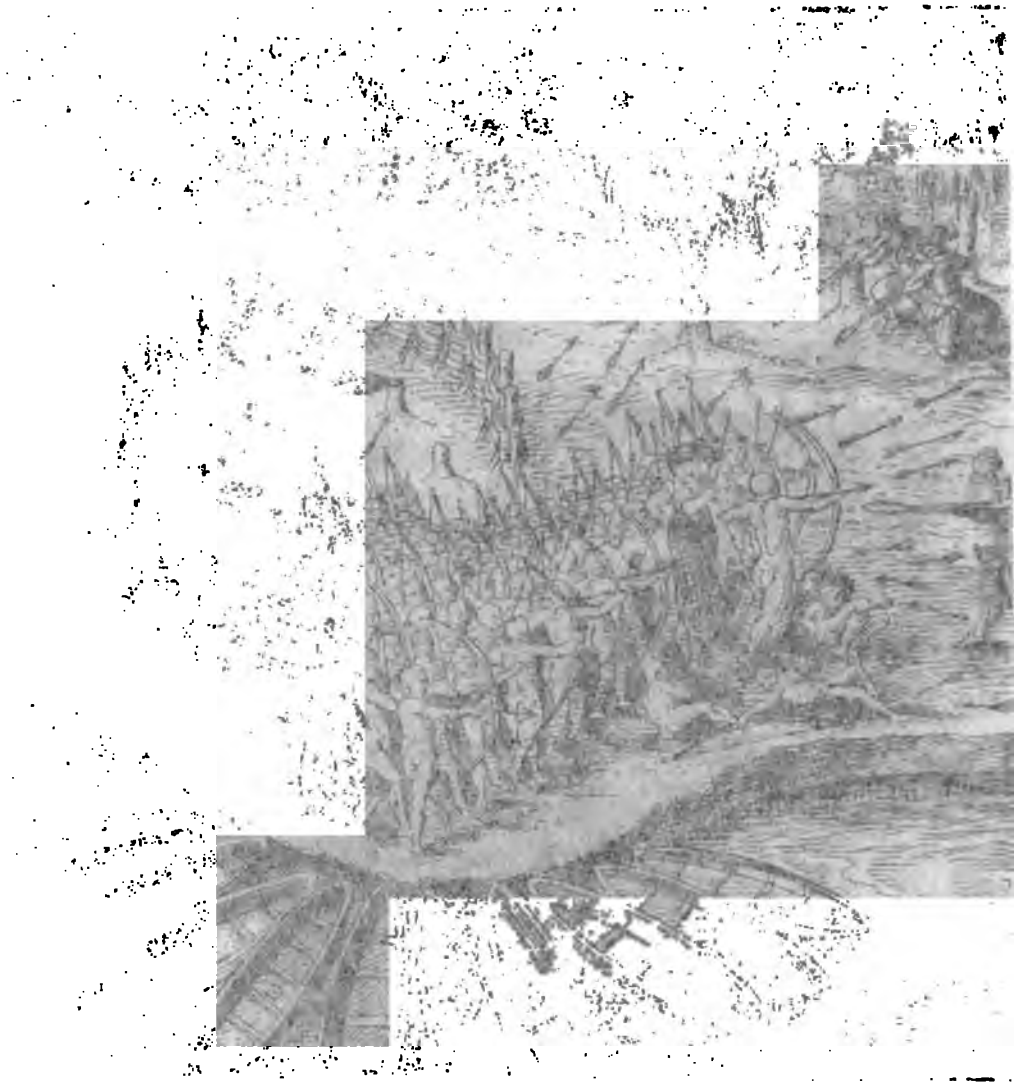
[347] The river here referred to is the Hudſon. By paſſing from Lake Champlain through the ſmall ſtream that connects it with Lake George, over this latter lake and a ſhort carrying place, the upper waters of the Hudſon are reached. The coaſt of Norumbegue and that of Florida were both indefinite regions, not well defined by geographers of that day. Theſe terms were ſupplied by Champlain, and not by his informants. He could not of courſe tell preciſely where this unknown river reached the ſea, but naturally inferred that it was on the ſouthern limit of Norumbegue, which extended from the Penobſcot towards Florida, which latter at that time was ſuppoſed to extend from the Gulf of Mexico indefinitely to the north.

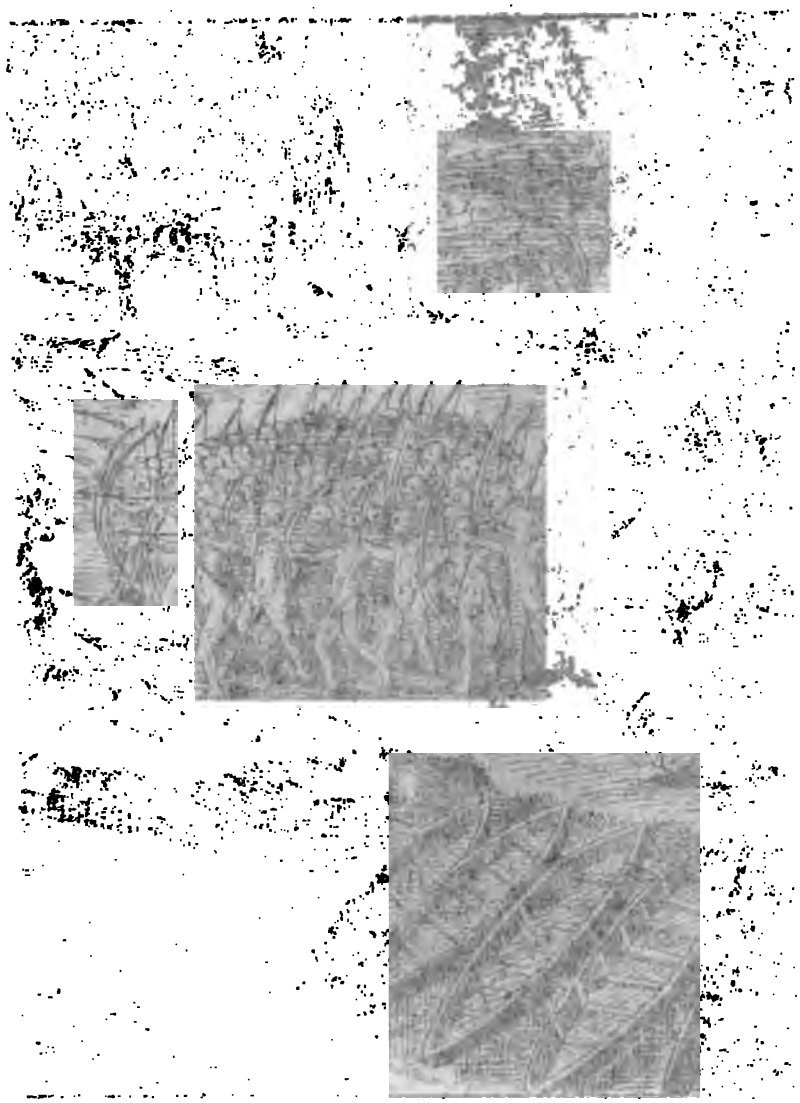
certain what was to be the reſult of their undertaking; and they often aſked me if I had had a dream, and ſeen their enemies, to which I replied in the negative. Yet I did not ceaſe to encourage them, and inſpire in them hope. When night came, we ſet out on the journey until the next day, when we withdrew into the interior of the foreſt, and ſpent the reſt of the day there. About ten or eleven o'clock, after taking a little walk about our encampment, I retired. While ſleeping, I dreamed that I ſaw our enemies, the Iroquois, drowning in the lake near a mountain, within ſight. When I expreſſed a wiſh to help them, our allies, the ſavages, told me we muſt let them all die, and that they were of no importance. When I awoke, they did not fail to aſk me, as uſual, if I had had a dream. I told them that I had, in fact, had a dream. This, upon being related, gave them ſo much confidence that they did not doubt any longer that good was to happen to them.

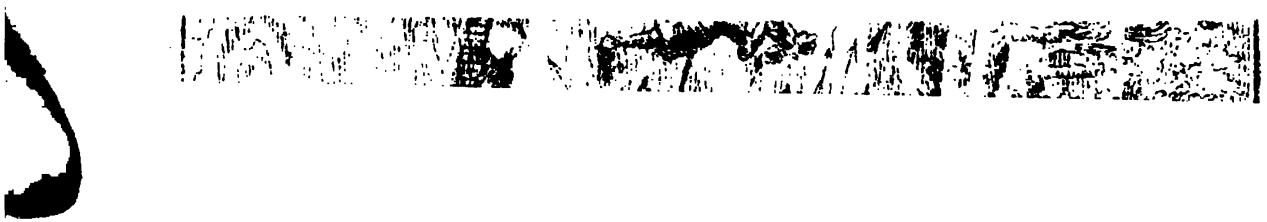
When it was evening, we embarked in our canoes to continue our courſe; and, as we advanced very quietly and without making any noiſe, we met on the 29th of the month the Iroquois, about ten o'clock at evening, at the extremity of a cape which extends into the lake on the weſtern bank. They had come to fight. We both began to utter loud cries, all getting their arms in readineſs. We withdrew out on the water, and the Iroquois went on ſhore, where they drew up all their canoes cloſe to each other and began to fell trees with poor axes, which they acquire in war ſometimes, uſing alſo others of ſtone. Thus they barricaded themſelves very well.

Our forces alſo paſſed the entire night, their canoes being drawn

drawn up cloſe to each other, and faſtened to poles, ſo that they might not get ſeparated, and that they might be all in readineſs to fight, if occaſion required. We were out upon the water, within arrow range of their barricades. When they were armed and in array, they deſpatched two canoes by themſelves to the enemy to inquire if they wiſhed to fight, to which the latter replied that they wanted nothing elſe: but they ſaid that, at preſent, there was not much light, and that it would be neceſſary to wait for daylight, ſo as to be able to recognize each other; and that, as ſoon as the ſun roſe, they would offer us battle. This was agreed to by our ſide. Meanwhile, the entire night was ſpent in dancing and ſinging, on both ſides, with endleſs inſults and other talk; as, how little courage we had, how feeble a reſiſtance we would make againſt their arms, and that, when day came, we ſhould realize it to our ruin. Ours alſo were not ſlow in retorting, telling them they would ſee ſuch execution of arms as never before, together with an abundance of ſuch talk as is not unuſual in the ſiege of a town. After this ſinging, dancing, and bandying words on both ſides to the fill, when day came, my companions and myſelf continued under cover, for fear that the enemy would ſee us. We arranged our arms in the beſt manner poſſible, being, however, ſeparated, each in one of the canoes of the ſavage Montagnais. After arming ourſelves with light armor, we each took an arquebuſe, and went on ſhore. I ſaw the enemy go out of their barricade, nearly two hundred in number, ſtout and rugged in appearance. They came at a ſlow pace towards us, with a dignity and aſſurance which greatly amuſed me, having three chiefs at their head. Our men alſo advanced in the ſame order, telling me that thoſe who







who had three large plumes were the chiefs, and that they had only theſe three, and that they could be diſtinguiſhed by theſe plumes, which were much larger than thoſe of their companions, and that I ſhould do what I could to kill them. I promiſed to do all in my power, and ſaid that I was very ſorry they could not underſtand me, ſo that I might give order and ſhape to their mode of attacking their enemies, and then we ſhould, without doubt, defeat them all; but that this could not now be obviated, and that I ſhould be very glad to ſhow them my courage and good-will when we ſhould engage in the fight.

As ſoon as we had landed, they began to run for ſome two hundred paces towards their enemies, who ſtood firmly, not having as yet noticed my companions, who went into the woods with ſome ſavages. Our men began to call me with loud cries; and, in order to give me a paſſage-way, they opened in two parts, and put me at their head, where I marched ſome twenty paces in advance of the reſt, until I was

---

CHAMPLAIN'S EXPLANATION OF THE ACCOMPANYING MAP.

DEFEAT OF THE IROQUOIS AT LAKE CHAMPLAIN.

A. The fort of the Iroquois. *B*. The enemy. *C*. Canoes of the enemy, made of oak bark, each holding ten, fifteen, or eighteen men. *D*. Two chiefs who were killed. *E*. One of the enemy wounded by a muſket-ſhot of Sieur de Champlain. *F*. Sieur de Champlain. *G*. Two muſketeers of Sieur de Champlain. *H*. Montagnais, Ochaſtaiguins, and Algonquins. *I*. Canoes of our allied ſavages made of birch bark. *K*. The woods.

NOTES. The letters *A*, *F*, *G*, and *K*, are wanting but the objects to which they point are eaſily recognized. The letter *H* has been placed on the canoes of the allies inſtead of the collected body of the allies immediately above them.

was within about thirty paces of the enemy, who at once noticed me, and, halting, gazed at me, as I did alſo at them. When I ſaw them making a move to fire at us, I reſted my muſket againſt my cheek, and aimed directly at one of the three chiefs. With the ſame ſhot, two fell to the ground; and one of their men was ſo wounded that he died ſome time after. I had loaded my muſket with four balls. When our ſide ſaw this ſhot ſo favorable for them, they began to raiſe ſuch loud cries that one could not have heard it thunder. Meanwhile, the arrows flew on both ſides. The Iroquois were greatly aſtoniſhed that two men had been ſo quickly killed, although they were equipped with armor woven from cotton thread, and with wood which was proof againſt their arrows. This cauſed great alarm among them. As I was loading again, one of my companions fired a ſhot from the woods, which aſtoniſhed them anew to ſuch a degree that, ſeeing their chiefs dead, they loſt courage, and took to flight, abandoning their camp and fort, and fleeing into the woods, whither I purſued them, killing ſtill more of them. Our ſavages alſo killed ſeveral of them, and took ten or twelve priſoners. The remainder eſcaped with the wounded. Fifteen or ſixteen were wounded on our ſide with arrow-ſhots; but they were ſoon healed.

After gaining the victory, our men amuſed themſelves by taking a great quantity of Indian corn and ſome meal from their enemies, alſo their armor, which they had left behind that they might run better. After feaſting ſumptuouſly, dancing and ſinging, we returned three hours after, with the priſoners. The ſpot where this attack took place is in latitude

latitude 43° and ſome minutes,[348] and the lake was called Lake Champlain.[349]

[348] This battle, or ſkirmiſh, clearly took place at Ticonderoga, or *Cheonderoga*, as the Indians called it, where a cape juts out into the lake, as deſcribed by Champlain. This is the logical inference to be drawn from the whole narrative. It is to be obſerved that the purpoſe of the Indians, whom Champlain was accompanying, was to find their enemies, the Iroquois, and give them battle. The journey, or war-path, had been clearly marked out and deſcribed by the Indians to Champlain, as may be ſeen in the text. It led them along the weſtern ſhore of the lake to the outlet of Lake George, over the fall in the little ſtream connecting the two lakes, through Lake George, and thence to the mountains beyond, where the Iroquois reſided. They found the Iroquois, however, on the lake; gave them battle on the little cape alluded to; and after the victory and purſuit for ſome diſtance into the foreſt, and the gathering up of the ſpoils, Champlain and his allies commenced their journey homeward. But Champlain ſays he ſaw the fall in the ſtream that connects the two lakes. Now this little ſtream flows into Lake Champlain at Ticonderoga, and he would naturally have ſeen the fall, if the battle took place there, while in purſuit of the Iroquois into the foreſt, as deſcribed in the text. The fall was in the line of the retreat of the Iroquois towards their home, and is only a mile and three-quarters from the cape jutting out into the lake at Ticonderoga. If the battle had occurred at any point north of Ticonderoga, he could not have ſeen the fall, as they retreated immediately after the battle: if it had taken place ſouth of that point, it would have been off the war-path which they had determined to purſue. We muſt conclude, therefore, that the battle took place at Ticonderoga, a little north of the ruins of the old Fort Carillon, directly on the ſhore of the lake. If the reader will examine the plan of the battle as given by Champlain's engraving, he will ſee that it conforms with great exactneſs to the known topography of the place. The Iroquois, who had their choice of poſitions, are on the north, in the direction of Willow Point, where they can moſt eaſily retreat, and where Champlain and his allies can be more eaſily hemmed in near the point of the cape. The Iroquois are on lower ground, and we know that the ſurface there ſhelves to the north. The well-known ſandy bottom of the lake at this place would furniſh the means of faſtening the canoes, by forcing poles into it, a little out from the ſhore during the night, as they actually did. On Champlain's map of 1632, this point is referred to as the location of the battle; and in his note on the map, No. 65, he ſays this is the place where the Iroquois were defeated by Champlain. All the facts of the narrative thus point to Ticonderoga, and render it indiſputable that this was the ſcene of the firſt of the many recorded conflicts on this memorable lake. We ſhould not have entered into this diſcuſſion ſo fully, had not ſeveral writers, not well informed, expreſſed views wholly inconſiſtent with known facts.

[349] The Indian name of Lake Champlain is *Caniaderiguarûnte*, the lake that is the gate of the country. —*Vide Adminiſtration of the Colonies*, by Thomas Pownall, 1768, p. 267. This name was very ſignificant, ſince the lake and valley of Champlain was the "gate," or war-path, by which the hoſtile tribes of Iroquois approached their enemies on the north of the St. Lawrence, and *vice verſa*.

CHAPTER X.

RETURN FROM THE BATTLE, AND WHAT TOOK PLACE ON THE WAY.

AFTER going ſome eight leagues, towards evening they took one of the priſoners, to whom they made a harangue, enumerating the cruelties which he and his men had already practiſed towards them without any mercy, and that, in like manner, he ought to make up his mind to receive as much. They commanded him to ſing, if he had courage, which he did; but it was a very ſad ſong.

Meanwhile, our men kindled a fire; and, when it was well burning, they each took a brand, and burned this poor creature gradually, ſo as to make him ſuffer greater torment. Sometimes they ſtopped, and threw water on his back. Then they tore out his nails, and applied fire to the extremities of his fingers and private member. Afterwards, they flayed the top of his head, and had a kind of gum poured all hot upon it; then they pierced his arms near the wriſts, and, drawing up the ſinews with ſticks, they tore them out by force; but, ſeeing that they could not get them, they cut them. This poor wretch uttered terrible cries, and it excited my pity to ſee him treated in this manner, and yet ſhowing ſuch firmness that one would have ſaid, at times, that he ſuffered hardly any pain at all. They urged me ſtrongly to take ſome fire, and do as they did. I remonſtrated with them, ſaying that we practiſed no ſuch cruelties, but killed them at once; and that

that, if they wiſhed me to fire a muſket-ſhot at him, I ſhould be willing to do ſo. They refuſed, ſaying that he would not in that caſe ſuffer any pain. I went away from them, pained to ſee ſuch cruelties as they practiſed upon his body. When they ſaw that I was diſpleaſed, they called me, and told me to fire a muſket-ſhot at him. This I did without his ſeeing it, and thus put an end, by a ſingle ſhot, to all the torments he would have ſuffered, rather than ſee him tyrannized over. After his death, they were not yet ſatisfied, but opened him, and threw his entrails into the lake. Then they cut off his head, arms, and legs, which they ſcattered in different directions; keeping the ſcalp which they had flayed off, as they had done in the caſe of all the reſt whom they had killed in the conteſt. They were guilty alſo of another monſtroſity in taking his heart, cutting it into ſeveral pieces, and giving it to a brother of his to eat, as alſo to others of his companions, who were priſoners: they took it into their mouths, but would not ſwallow it. Some Algonquin ſavages, who were guarding them, made ſome of them ſpit it out, when they threw it into the water. This is the manner in which theſe people behave towards thoſe whom they capture in war, for whom it would be better to die fighting, or to kill themſelves on the ſpur of the moment, as many do, rather than fall into the hands of their enemies. After this execution, we ſet out on our return with the reſt of the priſoners, who kept ſinging as they went along, with no better hopes for the future than he had had who was ſo wretchedly treated.

Having arrived at the falls of the Iroquois, the Algonquins returned to their own country; ſo alſo the Ochateguins,

guins,[850] with a part of the priſoners: well ſatisfied with the reſults of the war, and that I had accompanied them ſo readily. We ſeparated accordingly with loud proteſtations of mutual friendſhip; and they aſked me whether I would not like to go into their country, to aſſiſt them with continued fraternal relations; and I promiſed that I would do ſo.

I returned with the Montagnais. After informing myſelf from the priſoners in regard to their country, and of its probable extent, we packed up the baggage for the return, which was accompliſhed with ſuch deſpatch that we went every day in their canoes twenty-five or thirty leagues, which was their uſual rate of travelling. When we arrived at the mouth of the river Iroquois, ſome of the ſavages dreamed that their enemies were purſuing them. This dream led them to move their camp forthwith, although the night was very inclement on account of the wind and rain; and they went and paſſed the remainder of the night, from fear of their enemies, amid high reeds on Lake St. Peter. Two days after, we arrived at our ſettlement, where I gave them ſome bread and peas; alſo ſome beads, which they aſked me for, in order to ornament the heads of their enemies, for the purpoſe of merry-making upon their return. The next day, I went with them in their canoes as far as Tadouſſac, in order to witneſs their ceremonies. On approaching the ſhore, they each

[850] The Indian allies on this expedition were the Algonquins (*Algoumequins*), the Hurons (*Ochatequins*), and the Montagnais (*Montagnets*). The two former, on their way to Quebec, had met Champlain near the river St. Anne, and joined him and the Montagnais, who belonged in the neighborhood of Tadouſſac, or farther eaſt. — *Vide antea*, p. 202. They now, at the falls near the Baſin of Chambly, departed to their homes, perhaps on the Ottawa River and the ſhores of Lake Huron.

each took a ſtick, to the end of which they hung the heads of their enemies, who had been killed, together with ſome beads, all of them ſinging. When they were through with this, the women undreſſed themſelves, ſo as to be in a ſtate of entire nudity, when they jumped into the water, and ſwam to the prows of the canoes to take the heads of their enemies, which were on the ends of long poles before their boats: then they hung them about their necks, as if it had been ſome coſtly chain, ſinging and dancing meanwhile. Some days after, they preſented me with one of theſe heads, as if it were ſomething very precious; and alſo with a pair of arms taken from their enemies, to keep and ſhow to the king. This, for the ſake of gratifying them, I promiſed to do.

After ſome days, I went to Quebec, whither ſome Algonquin ſavages came, expreſſing their regret at not being preſent at the defeat of their enemies, and preſenting me with ſome furs, in conſideration of my having gone there and aſſiſted their friends.

Some days after they had ſet out for their country, diſtant about a hundred and twenty leagues from our ſettlement, I went to Tadouſſac to ſee whether Pont Gravé had returned from Gaſpé, whither he had gone. He did not arrive until the next day, when he told me that he had decided to return to France. We concluded to leave an upright man, Captain Pierre Chavin of Dieppe, to command at Quebec, until Sieur de Monts ſhould arrange matters there.

CHAPTER XI.

CHAPTER XI.

Return to France, and what occurred up to the Time of Re-embarkation.

AFTER forming this reſolution, we went to Quebec to eſtabliſh him in authority, and leave him every thing requiſite and neceſſary for the ſettlement, together with fifteen men. Every thing being arranged, we ſet out on the firſt day of September[351] for Tadouſſac, in order to fit out our veſſel for returning to France.

We ſet out accordingly from the latter place on the 5th of the month, and on the 8th anchored at Iſle Percée. On Thurſday the 10th, we ſet out from there, and on the 18th, the Tueſday following, we arrived at the Grand Bank. On the 2d of October, we got ſoundings. On the 8th, we anchored at Conquet[352] in Lower Brittany. On Saturday the 10th, we ſet out from there, arriving at Honfleur on the 13th.

After diſembarking, I did not wait long before taking poſt to go to Sieur de Monts, who was then at Fontainebleau, where His Majeſty was. Here I reported to him in detail all that had tranſpired in regard to the winter quarters and our new explorations, and my hopes for the future in view of the promiſes of the ſavages called Ochateguins, who are good Iroquois.[353] The other Iroquois, their enemies, dwell more to

[351] September, 1609.

[352] A ſmall ſeaport town in the department of Finiſterre, twelve miles weſt of Breſt.

[353] The Ochateguins, called by the French Hurons, were a branch of the Iroquois. Their real name was Yendots. They were at this time allied with the Algonquins,

to the ſouth. The language of the former does not differ much from that of the people recently diſcovered and hitherto unknown to us, which they underſtand when ſpoken.

I at once waited upon His Majeſty, and gave him an account of my voyage, which afforded him pleaſure and ſatiſfaction. I had a girdle made of porcupine quills, very well worked, after the manner of the country where it was made, and which His Majeſty thought very pretty. I had alſo two little birds, of the ſize of blackbirds and of a carnation color;[354] alſo, the head of a fiſh caught in the great lake of the Iroquois, having a very long ſnout and two or three rows of very ſharp teeth. A repreſentation of this fiſh may be found on the great lake, on my geographical map.[355]

After I had concluded my interview with His Majeſty, Sieur de Monts determined to go to Rouen to meet his aſſociates, the Sieurs Collier and Le Gendre, merchants of Rouen, to conſider what ſhould be done the coming year. They reſolved to continue the ſettlement, and finiſh the explorations up the great river St. Lawrence, in accordance with the promiſes of the Ochateguins, made on condition that we ſhould aſſiſt them in their wars, as I had given them to underſtand.

Pont Gravé was appointed to go to Tadouſſac, not only for traffic, but to engage in any thing elſe that might realize means for defraying the expenſes.

Sieur Lucas Le Gendre, of Rouen, one of the partners, was ordered to ſee to the purchaſe of merchandiſe and ſupplies, the

Algonquins, in a deadly war with their Iroquois couſins, the Five Nations. — *Vide Gallatin's Synopſis*, Tranſactions of Am. Antiq. Society, Cambridge, 1836, Vol. II. p. 69, *et paſſim*.

[354] The ſcarlet tanager, *Pyranga rubra*, of a ſcarlet color, with black wings and tail. It ranges from Texas to Lake Huron.

[355] *Vide antea*, p. 216; and map, 1612.

the repair of the veſſels, obtaining crews, and other things neceſſary for the voyage.

After theſe matters were arranged, Sieur de Monts returned to Paris, I accompanying him, where I ſtayed until the end of February. During this time, Sieur de Monts endeavored to obtain a new commiſſion for trading in the newly diſcovered regions, and where no one had traded before. This he was unable to accompliſh, although his requeſts and propoſals were juſt and reaſonable.

But, finding that there was no hope of obtaining this commiſſion, he did not ceaſe to proſecute his plan, from his deſire that every thing might turn out to the profit and honor of France.

During this time, Sieur de Monts did not expreſs to me his pleaſure in regard to me perſonally, until I told him it had been reported to me that he did not wiſh to have me winter in Canada, which, however, was not true, for he referred the whole matter to my pleaſure.

I provided myſelf with whatever was deſirable and neceſſary for ſpending the winter at our ſettlement in Quebec. For this purpoſe I ſet out from Paris the laſt day of February following,[356] and proceeded to Honfleur, where the embarkation was to be made. I went by way of Rouen, where I ſtayed two days. Thence I went to Honfleur, where I found Pont Gravé and Le Gendre, who told me they had embarked what was neceſſary for the ſettlement. I was very glad to find that we were ready to ſet ſail, but uncertain whether the ſupplies were good and adequate for our ſojourn and for ſpending the winter.

[356] Anno Domini 1610.

SECOND VOYAGE

OF

SIEUR DE CHAMPLAIN

TO NEW FRANCE, IN THE YEAR 1610.

CHAPTER I.

DEPARTURE FROM FRANCE TO RETURN TO NEW FRANCE, AND OCCURRENCES UNTIL OUR ARRIVAL AT THE SETTLEMENT.

THE weather having become favorable, I embarked at Honfleur with a number of artiſans on the 7th of the month of March.[357] But, encountering bad weather in the Channel, we were obliged to put in on the Engliſh coaſt at a place called Porlan,[358] in the roadſtead of which we ſtayed ſome days, when we weighed anchor for the Iſle d'Huy,[359] near the Engliſh coaſt, ſince we found the roadſtead of Porlan very

[357] In the title above, Champlain calls this his SECOND VOYAGE, by which he means doubtleſs to ſay that this is the ſecond voyage which he had undertaken as lieutenant. The firſt and ſecond voyages, of 1603 and of 1604, were not made under his direction.

[358] Portland in Dorſetſhire, England.

[359] *Iſle d'Huy.* This plainly refers to the Iſle of Wight. On Ortelius's carte of 1603, it is ſpelled Vigt; and the orthography, obtained probably through the ear and not the eye, might eaſily have been miſtaken by Champlain.

very bad. When near this iſland, ſo denſe a fog aroſe, that we were obliged to put in at the Hougue.[360]

Ever ſince the departure from Honfleur, I had been afflicted with a very ſevere illneſs, which took away my hopes of being able to make the voyage; ſo that I embarked in a boat to return to Havre in France, to be treated there, being very ill on board the veſſel. My expectation was, on recovering my health, to embark again in another veſſel, which had not yet left Honfleur, in which Des Marais, ſon-in-law of Pont Gravé, was to embark; but I had myſelf carried, ſtill very ill, to Honfleur, where the veſſel on which I had ſet out put in on the 15th of March, for ſome ballaſt, which it needed in order to be properly trimmed. Here it remained until the 8th of April. During this time, I recovered in a great degree; and, though ſtill feeble and weak, I nevertheleſs embarked again.

We ſet out anew on the 18th of April, arriving at the Grand Bank on the 19th, and ſighting the Iſlands of St. Pierre on the 22d.[361] When off Menthane, we met a veſſel from St. Malo, on which was a young man, who, while drinking to the health of Pont Gravé, loſt control of himſelf and was thrown into the ſea by the motion of the veſſel and drowned, it being impoſſible to render him aſſiſtance on account of the violence of the wind.

On the 26th of the month, we arrived at Tadouſſac, where there

[360] *La Hougue.* There are two ſmall iſlands laid down on the carte of Ortelius, 1603, under the name *Les Hougueaux*, and a hamlet near by called Hougo, which is that, doubtleſs, to which Champlain here refers.

[361] Comparing this ſtatement with the context, it will be clear that the paſſage ſhould read the 8th, and not the 18th of April. The "Iſlands of St. Pierre," *Iſles S. Pierre*, includes the Iſland of St. Peter and the cluſter ſurrounding it.

there were veſſels which had arrived on the 18th, a thing which had not been ſeen for more than ſixty years, as the old mariners ſaid who ſail regularly to this country.[302] This was owing to the mild winter and the ſmall amount of ice, which did not prevent the entrance of theſe veſſels. We learned from a young nobleman, named Sieur du Parc, who had ſpent the winter at our ſettlement, that all his companions were in good health, only a few having been ill, and they but ſlightly. He alſo informed us that there had been ſcarcely any winter, and that they had uſually had freſh meat the entire ſeaſon, and that their hardeſt taſk had been to keep up good cheer.

This winter ſhows how thoſe undertaking in future ſuch enterpriſes ought to proceed, it being very difficult to make a new ſettlement without labor; and without encountering adverſe fortune the firſt year, as has been the caſe in all our firſt ſettlements. But, in fact, by avoiding ſalt food and uſing freſh meat, the health is as good here as in France.

The ſavages had been waiting from day to day for us to go to the war with them. When they learned that Pont Gravé and I had arrived together, they rejoiced greatly, and came to ſpeak with us.

I went on ſhore to aſſure them that we would go with them, in conformity with the promiſes they had made me, namely, that upon our return from the war they would ſhow me the Trois Rivières, and take me to a ſea ſo large that the

[302] M. Ferland infers from this ſtatement that the Baſques, Normans, and Bretons had been accuſtomed for the laſt ſixty years, from the laſt voyage of Roberval in 1549, to extend their fiſhing and fur-trading voyages as far as Tadouſſac. — *Vide Cours d'Hiſt. du Canada*, as cited by Laverdière.

the end of it cannot be ſeen, whence we ſhould return by way of the Saguenay to Tadouſſac. I aſked them if they ſtill had this intention, to which they replied that they had, but that it could not be carried out before the next year, which pleaſed me. But I had promiſed the Algonquins and Ochateguins that I would aſſiſt them alſo in their wars, they having promiſed to ſhow me their country, the great lake, ſome copper mines, and other things, which they had indicated to me. I accordingly had two ſtrings to my bow, ſo that, in caſe one ſhould break, the other might hold.

On the 28th of the month, I ſet out from Tadouſſac for Quebec, where I found Captain Pierre,[363] who commanded there, and all his companions in good health. There was alſo a ſavage captain with them, named Batiſcan, with ſome of his companions, who were awaiting us, and who were greatly pleaſed at my arrival, ſinging and dancing the entire evening. I provided a banquet for them, which gratified them very much. They had a good meal, for which they were very thankful, and invited me with ſeven others to an entertainment of theirs, not a ſmall mark of reſpect with them. We each one carried a porringer, according to cuſtom, and brought it home full of meat, which we gave to whomſoever we pleaſed.

Some days after I had ſet out from Tadouſſac, the Montagnais arrived at Quebec, to the number of ſixty able-bodied men, *en route* for the war. They tarried here ſome days, enjoying themſelves, and not omitting to ply me frequently with queſtions, to aſſure themſelves that I would not fail in my

[363] Captain Pierre Chavin, of Dieppe. *Vide antea*, p. 227.

my promiſes to them. I aſſured them, and again made promiſes to them, aſking them if they had found me breaking my word in the paſt. They were greatly pleaſed when I renewed my promiſes to them.

They ſaid to me: "Here are numerous Baſques and Miſtigoches" (this is the name they give to the Normans and people of St. Malo), "who ſay they will go to the war with us. What do you think of it? Do they ſpeak the truth?" I anſwered no, and that I knew very well what they really meant; that they ſaid this only to get poſſeſſion of their commodities. They replied to me: "You have ſpoken the truth. They are women, and want to make war only upon our beavers." They went on talking ſtill farther in a facetious mood, and in regard to the manner and order of going to the war.

They determined to ſet out, and await me at the Trois Rivières, thirty leagues above Quebec, where I had promiſed to join them, together with four barques loaded with merchandiſe, in order to traffic in peltries, among others with the Ochateguins, who were to await me at the mouth of the river of the Iroquois, as they had promiſed the year before, and to bring there as many as four hundred men to go to the war.

CHAPTER II.

CHAPTER II.

DEPARTURE FROM QUEBEC TO ASSIST OUR ALLIED SAVAGES IN THEIR WAR AGAINST THE IROQUOIS, THEIR ENEMIES; AND ALL THAT TRANSPIRED UNTIL OUR RETURN TO THE SETTLEMENT.

I SET out from Quebec on the 14th of June, to meet the Montagnais, Algonquins, and Ochateguins, who were to be at the mouth of the river of the Iroquois. When I was eight leagues from Quebec, I met a canoe, containing two ſavages, one an Algonquin, and the other a Montagnais, who entreated me to advance as rapidly as poſſible, ſaying that the Algonquins and Ochateguins would in two days be at the rendezvous, to the number of two hundred, with two hundred others to come a little later, together with Yroquet, one of their chiefs. They aſked me if I was ſatisfied with the coming of theſe ſavages. I told them I could not be diſpleaſed at it, ſince they had kept their word. They came on board my barque, where I gave them a good entertainment. Shortly after conferring with them about many matters concerning their wars, the Algonquin ſavage, one of their chiefs, drew from a ſack a piece of copper a foot long, which he gave me. This was very handſome and quite pure. He gave me to underſtand that there were large quantities where he had taken this, which was on the bank of a river, near a great lake. He ſaid that they gathered it in lumps, and, having melted it, ſpread it in ſheets, ſmoothing it

it with ſtones. I was very glad of this preſent, although of ſmall value.[364]

Arriving

[364] This teſtimony of the Algonquin chief is intereſting, and hiſtorically important. We know of no earlier reference to the art of melting and malleating copper in any of the reports of the navigators to our northern coaſt. That the natives poſſeſſed this art is placed beyond queſtion by this paſſage, as well as by the recent diſcovery of copper implements in Wiſconſin, bearing the marks of mechanical fuſion and malleation. The ſpecimens of copper in the poſſeſſion of the natives on the coaſt of New England, as referred to by Brereton and Archer, can well be accounted for without ſuppoſing them to be of native manufacture, though they may have been ſo. The Baſques, Bretons, Engliſh, and Portugueſe had been annually on our northern coaſts for fiſhing and fur-trading for more than a century, and had diſtributed a vaſt quantity of articles for ſavage ornament and uſe; and it would, therefore, be difficult to prove that the copper chains and collars and other trinkets mentioned by Brereton and Archer were not derived from this ſource. But the teſtimony of the early navigators in the leſs frequented region of the St. Lawrence is not open to this interpretation. When Cartier advanced up the Gulf of Lawrence in 1535, the ſavages pointed out the region of the Saguenay, which they informed him was inhabited, and that from thence came the red copper which they called *caignetdaze*.

"Et par les ſauuaiges que auions, nous a eſté dict que ceſtoit le commencement du Saguenay & terre habitable. Et que de la ve noit le cuyure rouge qu'ilz appellẽt caignetdaze."—*Brief Récit*, par Jacques Cartier, 1545, D'Avezac ed., p. 9. *Vide idem*, p. 34.

When Cartier was at Iſle Coudres, ſay fifty miles below Quebec, on his return, the Indians from the Saguenay came on board his ſhip, and made certain preſents to their chief, Donnacona, whom Cartier had captured, and was taking home with him to France. Among theſe gifts, they gave him a great knife of red copper, which came from the Saguenay. The words of Cartier are as follows: —

"Dõnerent audict Donnacona trois pacquetz de peaulx de byeures & loups marins auec vng grãd couſteau de cuyure rouge, qui viẽnt du Saguenay & autres choſes." — *Idem*, p. 44.

This voyage of Cartier, made in 1535, was the earlieſt viſit by any navigator on record to this region. It was eighty years before the Récollects or any other miſſionaries had approached the Gulf of St. Lawrence. There was, therefore, no intercourſe previous to this that would be likely to furniſh the natives with European utenſils of any kind, particularly knives of *red copper*. It is impoſſible to ſuppoſe that this knife, ſeen by Cartier, and declared by the natives to have come from the Saguenay, a term then covering an indefinite region ſtretching we know not how far to the north and weſt, could be otherwiſe than of Indian manufacture. In the text, Champlain diſtinctly ſtates on the teſtimony of an Algonquin chief that it was the cuſtom of the Indians to melt copper for the purpoſe of forming it into ſheets, and it is obvious that it would require ſcarcely greater ingenuity to fabricate moulds in which to caſt the various implements which they needed in their ſimple arts. Some of theſe implements, with indubitable marks of having been caſt in moulds, have been recently diſcovered, with a multitude of others, which may or may not have

paſſed

Arriving at Trois Rivières, I found all the Montagnais awaiting me, and the four barques as I ſtated above, which had gone to trade with them.

The ſavages were delighted to ſee me, and I went on ſhore to ſpeak with them. They entreated me, together with my companions, to embark on their canoes and no others, when we went to the war, ſaying that they were our old friends. This I promiſed them, telling them that I deſired to ſet out at once, ſince the wind was favorable; and that my barque was not ſo ſwift as their canoes, for which reaſon I deſired to go on in advance. They earneſtly entreated me to wait until the morning of the next day, when we would all go together, adding that they would not go faſter than I ſhould. Finally, to ſatisfy them, I promiſed to do this, at which they were greatly pleaſed.

On the following day, we all ſet out together, and continued our route until the morning of the next day, the 19th of the month, when we arrived at an iſland[365] off the river

paſſed through the ſame proceſs. The teſtimony of Champlain in the text, and the examples of moulded copper found in the lake region, render the evidence, in our judgment, entirely concluſive that the art of working copper both by fuſion and malleation exiſted among the Indians of America at the time of its firſt occupation by the French.

During the period of five years, beginning in 1871, an enthuſiaſtic antiquary, Mr. F. S. Perkins, of Wiſconſin, collected, within the borders of his own State, a hundred and forty-two copper implements, of a great variety of forms, and deſigned for numerous uſes, as axes, hatchets, ſpear-heads, arrow-heads, knives, gouges, chiſels, adzes, augers, gads, drills, and other articles of anomalous forms. Theſe are now depoſited in the archives of the Hiſtorical Society of Wiſconſin. Other collections are gradually forming. The proceſs is of neceſſity ſlow, as they are not often found in groups, but ſingly, here and there, as they are turned up by the plough or ſpade or other implements of huſbandry. The ſtatement of Champlain in the text, and the teſtimony of Cartier three-quarters of a century earlier, to which we have referred, give a new hiſtorical ſignificance to theſe recent diſcoveries, and both together throw a freſh light upon the pre-hiſtoric period.

[365] This was the Iſland St. Ignace, which

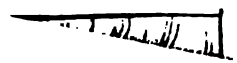
river of the Iroquois, and waited for the Algonquins, who were to be there the ſame day. While the Montagnais were felling trees to clear a place for dancing, and for arranging themſelves for the arrival of the Algonquins, an Algonquin canoe was ſuddenly ſeen coming in haſte, to bring word that the Algonquins had fallen in with a hundred Iroquois, who were ſtrongly barricaded, and that it would be difficult to conquer them, unleſs they ſhould come ſpeedily, together with the Matigoches, as they call us.

The alarm at once ſounded among them, and each one got into his canoe with his arms. They were quickly in readineſs, but with confuſion; for they were ſo precipitous that, inſtead of making haſte, they hindered one another. They came to our barque and the others, begging me, together with my companions, to go with them in their canoes, and they were ſo urgent that I embarked with four others. I requeſted our pilot, La Routte, to ſtay in the barque, and ſend me ſome four or five more of my companions, if the other barques would ſend ſome ſhallops with men to aid us; for none of the barques were inclined to go with the ſavages, except Captain Thibaut, who, having a barque there, went with me. The ſavages cried out to thoſe who remained, ſaying that they were woman-hearted, and that all they could do was to make war upon their peltry.

Meanwhile, after going ſome half a league, all the ſavages croſſing the river landed, and, leaving their canoes, took their bucklers,

which lies oppoſite the mouth of the river Iroquois or Richelieu. Champlain's deſcription is not ſufficiently definite to enable us to identify the exact location of this conflict with the ſavages. It is, however, evident, from ſeveral intimations found in the text, that it was about a league from the mouth of the Richelieu, and was probably on the bank of that river.

bucklers, bows, arrows, clubs, and ſwords, which they attach to the end of large ſticks, and proceeded to make their way in the woods, ſo faſt that we ſoon loſt ſight of them, they leaving us, five in number, without guides. This diſpleaſed us; but, keeping their tracks conſtantly in ſight, we followed them, although we were often deceived. We went through denſe woods, and over ſwamps and marſhes, with the water always up to our knees, greatly encumbered by a pike-man's corſelet, with which each one was armed. We were alſo tormented in a grievous and unheard-of manner by quantities of moſquitoes, which were ſo thick that they ſcarcely permitted us to draw breath. After going about half a league under theſe circumſtances, and no longer knowing where we were, we perceived two ſavages paſſing through the woods, to whom we called and told them to ſtay with us, and guide us to the whereabouts of the Iroquois, otherwiſe we could not go there, and ſhould get loſt in the woods. They ſtayed to guide us. After proceeding a ſhort diſtance, we ſaw a ſavage coming in haſte to us, to induce us to advance as rapidly as poſſible, giving me to underſtand that the Algonquins and Montagnais had tried to force the barricade of the Iroquois but had been repulſed, that ſome of the beſt men of the Montagnais had been killed in the attempt, and ſeveral wounded, and that they had retired to wait for us, in whom was their only hope. We had not gone an eighth of a league with this ſavage, who was an Algonquin captain, before we heard the yells and cries on both ſides, as they jeered at each other, and were ſkirmiſhing ſlightly while awaiting us. As ſoon as the ſavages perceived us, they began to ſhout, ſo that one could not have heard it thunder.



I gave orders to my companions to follow me ſteadily, and not to leave me on any account. I approached the barricade of the enemy, in order to reconnoitre it. It was conſtructed of large trees placed one upon an other, and of a circular ſhape, the uſual form of their fortifications. All the Montagnais and Algonquins approached likewiſe the barricade. Then we commenced firing numerous muſket-ſhots through the bruſh-wood, ſince we could not ſee them, as they could us. I was wounded while firing my firſt ſhot at the ſide of their barricade by an arrow, which pierced the end of my ear and entered my neck. I ſeized the arrow, and tore it from my neck. The end of it was armed with a very ſharp ſtone. One of my companions alſo was wounded at the ſame time in the arm by an arrow, which I tore out for him. Yet my wound did not prevent me from doing my duty: our ſavages alſo, on their part, as well as the enemy, did their duty, ſo that you could ſee the arrows fly on all ſides as thick as hail. The Iroquois were aſtoniſhed at the noiſe of our muſkets, and eſpecially that the balls penetrated better than their arrows. They were ſo frightened at the effect produced that, ſeeing ſeveral of their companions fall wounded

---

CHAMPLAIN'S EXPLANATION OF THE ACCOMPANYING MAP.

FORT DES IROQUOIS.

A. The fort of the Iroquois. *B.* The Iroquois throwing themſelves into the river to eſcape the purſuit of the Montagnais and Algonquins who followed for the purpoſe of killing them. *D.* Sieur de Champlain and five of his men. *E.* The ſavages friendly to us. *F.* Sieur des Prairies of St. Malo with his comrades. *G.* Shallop of Sieur des Prairies. *H.* Great trees cut down for the purpoſe of deſtroying the fort of the Iroquois.

wounded and dead, they threw themſelves on the ground whenever they heard a diſcharge, ſuppoſing that the ſhots were ſure. We ſcarcely ever miſſed firing two or three balls at one ſhot, reſting our muſkets moſt of the time on the ſide of their barricade. But, ſeeing that our ammunition began to fail, I ſaid to all the ſavages that it was neceſſary to break down their barricades and capture them by ſtorm; and that, in order to accompliſh this, they muſt take their ſhields, cover themſelves with them, and thus approach ſo near as to be able to faſten ſtout ropes to the poſts that ſupported the barricades, and pull them down by main ſtrength, in that way making an opening large enough to permit them to enter the fort. I told them that we would meanwhile, by our muſketry-fire, keep off the enemy, as they endeavored to prevent them from accompliſhing this; alſo that a number of them ſhould get behind ſome large trees, which were near the barricade, in order to throw them down upon the enemy, and that others ſhould protect theſe with their ſhields, in order to keep the enemy from injuring them. All this they did very promptly. And, as they were about finiſhing the work, the barques, diſtant a league and a half, hearing the reports of our muſkets, knew that we were engaged in conflict; and a young man from St. Malo, full of courage, Des Prairies by name, who like the reſt had come with his barque to engage in peltry traffic, ſaid to his companions that it was a great ſhame to let me fight in this way with the ſavages without coming to my aſſiſtance; that for his part he had too high a ſenſe of honor to permit him to do ſo, and that he did not wiſh to expose himſelf to this reproach. Accordingly, he determined to come to me in a ſhallop with ſome of his companions,

companions, together with ſome of mine whom he took with him. Immediately upon his arrival, he went towards the fort of the Iroquois, ſituated on the bank of the river. Here he landed, and came to find me. Upon ſeeing him, I ordered our ſavages who were breaking down the fortreſs to ſtop, ſo that the new-comers might have their ſhare of the ſport. I requeſted Sieur des Prairies and his companions to fire ſome ſalvos of muſketry, before our ſavages ſhould carry by ſtorm the enemy, as they had decided to do. This they did, each one firing ſeveral ſhots, in which all did their duty well. After they had fired enough, I addreſſed myſelf to our ſavages, urging them to finiſh the work. Straightway, they approached the barricade, as they had previouſly done, while we on the flank were to fire at thoſe who ſhould endeavor to keep them from breaking it down. They behaved ſo well and bravely that, with the help of our muſkets, they made an opening, which, however, was difficult to go through, as there was ſtill left a portion as high as a man, there being alſo branches of trees there which had been beaten down, forming a ſerious obſtacle. But, when I ſaw that the entrance was quite practicable, I gave orders not to fire any more, which they obeyed. At the ſame inſtant, ſome twenty or thirty, both of ſavages and of our own men, entered, ſword in hand, without finding much reſiſtance. Immediately, all who were unharmed took to flight. But they did not proceed far; for they were brought down by thoſe around the barricade, and thoſe who eſcaped were drowned in the river. We captured ſome fifteen priſoners, the reſt being killed by muſket-ſhots, arrows, and the ſword. When the fight was over, there came another ſhallop, containing ſome of my companions. This, although

although behind time, was yet in ſeaſon for the booty, which, however, was not of much account. There were only robes of beaver-ſkin, and dead bodies covered with blood, which the ſavages would not take the trouble to plunder, laughing at thoſe in the laſt ſhallop, who did ſo; for the others did not engage in ſuch low buſineſs. This, then, is the victory obtained by God's grace, for gaining which they gave us much praiſe.

The ſavages ſcalped the dead, and took the heads as a trophy of victory, according to their cuſtom. They returned with fifty wounded Montagnais and Algonquins and three dead, ſinging and leading their priſoners with them. They attached to ſticks in the prows of their canoes the heads and a dead body cut into quarters, to eat in revenge, as they ſaid. In this way, they went to our barques off the River of the Iroquois.

My companions and I embarked in a ſhallop, where I had my wound dreſſed by the ſurgeon, De Boyer, of Rouen, who likewiſe had come here for the purpoſe of traffic. The ſavages ſpent all this day in dancing and ſinging.

The next day, Sieur de Pont Gravé arrived with another ſhallop, loaded with merchandiſe. Moreover, there was alſo a barque containing Captain Pierre, which he had left behind, it being able to come only with difficulty, as it was rather heavy and a poor ſailer.

The ſame day there was ſome trading in peltry, but the other barques carried off the better part of the booty. It was doing them a great favor to ſearch out a ſtrange people for them, that they might afterwards carry off the profit without any riſk or danger.

That

That day, I aſked the ſavages for an Iroquois priſoner which they had, and they gave him to me. What I did for him was not a little; for I ſaved him from many tortures which he muſt have ſuffered in company with his fellow-priſoners, whoſe nails they tore out, alſo cutting off their fingers, and burning them in ſeveral places. They put to death on the ſame day two or three, and, in order to increaſe their torture, treated them in the following manner.

They took the priſoners to the border of the water, and faſtened them perfectly upright to a ſtake. Then each came with a torch of birch bark, and burned them, now in this place, now in that. The poor wretches, feeling the fire, raiſed ſo loud a cry that it was ſomething frightful to hear; and frightful indeed are the cruelties which theſe barbarians practiſe towards each other. After making them ſuffer greatly in this manner and burning them with the above-mentioned bark, taking ſome water, they threw it on their bodies to increaſe their ſuffering. Then they applied the fire anew, ſo that the ſkin fell from their bodies, they continuing to utter loud cries and exclamations, and dancing until the poor wretches fell dead on the ſpot.

As ſoon as a body fell to the ground dead, they ſtruck it violent blows with ſticks, when they cut off the arms, legs, and other parts; and he was not regarded by them as manly, who did not cut off a piece of the fleſh, and give it to the dogs. Such are the courteſies priſoners receive. But ſtill they endure all the tortures inflicted upon them with ſuch conſtancy that the ſpectator is aſtoniſhed.

As to the other priſoners, which remained in poſſeſſion of the Algonquins and Montagnais, it was left to their wives and

and daughters to put them to death with their own hands; and, in ſuch a matter, they do not ſhow themſelves leſs inhuman than the men, but even ſurpaſs them by far in cruelty; for they deviſe by their cunning more cruel puniſhments, in which they take pleaſure, putting an end to their lives by the moſt extreme pains.

The next day there arrived the Captain Yroquet, alſo another Ochateguin, with ſome eighty men, who regretted greatly not having been preſent at the defeat. Among all theſe tribes there were preſent nearly two hundred men, who had never before ſeen Chriſtians, for whom they conceived a great admiration.

We were ſome three days together on an iſland off the river of the Iroquois, when each tribe returned to its own country.

I had a young lad, who had already ſpent two winters at Quebec, and who was deſirous of going with the Algonquins to learn their language. Pont Gravé and I concluded that, if he entertained this deſire, it would be better to ſend him to this place than elſewhere, that he might aſcertain the nature of their country, ſee the great lake, obſerve the rivers and tribes there, and alſo explore the mines and objects of ſpecial intereſt in the localities occupied by theſe tribes, in order that he might inform us, upon his return, of the facts of the caſe. We aſked him if it was his deſire to go, for I did not wiſh to force him. But he anſwered the queſtion at once by conſenting to the journey with great pleaſure.

Going to Captain Yroquet, who was ſtrongly attached to me, I aſked him if he would like to take this young boy to his country to ſpend the winter with him, and bring him back

back in the ſpring. He promiſed to do ſo, and treat him as his own ſon, ſaying that he was greatly pleaſed with the idea. He communicated the plan to all the Algonquins, who were not greatly pleaſed with it, from fear that ſome accident might happen to the boy, which would cauſe us to make war upon them. This heſitation cooled the deſire of Yroquet, who came and told me that all his companions failed to find the plan a good one. Meanwhile, all the barques had left, excepting that of Pont Gravé, who, having ſome preſſing buſineſs on hand, as he told me, went away too. But I ſtayed with my barque to ſee how the matter of the journey of this boy, which I was deſirous ſhould take place, would reſult. I accordingly went on ſhore, and aſked to ſpeak with the captains, who came to me, and we ſat down for a conference, together with many other ſavages of age and diſtinction in their troops. Then I aſked them why Captain Yroquet, whom I regarded as my friend, had refuſed to take my boy with him. I ſaid that it was not acting like a brother or friend to refuſe me what he had promiſed, and what could reſult in nothing but good to them; taking the boy would be a means of increaſing ſtill more our friendſhip with them and forming one with their neighbors; that their ſcruples at doing ſo only gave me an unfavorable opinion of them; and that if they would not take the boy, as Captain Yroquet had promiſed, I would never have any friendſhip with them, for they were not children to break their promiſes in this manner. They then told me that they were ſatisfied with the arrangement, only they feared that, from change of diet to ſomething worſe than he had been accuſtomed to, ſome harm might happen

to

to the boy, which would provoke my diſpleaſure. This they ſaid was the only cauſe of their refuſal.

I replied that the boy would be able to adapt himſelf without difficulty to their manner of living and uſual food, and that, if through ſickneſs or the fortunes of war any harm ſhould befall him, this would not interrupt my friendly feelings towards them, and that we were all expoſed to accidents, which we muſt ſubmit to with patience. But I ſaid that if they treated him badly, and if any misfortune happened to him through their fault, I ſhould in truth be diſpleaſed, which, however, I did not expect from them, but quite the contrary.

They ſaid to me: "Since, then, this is your deſire, we will take him, and treat him like ourſelves. But you ſhall alſo take a young man in his place, to go to France. We ſhall be greatly pleaſed to hear him report the fine things he ſhall have ſeen." I accepted with pleaſure the propoſition, and took the young man. He belonged to the tribe of the Ochateguins, and was alſo glad to go with me. This preſented an additional motive for treating my boy ſtill better than they might otherwiſe have done. I fitted him out with what he needed, and we made a mutual promiſe to meet at the end of June.

We parted with many promiſes of friendſhip. Then they went away towards the great fall of the River of Canada, while I returned to Quebec. On my way, I met Pont Gravé on Lake St. Peter, who was waiting for me with a large patache, which he had fallen in with on this lake, and which had not been expeditious enough to reach the place where the ſavages were, on account of its poor ſailing qualities.

We all returned together to Quebec, when Pont Gravé went

went to Tadouſſac, to arrange ſome matters pertaining to our quarters there. But I ſtayed at Quebec to ſee to the reconſtruction of ſome paliſades about our abode, until Pont Gravé ſhould return, when we could confer together as to what was to be done.

On the 4th of June, Des Marais arrived at Quebec, greatly to our joy; for we were afraid that ſome accident had happened to him at ſea.

Some days after, an Iroquois priſoner, whom I had kept guarded, got away in conſequence of my giving him too much liberty, and made his eſcape, urged to do ſo by fear, notwithſtanding the aſſurances given him by a woman of his tribe we had at our ſettlement.

A few days after, Pont Gravé wrote me that he was thinking of paſſing the winter at the ſettlement, being moved to do ſo by many conſiderations. I replied that, if he expected to fare better than I had done in the paſt, he would do well.

He accordingly haſtened to provide himſelf with the ſupplies neceſſary for the ſettlement.

After I had finiſhed the paliſade about our habitation, and put every thing in order, Captain Pierre returned in a barque in which he had gone to Tadouſſac to ſee his friends. I alſo went there to aſcertain what would reſult from the ſecond trading, and to attend to ſome other ſpecial buſineſs which I had there. Upon my arrival, I found there Pont Gravé, who ſtated to me in detail his plans, and the reaſons inducing him to ſpend the winter. I told him frankly what I thought of the matter; namely, that I believed he would not derive much profit from it, according to the appearances that were plainly to be ſeen.

He determined accordingly to change his plan, and deſpatched a barque with orders for Captain Pierre to return from Quebec on account of ſome buſineſs he had with him; with the intelligence alſo that ſome veſſels, which had arrived from Brouage, brought the news that Monſieur de Saint Luc had come by poſt from Paris, expelled thoſe of the religion from Brouage, re-enforced the garriſon with ſoldiers, and then returned to Court;[366] that the king had been killed, and two or three days after him the Duke of Sully, together with two other lords, whoſe names they did not know.[367]

All theſe tidings gave great ſorrow to the true French in theſe quarters. As for myſelf, it was hard for me to believe it, on account of the different reports about the matter, and which had not much appearance of truth. Still, I was greatly troubled at hearing ſuch mournful news.

Now, after having ſtayed three or four days longer at Tadouſſac, I ſaw the loſs which many merchants muſt ſuffer, who had taken on board a large quantity of merchandiſe, and fitted out a great number of veſſels, in expectation of doing a good buſineſs in the fur-trade, which was ſo poor on account of the great number of veſſels, that many will for a long time remember the loſs which they ſuffered this year.

Sieur de Pont Gravé and I embarked, each of us in a barque, leaving Captain Pierre on the veſſel. We took Du Parc to Quebec, where we finiſhed what remained to be done

[366] For ſome account of Saint Luc, ſee Memoir, Vol. I. By thoſe of the religion, *ceux de la Religion*, are meant the Huguenots, or Proteſtants.

[367] The aſſaſſination of Henry IV. occurred on the 14th of May, 1610; but the rumor of the death of the Duke of Sully was erroneous. Maximelien de Béthune, the Duke of Sully, died on the 22d of December, 1641, at the age of eighty-two years.

done at the ſettlement. After every thing was in good condition, we reſolved that Du Parc, who had wintered there with Captain Pierre, ſhould remain again, and that Captain Pierre ſhould return to France with us, on account of ſome buſineſs that called him there.

We accordingly left Du Parc in command there, with ſixteen men, all of whom we enjoined to live ſoberly, and in the fear of God, and in ſtrict obſervance of the obedience due to the authority of Du Parc, who was left as their chief and commander, juſt as if one of us had remained. This they all promiſed to do, and to live in peace with each other.

As to the gardens, we left them all well ſupplied with kitchen vegetables of all ſorts, together with fine Indian corn, wheat, rye, and barley, which had been already planted. There were alſo vines which I had ſet out when I ſpent the winter there, but theſe they made no attempt to preſerve; for, upon my return, I found them all in ruins, and I was greatly diſpleaſed that they had given ſo little attention to the preſervation of ſo fine and good a plot, from which I had anticipated a favorable reſult.

After ſeeing that every thing was in good order, we ſet out from Quebec on the 8th of Auguſt for Tadouſſac, in order to prepare our veſſel, which was ſpeedily done.

CHAPTER III.

CHAPTER III.

RETURN TO FRANCE. — MEETING A WHALE; — THE MODE OF CAPTURING THEM.

ON the 13th of the month, we ſet out from Tadouſſac, arriving at Île Percée the next day, where we found a large number of veſſels engaged in the fiſhery, dry and green.

On the 18th of the month, we departed from Île Percée, paſſing in latitude 42°, without ſighting the Grand Bank, where the green fiſhery is carried on, as it is too narrow at this altitude.

When we were about half way acroſs, we encountered a whale, which was aſleep. The veſſel, paſſing over him, awakening him betimes, made a great hole in him near the tail, without damaging our veſſel; but he threw out an abundance of blood.

It has ſeemed to me not out of place to give here a brief deſcription of the mode of catching whales, which many have not witneſſed, and ſuppoſe that they are ſhot, owing to the falſe aſſertions about the matter made to them in their ignorance by impoſtors, and on account of which ſuch ideas have often been obſtinately maintained in my preſence.

Thoſe, then, moſt ſkilful in this fiſhery are the Baſques, who, for the purpoſe of engaging in it, take their veſſels to a place of ſecurity, and near where they think whales are plenty. Then they equip ſeveral ſhallops manned by competent men and provided with hawſers, ſmall ropes made of the beſt hemp

hemp to be found, at leaſt a hundred and fifty fathoms long. They are alſo provided with many halberds of the length of a ſhort pike, whoſe iron is ſix inches broad; others are from a foot and a half to two feet long, and very ſharp. Each ſhallop has a harpooner, the moſt agile and adroit man they have, whoſe pay is next higheſt to that of the maſters, his poſition being the moſt dangerous one. This ſhallop being outſide of the port, the men look in all quarters for a whale, tacking about in all directions. But, if they ſee nothing, they return to the ſhore, and aſcend the higheſt point they can find, and from which they can get the moſt extenſive view. Here they ſtation a man on the look-out. They are aided in catching ſight of a whale both by his ſize and the water he ſpouts through his blow-holes, which is more than a puncheon at a time, and two lances high. From the amount of this water, they eſtimate how much oil he will yield. From ſome they get as many as one hundred and twenty puncheons, from others leſs. Having caught ſight of this monſtrous fiſh, they haſten to embark in their ſhallops, and by rowing or ſailing they advance until they are upon him.

Seeing him under water, the harpooner goes at once to the prow of the ſhallop with his harpoon, an iron two feet long and half a foot wide at the lower part, and attached to a ſtick as long as a ſmall pike, in the middle of which is a hole to which the hawſer is made faſt. The harpooner, watching his time, throws his harpoon at the whale, which enters him well forward. As ſoon as he finds himſelf wounded, the whale goes down. And if by chance turning about, as he does ſometimes, his tail ſtrikes the ſhallop, it breaks

breaks it like glaſs. This is the only riſk they run of being killed in harpooning. As ſoon as they have thrown the harpoon into him, they let the hawſer run until the whale reaches the bottom. But ſometimes he does not go ſtraight to the bottom, when he drags the ſhallop eight or nine leagues or more, going as ſwiftly as a horſe. Very often they are obliged to cut their hawſer, for fear that the whale will take them under water. But, when he goes ſtraight to the bottom, he reſts there awhile, and then returns quietly to the ſurface, the men taking aboard again the hawſer as he riſes. When he comes to the top, two or three ſhallops are ſtationed around with halberds, with which they give him ſeveral blows. Finding himſelf ſtruck, the whale goes down again, leaving a trail of blood, and grows weak to ſuch an extent that he has no longer any ſtrength nor energy, and returning to the ſurface is finally killed. When dead, he does not go down again: faſtening ſtout ropes to him, they drag him aſhore to their head-quarters, the place where they try out the fat of the whale, to obtain his oil. This is the way whales are taken, and not by cannon-ſhots, which many ſuppoſe, as I have ſtated above.

To reſume the thread of my narrative: after wounding the whale, as mentioned, we captured a great many porpoiſes, which our mate harpooned to our pleaſure and amuſement. We alſo caught a great many fiſh having a large ear, with a hook and line, attaching to the hook a little fiſh reſembling a herring, and letting it trail behind the veſſel. The large ear, thinking it in fact a living fiſh, comes up to ſwallow it, thus finding himſelf at once caught by the hook, which is concealed in the body of the little fiſh. This fiſh is very good, and

and has certain tufts which are very handſome, and reſemble thoſe worn on plumes.

On the 22d of September, we arrived on ſoundings. Here we ſaw twenty veſſels ſome four leagues to the weſt of us, which, as they appeared from our veſſel, we judged to be Flemiſh.

On the 25th of the month, we ſighted the Iſle de Grenezé,[368] after experiencing a ſtrong blow, which laſted until noon.

On the 27th of the month, we arrived at Honfleur.

[368] Guernſey, which lay directly before them as they advanced up the Engliſh Channel, and was the firſt large iſland that met the eye on their way to Honfleur.

INDEX.

INDEX.

A.

ABENAQUE, 175.
Abriou, 150.
Abuptic River, 105.
Acadie, 213.
Accomack, 79.
Accominticus, 69.
Achelacy, 188.
Actaudin, 147.
Actaudinech, 147.
Adirondack Mountains, 218.
Advocate's Harbor, 25, 26, 149.
Agguncia, 49.
Alexander, Sir William, 9, 16.
Alexandria, 2.
Alfonſe, Jean, 2, 40, 49, 174, 188.
Algonquin, 175, 196, 202, 218, 221, 225, 226, 227, 228, 229, 234, 236, 237, 239, 240, 241, 244, 245, 246, 247.
Allen River, 24, 107, 140.
All Iſles, Bay of, 11.
Almouchiquois, 55, 63, 146, 147.
Alonſon, 175.
Alouettes, Point aux, 165, 170.
America, 4, 20, 64, 74, 155, 159.
American Academy, Memoirs of, 77.
American Antiquarian Society, 229.
Anaſſou, 92.
Androſcoggin, 59.
Aneda, its healing qualities, 61.
Anglois, Le Port aux, 156.
Angouleſme, 31.
Annapolis, 22, 24, 107, 140.
Annapolis Baſin, 17, 101, 139.
Annapolis River, 22, 107, 144.
Anne, Ste., 201, 226.
Anne of Denmark, 70.
Anniſquam, 70.
Anniſquam Harbor, 114.
Antoine, St. Rivière, 23, 24.
Antons, Sieur de, 93, 108.
Archangel, 92.
Archer, 237.
Argal's Bay, 16.
Argyl River, 105.
Artichokes, Jeruſalem, 82, 112, 123.
Aſher, G. M., 171.
Aſh-tree, 113.
Aubry, Nicholas, 20.
Auguſtine, St., 14.
Auk, 13, 14.

B.

Bacalaos, 73.
Bacchus, Iſle de, 62, 67, 110, 173.

Back River, 57.
Bagnall, Walter, 62.
Bald Peak, 218.
Ballard, Rev. Dr. Edward, 92, 93.
Baird's Report, 68, 89.
Bangor, 33, 43, 44, 46.
Bank, Grand, 156, 228.
Barnſtable, 116, 117.
Barque, French, 145.
Barrington Harbor, 12.
Baſques, 12, 154, 165, 166, 177, 213, 233, 235, 237, 252.
Bath, 59, 92.
Batiſcan, 201.
Battle, preparation for, by Indians, 214; of Lake Champlain, 219–223; at the mouth of the Richelieu, 240–246.
Batturier, Cap, 119.
Baude, Moulin, 164.
Baye de Toutes Iſles, 152.
Baye Françoiſe, 15, 20, 21, 24, 27, 148.
Bayfield, Capt., 197.
Bay, La Courante, 105, 106.
Bay of Fundy, 15, 16, 20, 24, 25, 27, 40, 139.
Bay of St. John, 28.
Bay of Mines, 25, 27.
Bay of St. Lawrence, 26.
Bayonne, 111.
Bear Brook, 175.
Bear Iſland, 23.
Bear River, 24.
Beaumont, 35.
Beauport, 111, 115.
Beauport, Rivière de, 176.
Bedabedec, 41, 42, 46, 47, 48, 55, 56.
Beech-trees, 113.
Belknap, Rev. Jer., 92.
Bellenger, 175.
Berjon, Jean, ix, xv.
Beſſabez, 45, 46, 142, 143.
Biard, Père, 39, 213.
Bibliothèque Nationale, 40.
Biencourville, 22.
Bigelow, Dr. Jacob, 113.
Birds, names of, 14, 15.
Black Beſs, 114.
Blackbird, 68.
Black Cape, 172.
Black Point, 62.
Black River, 171.
Black Skimmer, 87.
Bluff Iſland, 62.
Bohemians, 124.
Bonaventure, Iſland of, 164.
Bonnerme, 180, 197.
Boſcanhegan Lake, 47.
Boſton, 113, 122.
Boſton Bay, 74, 76.
Boſton Society of Natural Hiſtory, 87, 216.
Boues, Charles de, 183.
Boulay, 16, 35, 97.
Bourioli, la Motte, 35.
Boyer, 108.
Boyer, De, 244.
Bradford, Wm., 78, 89, 121, 136.
Brant Point, 75, 76, 80, 115, 116.
Bras d'Or, La, 156.
Brazilian beans, 64, 82, 111, 112.
Brébeuf, Père, 213.
Brereton, 237.
Breſt, 228.
Bretons, 233, 237.
Brouage, 250.
Brunſwick, 92.
Burials, 142, 143, 146, 191.
Buſtards, 14.
Buzzard's Bay, 131, 132.

C.

Cabahis, 45, 47.
Cabot, John, 2.
Cabot, Sebaſtian, 2, 16, 61.
Cabirecoubat, 183.
Caen, 22.
Calais, 34.
Calendar Eng. State Papers, 62.
Camden, 41.
Camden Mountains, 42, 48.
Cambridge Muſeum, 14.
Camel's Hump, 217.
Cammock, Thomas, 110.
Campbell, 105.
Campeſtre de Berge, 8.
Campobello Iſland, 100.
Canada, 3, 7, 61, 66, 72, 86, 186, 187, 188, 216, 230, 233, 248.
Canada, River of, 248.
Canadians, 45, 48, 124, 196.
Caniza, 70.
Cannon-balls at St. Croix, 33.
Canoes, 72, 73, 74, 167.
Canſeau, 7, 8, 12, 104, 106, 108, 146, 150, 151, 153, 154, 155, 156.
Canſoke, 7.
Cap aux Oies, 172.
Cap Blanc, 79, 80, 90, 115, 116, 117.
Cap Corneille, 93, 137, 138.
Cap Dauphin, 171, 172.
Cap de Tourmente, 172.
Cap St. Louis, 74, 75, 76, 80, 115, 116.
Cape Anne, 69, 70, 71, 72, 90, 111, 135.
Cape Breton, 8, 9, 10, 27, 103, 104, 106, 108, 149, 155, 156, 164, 196.
Cape Breton, Iſland of, 155.
Cape Charles, 171.
Cape Cod, 79, 80, 87, 90, 92, 115, 117, 135, 140.
Cape Cod Bay, 79, 115, 116.
Cape Cod Harbor, 78.
Cape, Crow, 93.
Cape Elizabeth, 61.
Cape James, 79.
Cape Jelliſon, 43.
Cape North, 149.
Cape of Mines, 26.
Cape Porpoiſe, 68, 69, 70.
Cape Sable, 13, 15, 19, 40, 105, 140, 154.
Cape St. Lawrence, 164.
Cape Salmon, 171, 172.
Cape St. Mary, 164.
Cape Small Point, 61.
Cardinal's Hat, 28.
Carillon, Fort, 224.
Cartier, Jacques, 2, 61, 66, 171, 172, 173, 175, 176, 183, 184, 185, 186, 187, 188, 189, 201, 237.
Caſco Bay, 61.
Caſtine, 43.
Catharine, St., River, 153.
Cathay, 4, 171.
Cedar, 82.
Chalifour, Rivière, 176.
Chaloupe, 146.
Chambly Baſin, 207, 210, 226.
Chambly, M. de, 210.
Chamcook Hill, 32.
Champdoré, De, 20, 35, 90, 100, 101, 103, 105, 108, 109, 151, 154.
Champs, Des, 98.
Chaouſarou, 216.
Chards, 112.
Charles I., 70.
Charles, Prince, 70, 79.
Charles, St., River, 176, 183, 184.
Charles River, 72, 76.
Charlevoix, 2, 9, 11, 16, 25, 27, 30,

37, 152, 153, 156, 164, 175, 189, 207, 210.
Chatham, 120, 126, 130, 131, 132, 136, 145.
Chatham Hill, Great, 122.
Chatham Old Harbor, 120, 122.
Chatham Roads, 120, 122.
Chaudière, 47, 60.
Chaſtes, 4.
Chauvin, Capt., 4.
Chavin, Capt. Pierre, 227, 234, 244, [249, 250, 251.
Chebucto, 52.
Chedabucto Bay, 155.
Chedotel, 9.
Cherry-trees, 198.
Cheſuncook, 47.
Chevalier 146, 147, 148, 149.
Cheyne Iſland, 31.
Chignecto Bay, 25, 27.
Chignecto, Cape, 25, 27.
Chin, 217.
China, 2, 5, 171.
Chomouchonan, 169.
Chops, 57.
Choüacoet, 62, 64, 68, 70, 85, 91, 110, 113, 123, 125, 147, 150, 167.
Chriſtians, 45, 149, 203, 207, 246.
Church, Col. Benjamin, 42.
Churchill's Voyages, 121.
Clam Bay, 152.
Clark's Iſland, 78.
Claudiane, 23.
Clyde, 12.
Coaſt Pilot, 62.
Cohoüepech, 113.
Collier, Sieur, 229.
Columbus, Chriſtopher, 121, 155.
Columbus, Ferdinand, 121.
Commiſſaries, Engliſh and French, 15, 16, 148, 149, 153.
Conquet, 228.
Copper mines, 25, 27, 37, 97, 98, 149.
Coquilles, Port aux, 100.
Cormorant, 14.
Cormorant Iſland, 13, 105.
Corn, Indian, 121, 122, 123.
Corneilles, Iſle aux, 55.
Cortereal, Gaſpar, 2.
Cortereal, Michael, 2.
Coſa, Juan de la, 79.
Coudres, Iſle aux, 172, 185, 187.
Country Harbor, 153.
Coues's Key, 13, 14, 68, 87, 89.
Council, Royal, 163.
Coy, Mc, Head, 28.
Cramolet, 90.
Cranes, 14.
Croix, St., 15, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 37, 38, 47, 49, 52, 55, 90, 93, 94, 98, 99, 100, 107, 109, 138, 147, 184, 185, 186, 187, 188, 201, 204, 205.
Croix, St., River, 31, 32, 175, 183.
Croſs Iſland, 93.
Crow's Pond, 121.
Cruxius, 52, 155, 216.
Cumberland Baſin, 27.
Curlew, 14.
Currant, red, 68, 198.
Cuſhman, David, 92, 93.
Cutler, 77.
Cutwater, 87.
Cypreſs, 82, 112.

D.

D'Avezac, 175, 186, 188, 237.
Darache, 166.
Dauphin, Rivière du, 22.
Davis, John, 3.
Deane, Charles, 89.

De Coſta, Benjamin F., 79.
Deep Brook, 24.
De Laet, 10, 16, 27, 37, 76, 86, 148, 149, 151, 152, 153, 155, 156.
De Monts Iſland, Little, 32, 33.
Dennyſville, 31.
Devils, Point of all, 165, 170.
Dexter, Henry M., 77, 78, 123, 125, 136.
Diamonds, Point of, 175, 176.
Dieppe, 79, 227, 234.
Divide, 34.
Digby Neck, 16, 20, 21, 22.
Digby Strait, 101.
Diſtillerie, La, 176.
Dix Peak, 218.
Dochet's Iſland, Little, 32, 33.
Dogs of the ſavages, 142, 190.
Donnacona, 188, 237.
Ducks, 14.
Du Glas, 36.
Duquen, Father Jean, 168.

E.

Eagle Cape, 172.
Eaſt Boſton, 76.
Eaſtern Point, 114.
Eaſtham, 136.
Eaſt India Co., 3.
Eaſt Indies, 197.
Eaſtport, 93, 139.
Éboulemens Mountains, 172.
Egyptians, 124.
Ellingwood Rock, 56.
Éloi, St., 201.
Emanuel, Don, 2.
Emmerſon's Creek, 28.
Emmerſon's Point, 72.
England, 2, 3, 156, 197.
Engliſh, 171, 237.
Engliſh Channel, 255.
Équille, Rivière de, 22, 24, 94, 144.
Eſplanade du Fort, 176.
Eſtienne, Maſter, 145.
Eſtienne, St., 54.
Etechemins, 31, 32, 44, 47, 63, 72, 73, 91, 138, 142, 175.
Europe, 15.
Europeans, 49, 237.

F.

Fendu, 6, 148.
Ferland, 175, 233.
Finiſterre, 228.
Firſt Encounter, 136.
Fiſhing, mode of, by the Indians, 77.
Flax, 77.
Fleas at Chatham, 125.
Flemiſh, 199, 255.
Florida, 95, 99, 100, 108, 216, 218.
Fœdera, Rymer's, 2.
Fontainebleau, 157, 228.
Force, Peter, 123, 124.
Forked Cape, 15.
Fort Point, 43, 114.
Fort Point Ledge, 43.
Fort Pownall, 43.
Foſs's Beach, 70.
Foulgeré de Vitré, 108.
Fougeray, 35.
Fouques, Captain, 36, 107.
Fourchu Cape, 19, 104, 105, 151.
Fourchu Port, 15.
Fous, Rivière des, 176.
France, 12, 37, 77, 102, 103, 108, 140, 145, 146, 147, 150, 155, 159, 174, 182, 186, 191, 200, 227, 228, 232, 248.
Francis I., 2.

François, St., 206.
French, 196, 216, 228.
Freſh-Water Cove, 114.
Frobiſher, Sir Martin, 3.

G.

Gallatin, Albert, 229.
Gardner's Creek, 28.
Gaſpé, 27, 54, 103, 147, 155, 160, 164, 196, 227.
Gaſtaldo, 8, 31, 73.
Gas, Mont du, 175.
Geeſe, 14.
Gendre, Lucas Le, 229, 230.
Gendre, River du, 175.
Geneſtou, De, 35.
Gennes, B. de, 27.
Gennes, Rivière de, 206.
Georges, Captain, 3.
George, St. River, 92.
Georgian Bay, 196.
Germany, 197.
Gilbert, Humphrey, 3, 14.
Glouceſter, 111, 112, 114, 115.
Goat Iſland, 22.
Gondy, Cardinal de, 147.
Granary Burial Ground, 113.
Grand Bank, 163, 222.
Grand Manan, 15.
Grandmont, 11.
Granville, 22.
Granville, Lower, 97.
Grapes, 71, 110, 111, 173.
Gray, Aſa, 76.
Great Duck Iſland, 31.
Green Iſland, 153.
Green Mountains, 217.
Grenezé, Iſle de, 255.
Godfrey, 33.
Gomez, Eſtevan, 61.
Gookin, Daniel, 71, 123, 125.
Gooſe Cape, 172.
Gooſe Fair Bay, 68.
Gooſe Iſland, 153.
Gooſe River, 28.
Goſnold, Bartholomew, 79.
Gouffre, Rivière du, 172.
Guaſt, Pierre du, 76.
Guercheville, Marchioneſs de, 39.
Guernſey, 255.
Guienne, 161.
Gulls, 14.
Gulliver's Hole, 21.

H.

Hadley River, 132.
Haies, Edward, 8, 9, 14.
Hakluyt, 2, 3, 9, 14, 66, 171, 174, 183, 185, 188.
Halliburton, 148.
Halifax, 12, 152.
Hampton, 70.
Harbor Iſland, 153.
Harding's Beach Point, 120.
Hare Iſland, 171.
Haute, Iſle, 25, 26, 41, 42, 43, 93, 136, 137.
Havre de Grâce, 7, 9, 22, 232.
Hawkins, Alfred, 175.
Hazard's State Papers, 2.
Hazel Iſland, 172.
Head Harbor, 100.
Hébert, Iſle d', 23.
Hell Gate, 57, 59.
Hemp, Indian, 77.
Henry IV., 157, 160, 229, 250.
Henry VII., 2.
Herons, 14.

Herring River, 80.
Hêve, Cap de la, 9, 10, 12, 62, 110, 151.
Higginſon, Francis, 88, 89.
Hippocrates, 52.
Hockomock Bay, 57, 58.
Hollanders, 3, 146.
Homem Diego, 16.
Homenn, 27.
Honabetha, 75.
Honemechin, 63.
Honfleur, 7, 20, 98, 157, 163, 228, 230, 231, 232, 255.
Horſe-foot Crab, 86.
Hôtel Dieu, 176.
Hougue, 232.
Hougueaux, 232.
Hudſon, Henry, vi, 171.
Hudſon River, 218.
Hudſon's Bay, 170, 171.
Huguenots, 250.
Huiſtres, Port aux, 116, 117.
Hurons, 176, 196, 202, 213, 226, 228.
Huron, Lake, 196, 226, 229.
Huy, Iſland of, 231.

I.

Imbert, 23.
Indians, at the Kennebec, 39, 58, 91, 92; at Saco, 62–67, 110; at Cape Anne, 70–72; in Boſton Harbor, 72–74; at Brant Point, 74, 75; at Plymouth, 77, 78; at Nauſet, 81–86; at Glouceſter, 111–115; at Barnſtable, 117; at Chatham, 121–136; at St. John, 147; at Tadouſſac, 167, 233; at Quebec, 189–196, 202, 203; at Lake Champlain, 210–227; at the river Richelieu, 239–246.
Indian corn, 61, 64, 66, 73, 75, 82, 86, 111, 115, 121, 222, 251.
Indian hemp, 77.
Indian houſes, 67, 83, 124.
Ipſwich, 70.
Iouaniſcou, 138, 141.
Irocoſia, 217.
Iroquois, 76, 196, 200, 202, 203, 207, 218, 221, 223, 224, 225, 226, 228, 229, 235, 239, 240, 241.
Iroquois, Lake of the, 216.
Iroquois River, 206, 207, 210, 215, 236.
Iſland Cape, 70, 71, 74, 84, 90, 91, 111.
Iſland Bay, 152.
Iſland Harbor, 68, 69.
Iſles of Shoals, 69, 70.
Iſles Ranges, 138.
Iſle Verte, Rivière de l', 153.
Italians, 112.

J.

Jacques, Maſter, 98.
Jay's Peak, 217.
Jenneſs, John S., 69.
Jeuneſſe, La, 146.
Jerremiſquam Iſland, 57, 58.
Jéſuites, 39, 176.
John, St., 28, 29.
John, St., Baptiſt, 28.
John, St., Lake, 168, 205.
John, St., River, 9, 210, 216.
John, St., Rivière, 29, 30, 33, 34, 37, 97, 110, 147.
Johnſon, Edward, 123.
Jonas, 106, 107, 150.
Jomard, Edme François, 3, 49, 61.
Joſſelyn, John, 68, 88, 89, 110, 112, 113.
Juniper, 82.

K.

Kay, Dr., 216.
Kenduſkeag, 44.

Kennebec, 46, 56, 57, 59, 60, 62, 91, 92, 93, 137.
Killington Peak, 217.
King Crab, 86.
King's Forlant, 171.
Kohl, Dr., 73.

L.

Labrador, ix, 3, 14.
La Cadie, 7, 9, 10, 11, 12, 44, 73, 74, 145.
Lairet, River, 184.
Lake Champlain, 216, 218, 223.
Lake George, 218, 223.
L'Ange, Paris, v.
Larcadia, 73.
Latitude, by Champlain, 18.
Laverdière, L'Abbé, 23, 26, 40, 52, 86, 152, 153, 154, 171, 173, 175, 183, 196, 197, 205, 213, 215, 233.
Lark Point, 165.
Laurie, 168, 206.
Lejeune, 213.
Lennox, 147.
Lescarbot, 3, 7, 10, 11, 12, 17, 18, 20, 22, 23, 33, 36, 37, 38, 50, 62, 63, 73, 94, 103, 106, 107, 108, 111, 131, 140, 146, 147, 149, 151, 153, 154, 157, 175, 213.
Lesdiguières, Duchess of, 164.
Lévis, Cap de, 176.
Lévis, Henri de, 176.
License, Extract from, xv.
Linnæus, 89.
Lisbon, 2.
Liscomb Island, 153.
Liscomb Point, 152.
Liscomb River, 12.
Little Boar's Head, 69, 70, 71.
Littré, 10, 22.
Liverpool, 10.
Lobster Bay, 105.
Long Island, 15, 16, 17, 20, 21, 27, 30, 104.
Long Island Bay, 139.
Long Island Sound, 14, 18, 136.
Long Neck, 131.
Louisburgh, Harbor of, 156.
Louis, St., Baffin de, 207.
Louis, St., Falls of, 160.
Louis, St., Fort, 210.
Loup, River du, 206.
Lower Granville, 22, 24.
Lubeck, 139.
Lumley's Inlet, 171.
Lunenburg, 9.
Luz, Jean de, 154.

M.

Mabretou, 103, 143, 144, 147, 150.
Machias, 93, 138.
Magnetic Needle, 10, 24, 34, 155.
Magnus, Olaus, 52.
Magpie Islands, 31.
Magpies, 30.
Mal Bay, 164, 172.
Mallebarre, 57, 81, 90, 107, 109, 110, 117, 118, 136, 138.
Maine, 61, 135.
Maine, Gulf of, 140.
Maine Historical Society, 43, 73, 92.
Mal de la terre, or scurvy, 50, 95, 98, 145, 199
Malo, St., 22, 24, 25, 27, 54, 93, 108, 146, 151, 157, 235, 241, 242.
Manomet, 78.
Manan, Grand, Petit, 30, 55, 93, 99, 139.

Manthane, 30.
Manthoumermer, 57.
Mappe-Monde, 49, 61.
Marais, Sieur des, 199, 204, 207, 208, 232, 249.
Marchin, 58, 60, 91, 110, 150.
Margaret, St., 17, 18.
Marguerite, St., 152.
Marie de Medicis, Queen Regent, xiii, 146, 147.
Marriage, 191.
Marſh Creek, 29.
Marſhfield, 74.
Martha's Vineyard, 131.
Martin, St., Head, 28.
Martyres, Les, 151.
Mary, Rivière St., 153.
Mary's, St., Bay, 15, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 23, 35, 40, 104, 164.
Mary's, St., River, 201.
Maſſachuſetts Bay, 71.
Maſſachuſetts Harbor Commiſſioners' Report, 119.
Matachiats, 143.
Match-lock, 133.
Mattiolo, 8, 73.
Maurice, St., River, 205.
May Flower 78, 79.
McKeen, John, 92.
Megunticook Range, 42.
Membertou, 03.
Menthane, 232.
Mercator, 156.
Merrimac Bay, 70, 71.
Merrymeeting Bay, 57, 59, 91.
Meſſamoüet, 37, 110, 111.
Metinic Iſlands, 48.
Mettawamkeag, 34, 47.
Meur, Jacob von, 27.
Mexico, 89.
Mexico, Gulf of, 218.
Micmacs, 196.
Milk Iſland, 70.
Milkweed, 77.
Mill Pond, 29, 122.
Mill River, 24.
Minas Baſin, 25, 148, 149.
Minigo, 173.
Minot's Light, 122.
Miquelet, M., 103.
Miſſiſſippi River, 216.
Miſtaſſina, 169, 170.
Miſtaſſin Lake, 170.
Miſtigoches, 235, 239.
Mitchella, partridge-berry, 20.
Mitchell, Prof., 19.
Mocodome Inlet, 153.
Moll, 16.
Monhegan, 91, 92.
Monomoy, 81, 130, 131.
Monomoyicks, 136.
Montagnais, 76, 183, 196, 200, 213, 216, 219, 221, 226, 234, 236, 239, 240, 241, 244, 245.
Mont Carmel, 176.
Montmorency, 174, 175, 176.
Montreal, 160.
Monts Déſerts, Iſle des, 39, 41, 55, 137, 138.
Monts, Sieur de, 4, 5, 6, 7, 159, 160; his commiſſion, 160–163, 165, 167, 176, 182, 200, 227, 228, 229, 230.
Mooſe Iſland, 93.
Mooſe River, 24.
Morel, Capt., 7.
Morris Iſland, 120, 122.
Morris River, 24.
Morton's Memorial, 78.
Morton, Thomas, 123, 124.
Moſquitoes, 34, 240.

Moſquito Iſlands, 48.
Motin, v.
Moulin Baude, 164.
Mount Joli, 164.
Mount Manſell, 39.
Mount Marcy, 218.
Mouton, Port, 8, 11, 12, 18, 21, 22.
Munćton, 27.
Murdoch, Beamiſh, 7, 9, 37.
Murphy, Henry C., 40, 73.
Murray Bay, 172.
Muſcongus Bay, 48.
Muſeum of Univerſity Laval, 86.
Myſtic River, 76.

N.

Narraganſett Club, 65, 66.
Naſhaway, 71.
Natel, Antoine, 178, 193.
Nauſet, 57, 81, 90, 117, 119, 130, 136.
Nef, La, 91.
Negro, Cape, 12.
Neponſitt, 71.
Neutral Iſland, 33.
New Brunſwick, 28, 135.
New England, 6, 14, 64, 69, 77, 79, 86, 87, 88, 112, 121, 124, 237.
New England, Council for, 62.
New England Hiſtoric Genealogical Society, 33, 79.
Newfoundland, 3, 13, 14, 164, 196.
New France, 4, 7, 103, 140, 147, 157, 159, 161, 197.
New Hampſhire, 61, 70.
New Jerſey, 86.
New York, 196.
New York, Natural Hiſtory of, 216.
Nicomtau Bay, 152.
Niganis, 149, 156.
Nipmuck, 74.
Nipple Top, 218.
Nobſka Point, 131, 132, 136.
Noddle's Iſland, 76.
Noix, Iſle aux, 211.
Nonantam, 71.
Nonameſſet Iſland, 131.
Nova Scotia, 7, 8, 9, 10, 14, 40, 97, 135, 140, 196.
Nova Zembla, 4.
Normandy, 9, 161.
Normans, 233, 235.
Novus Orbis, 10, 86.
North America, 8.
North Creek, 17.
North Sea, 205.
Northumberland Strait, 24.
Norumbeque, 33, 34, 40, 42, 44, 45, 47, 49, 50, 55, 136, 137, 141, 142, 218.
Noſe, 217.

O.

Oak, 113.
Oak Bay, 34.
Ochateguins, 196, 202, 221, 225, 228, 229, 234, 235, 246, 248.
Old Orchard Beach, 113.
Old Stage Harbor, 120.
Olmechin, 63.
Onemechin, 110, 111, 113, 150.
Ordre de Bon Temps, 144.
Orleans, 120, 121.
Orleans, Duke of, 146.
Orleans, Iſle of, 172, 173, 174, 175, 176, 187, 188.
Ortelius, 231.
Orville, d', 35, 36, 95.
Oſborne, Thomas, 7.
Oſtemoy, 213.

Ottawa, 196, 226.
Ouagimou, 142.
Ouygoudy, 28, 147.
Owl's Head, 12, 41, 48.
Oxford, Earl of, 7.
Oyſter Harbor, 116.
Oyſter Pond, 122.

P.

Pacific Ocean, 68.
Palmer, 218.
Palmerſton Bay, 10.
Panounias, 55, 63, 142, 146, 150.
Parc, Sieur du, 233, 250, 251.
Pardoe, Miſs, 147.
Paris, 2, 20, 38, 40, 155, 157, 230, 250.
Parkhurſt, Anthony, 14.
Parrſborough, 148.
Partridge-berry, 20.
Partridge Iſland, 28, 29.
Paſſage Courant, 155.
Paſſage, Petit, 16, 18, 20, 21.
Paſſamacadie, 31, 73.
Paſſamaquoddy Bay, 30, 31.
Patache, 146.
Paul V., Roman Pontiff, 38.
Paul's, St., Bay, 172.
Paul, St., Iſland of, 164.
Pemadumcook, Lake, 47.
Pememen, 150.
Pemetiq, 39.
Penguins, 13, 14, 19.
Penobſcot River, 34, 40, 41, 42, 43, 47, 49, 60, 92, 137, 218.
Pentegoüet, 40.
Percée, Iſle, 155, 164, 228, 252.
Peribonca, 169.
Perkins, F. S., 238.
Perpiſawick Inlet, 152.
Peru, 85, 89.
Peter, St., Lake of, 205, 206, 226, 248.
Petitcoudiac, 27.
Petit Paſſage, 104.
Petit River, 10.
Petum, 66.
Pickering, Dr. Charles, 66.
Picouagami, 169.
Pigeons, 69.
Pike, Bony-ſcaled, or gar, 216.
Pilgrims of Plymouth, 77, 79.
Pilotois, 190, 213.
Pinckney Point, 105.
Placentia Bay, 164.
Pleaſant Bay, 121.
Plum-trees, 198.
Plymouth Harbor, 76, 79.
Point au Pies, 172.
Point Corneille, 172.
Point Gammon, 126, 131.
Point Ouelle, 172.
Point Père, 172.
Pokomtacuke, 71.
Pond Iſland, 56.
Pont Gravé, 3, 7, 11, 36, 54, 94, 95, 97, 99, 100, 101, 103, 105, 108, 132, 160, 163, 165, 166, 167, 180, 181, 182, 199, 200, 202, 204, 227, 229, 230, 232, 233, 244, 246, 247, 248, 249, 250.
Pont Gravé, Robert, 132.
Pontoiſe, Grand Vicar of, 183.
Pont, Rivière du, 206.
Poole, William F., 123.
Popham Celebration, 93.
Port à l'Équilles, 171.
Port du Cap St. Louis, 78, 79.
Port Fortuné, 120, 126, 130, 132, 138, 139, 145.
Portland, Dorſetſhire, 231.
Port of Mines, 26, 97, 148, 149.

Port Royal, 17, 22, 24, 25, 27, 37, 94, 97, 99, 100, 104, 106, 107, 108, 109, 139, 140, 141, 147, 148, 149.
Port St. Helaine, 152.
Portſmouth, 70.
Portugal, 2, 9.
Portugueſe, 8, 156, 237.
Pottery, Indian, 86.
Poutrincourt, Cap de, 149.
Poutrincourt, Sieur de, 19, 24, 30, 37, 38, 82, 97, 106, 107, 108, 111, 113, 114, 115, 117, 126, 127, 128, 134, 135, 140, 141, 144, 145, 146, 147, 148, 149, 150, 151, 157.
Pownall, Governor Thomas, 43, 223.
Prairies, Sieur des, 241, 242.
Prevert, M., 24, 25, 26, 27, 97.
Prince George, 92.
Prince Henry, 171.
Prince, Rev. Thomas, 92.
Prince Society, 9, 65, 69, 112, 123.
Pring, Martin, 79.
Prout's Neck, 62.
Ptolemy, 8, 73.
Pumpkins, 65, 112.
Punkapaog, 71.
Purchas's Pilgrims, 14.
Purſlane, 75.
Pyrenees, Lower, 154.

Q.

Quaco Light, 28.
Quaco River, 27.
Quebec, 19, 39, 47, 52, 60, 171, 174, 175, 176, 180, 182, 183, 186, 187, 188, 196, 197, 199, 200, 201, 202, 204, 226, 227, 228, 230, 234, 235, 236, 237, 246, 248, 249, 250, 251.
Quebec, Lit. and His. Soc., 169.
Quelibec, 175.
Queconſicq, 150.
Quinibequy, 44, 46, 47, 48, 56, 58, 60, 61, 68, 86, 91, 137, 141, 150.
Quoddy Roads, Head, 139.
Quiouhamenec, 113.

R.

Ralleau, 12, 29, 37, 106, 149.
Ram Iſland, 67, 121.
Rangées, Iſles, 153.
Ranges, 38, 55.
Raven Hill, 218.
Récollects, 183, 237.
Red Cape, 172.
Religion of the ſavages, 190–192.
Ribero, 49, 61, 79.
Richelieu, Cardinal, 210.
Richelieu Fort, 210.
Richelieu, River, 207, 239.
Richmond Iſland, 62, 110.
Rio de Gamas, 49.
Rio Grande, 49.
River du Guaſt, 76.
Rivière de Champlain, 131.
Rivière du Moulin, 140.
Roberval, 2, 3, 40.
Roche, Marquis de la, 4, 8.
Rochelle, 35, 107, 108.
Rockland, 41.
Rocky Brook, 24.
Rome, 1.
Roſcoff, 156.
Roſcou, 156.
Roſe, John, 8.
Roſier, 92.
Roſs Iſland, 31.
Roſſignol, Capt., 35, 36.
Roſſignol, Port, 10, 11, 12.

Roſſway, 17.
Rouen, 108, 229, 230, 244.
Rouen, Parliamentary Court, 9.
Rouge, 16, 31, 69.
Routte, La, 204, 207, 239.
Rue de la Fabrique, 176.
Rue du Fort, 176.
Rupert River, 170.
Ruſcelli, 75.
Rye Beach, 70.

S.

Sable Bay, 12, 13.
Sable Iſland, 3, 4, 8, 9, 12, 13, 156.
Saco, 62, 64, 112, 113, 147, 150, 151.
Sagadahoc River, 57, 92.
Sagard, 86, 183, 216.
Saguenay, 3, 164, 165, 168, 169, 170, 196, 205, 234, 237.
Saint Luc, M. de, 250.
Saintonge, 3.
Saliſbury, 70.
Salmon River, 171.
Salter's Iſland, 56.
Salt Iſland, 114.
Sambro, 151.
Sandy Cove, 16, 17.
Sandy Neck Point, 117.
Saquiſh Head, 78.
Saſanoa River, 57, 59.
Saſinou, 57, 60, 93, 150.
Saſſafras, 112.
Saint Lawrence, 2, 5, 6, 27, 30, 44, 47, 60, 66, 76, 146, 155, 160, 175, 183, 188, 196, 206, 216, 223, 229, 237.
Saint Pierre, Iſlands of, 232.
Saut, Rivière du, 176.
Sauveur, St., 39.
Savalette, Port de, 153, 154.
Savin, 82.
Sclavonia, 98.
Scofield's Brook, 24.
Scoudic Lakes, 34.
Scoudic River, 31, 47.
Seal, 14.
Seal Cove, 99.
Seal Iſland, 13.
Sea-Wolf Iſlands, 13, 14, 15, 18, 19.
Secondon, 29, 97, 102, 110, 147.
Seguin Iſland, 56, 60.
Seguin Ledges, 56.
Seſambre, 5 152.
Shäfer's Brook, 24.
Shakeſpeare, 73.
Shallop, 46.
Shea, John Gilmary, 9, 189.
Sheepſcot, 59.
Shepody Bay, 27.
Shipwreck, 01, 102.
Shurtleff's Calendar, 67.
Siguenoc, 86.
Silver mine, 16.
Simon, Maſter Miner, 16.
Siſſibou River, 17.
Skittles Port, 171.
Smelt River, 17.
Smith, Capt. John, 42, 69, 70, 79.
Smith's Cove, 114.
Smith's Iſles, 69.
Snipe, 14.
Snow Lake, 174.
Snows, Lake of, 176.
Snow-ſhoes, 53, 191.
Sorel, M. de, 210.
Souriquois, 45, 48, 63, 72, 73, 196, 213.
Soupçonneuſe, 131.
Sourin, 35.
Southampton, Earl of, 92.
South Eaſt Harbor, 114.

South River, 74.
South Sea, 5.
Spain, 154.
Spaniards, 177.
Spencer's Iſland, 26.
Spit Beacon Light, 28.
Split Cape, 148.
Spring Hill Beach, 117.
Squam River, 114.
Squanto, 121.
Squaſh, 64, 66, 75, 82, 112.
Stadacone, 175, 186.
Stage Harbor, 120, 130, 131.
Stage Head, 114.
Stage Iſland, 56.
Straitſmouth Iſland, 70, 71.
Stratton Iſland, 62, 65.
Subenacadie, 73, 149.
Suffolk, Duke of, 175.
Sugar Loaves, 56.
Sully, Duke of, 147, 250.
Suzanne, St., du Cap Blanc, 80, 206.

T.

Tadouſſac, 30, 164, 167, 168, 169, 170, 171, 173, 176, 177, 180, 196, 199, 200, 204, 205, 226, 227, 228, 229, 232, 233, 234, 249, 251, 252.
Taille, La, 180.
Taille, M. La, 103.
Ten-Pound Iſland, 114, 115.
Teſtu, Capt., 178.
Texas, 229.
Thatcher Iſland, 70, 72.
Theatre de Neptune, 140.
Theobald, St., 28.
Thérèſe, St., Iſland of, 211.
Thevet, 49.
Thibaut, Capt., 239.
Thorne's Brook, 24.
Three Rivers, 205.
Three Turks' Heads, 70.
Tobacco, 66, 82, 86.
Tortoiſe Iſland, 56, 60.
Ticonderoga, 223, 224.
Timothée, Capt., 7.
Tracadie, 73.
Tragabigzanda, 70.
Tranſylvania, 70.
Tregatté, 27.
Trelany, 110.
Trois Rivières, 204, 207, 233, 235, 23
Truittière, 141.
Trumbull, 123.
Tuckerman, 112.
Turkey, 88, 89.
Turks, 70.
Tuſquet Iſlands, 13, 105.
Two Bays, 25, 27.
Tyre, 2.

U.

Uncatena Iſland, 131.
United States, 33, 56, 62.
Urſulines, 176.

V.

Vaches, Pointe aux, 165.
Val, Jean du, 178, 181.
Vallard, Nic., 79.
Veazie, 110.
Venetians, 1.
Venice, 73.
Ventador, Duc de, 176.
Vermont, 217.
Verrazzano, 40.

Vineyard Sound, 131.
Voſe, Peter E., 33.
Vultures, 14.

W.

Walling's Map, 121.
Walnut, 112.
Ward, John, 67.
Warren, 92.
Warwig Creek, 34.
Waſaumkeag Point, 43.
Wedge Iſland, 153.
Weechagaſkas, 71.
Wellfleet, 116.
Wellfleet Harbor, 80.
Wells Neck, 68, 70.
Weſt Indies, 121.
Weſt Port, 57, 58.
Weymouth, George, 3, 92, 93.
Weymouth Harbor, 17.
Whale Cove, 39.
Whales, mode of taking, 252–254.
White Cape, 172.
Whiteface, 218.
White Haven, 153.
White Iſland, 31.
White Ledge, 56.
White Mountains, 61.
Wight, Iſle of, 231.
Williams, Roger, 65, 66, 121, 123, 124.
Willis, William, 92.
Willow Point, 224.
Winſlow, Edward, 124.
Wiſcaſſet, 57, 58.
Wiſconſin, 237, 238.
Wiſconſin, Hiſtorical Society of, 238.
Winthrop, John, Gov., 8, 62.
Wolves, 30.
Wood End, 117.
Wood Iſland, mouth of the Kennebec, 56; Saco Bay, 67; Grand Manan, 99.
Wood's Holl, 131, 132.
Wood's New Eng. Proſpect, 65, 69, 88, 112, 123.
Wyandot or Wendot, 196.

Y.

Yamaſka, 206.
Yarmouth, 15.
Yendots, 228.
York Beach, 70.
Young, Alexander, 78.
Yroquet, Captain, 202, 236, 245, 246, 2.

Cambridge: Press of John Wilson & Son.

Publications of the Prince Society.

CHAMPLAIN'S VOYAGES.

VOLUME II.